Intermediate

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

Oxford Word Skills

Learn and practise English vocabulary

www.hellooteacher.ir

Intermediate

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

Oxford Word Skills

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.hellooteacher.ir

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS
Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

OXFORD and OXFORD ENGLISH are registered trade marks of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2008

The moral rights of the author have been asserted

Database right Oxford University Press (maker)

First published 2008
2012 2011 2010 2009 2008
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford University Press disclaims any responsibility for the content

ISBN: 978 0 19 462004 8

Printed in Hong Kong

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Illustrations by Anne Cakebread pp 12, 13, 20, 21, 58, 79; Mark Duffin pp 36, 56, 62, 86, 115, 116, 164, 197, 198; Stephane Gamain p 8; Nick Hawken pp 38, 53, 55, 93, 100, 174; Gavin Reece pp 30, 40, 48, 67, 78, 92; Willie Ryan pp 29, 41, 47, 51, 60, 64, 66, 76, 77, 87, 89, 97, 103, 104, 119, 120, 135; Tony Sigley pp 32, 61, 99, 118, 179.

Commissioned photography by MM Studios pp 7, 8 (hand and pencil), 53 (kidney), 53 (carp).

The publisher and authors would also like to thank the following for permission to reproduce photographs: Alamy pp 44 (earthquake/Yoshiaki Nagashima/Pacific Press Service), 46 (gorilla/David Fleetham), 52 (plum/Tim Hill), 52 (grapefruit/Keith Leighton), 52 (avocado/Iconotec), 52 (passion fruit/foodfolio), 52 (papaya/Iconotec), 52 (pomegranate/Keith Leighton), 52 (spinach/ignazuri), 52 (chick peas/Sara Danielsson/Bon Appetit), 52 (fennel/Tim Hill), 52 (artichoke/Sue Wilson), 52 (asparagus/Emilio Ereza), 52 (beetroot/Emilio Ereza), 52 (parsley/artpartner-images.com), 52 (mint/foodfolio), 52 (basil/foodfolio), 52 (thyme/foodfolio), 52 (rosemary/foodfolio), 53 (trout/Brigitte Krauth/Bon Appetit), 53 (Tim Hill), 53 (squid/Iconotec), 53 (lobster/Dieter Heinemann/Photostock), 53 (crab/D. Hurst), 53 (clam/Theresa Raffetto/Bon Appetit), 74 (hospital ward/WR Publishing), 84 (house/Malcolm Fairman), 98 (police arrest/Arthur Turner), 114 (oil paints/Andrew Paterson), 114 (watercolours/Chris Rose), 116 (Dex Image), 124 (Rio Carnival/Demetrio Carrasco/Jon Arnold Images Ltd), 153 (Sam/John Eccles), 159 (Janine Wiedel Photolibrary), 171 (niceartphoto), 174 (Tony Craddock/Images Etc Ltd); Corbis pp 24 (Franck Seguin/TempSport), 42 (the earth/NASA), 42 (rainforest/Louise Murray/Robert Harding World Imagery), 44 (hurricane/Henry Romero/Reuters), 44 (volcano/Jim Sugar), 46 (eagle/Daniel J. Cox), 47 (shark/Stuart Westmorland), 74 (operating theatre/Mediscan), 90 (Georges Seurat , *Bathers at Asnières*, 1883–84, The National Gallery/By kind permission of the Trustees of the National Gallery, London), 90 (Georges Seurat, *Sunday Afternoon on the Island of La Grande Jatte*, 1884–86, The Art Institute of Chicago/The Gallery Collection), 98 (courtroom/Heide Benser/zefa), 114 (portrait/Self-Portrait by Mary Cassatt ca. 1880/Smithsonian Institution, Washington DC), 114 (landscape/ Vincent van Gogh, *Landscape with Green Corn*, 1889/The Gallery Collection), 114 (still life/ Paul Cezanne, *Fruit on a Cloth*, ca. 1890/The Gallery Collection),114 (abstract painting/ Wassily Kandinsky, *Improvisation with Green Center (No. 176)*, 1913/Burstein Collection/Barney Burstein © ADAGP, Paris and DACS, London 2008); Courtesy of Gecko Headgear p 146 (www.geckoheadgear.com); Getty Images pp 22 (Dan/Justin Pumfrey/Iconica), 22 (Giles/Victoria Snowber/Photographer's Choice), 28 (Marilyn Monroe/Alfred Eisenstaedt/Pix Inc./Time & Life Pictures), 28 (Bill Clinton/Scott Morgan), 44 (drought/Angelo Cavalli/Stone), 46 (lion/Dave King/Dorling Kindersley), 46 (tiger/Dave King/Dorling Kindersley), 46 (monkey/Tatsuhiko Sawada/amana images), 46 (fly/James Cotier/Stone), 46 (whale/Jeff Hunter/Riser), 46 (mosquito/Frank Greenaway/Dorling Kindersley), 52 (raspberry/Kevin Summers/Photographer's Choice), 52 (fig/Christian Teubner/StockFood Creative), 52 (broccoli/Kevin Summers/Photographer's Choice), 74 (x-ray/Vincenzo Lombardo/Photographer's Choice), 83 (Jonnie Miles), 101 (3D4Medical.com), 104 (Alexander Nemenov/AFP), 124 (La Tomatina festival /Jose Jordan/AFP), 158 (London Express/Hulton Archive), 165 (E. Dygas), 193 (Lyn Holly/Photographer's Choice RR); MorgueFile.com pp 84 (brick wall/bosela), 84 (stone wall/bosela); Photolibrary.com pp 44 (tidal wave/Vince Cavataio/Pacific Stock), 53 (veal/Philip Wilkins/Fresh Food Images), 53 (cod/Maximilian Stock Ltd/Fresh Food Images), 53 (oyster/Maximilian Stock Ltd/Fresh Food Images), 153 (Jake/Ulrika Malm/Nordic Photos), 154 (Photodisc); Punchstock pp22 (Kaz/Stockbyte), 46 (bee/Don Farrall/Photodisc), 46 (shark/DLILLC), 52 (apricot/C Squared Studios/Photodisc), 52 (celery/Stockbyte), 53 (calf's liver /Foodcollection.com), 53 (duck meat/Foodcollection.com), 53 (rabbit meat/Foodcollection.com), 53 (sea bass/Foodcollection.com), 53 (mussel/Melba Photo Agency), 98 (fingerprints/Steve Allen/Jupiterimages/Brand X), 152 (Marcy Maloy/Photodisc), 153 (Boss/Purestock), 155 (Stockbyte); Rex Features pp 37, 124 (cherry blossom festival/Sinopix Photo Agency Ltd); Royalty-free pp 46 (leopard/Photodisc), 46 (spider/Photodisc), 46 (elephant/Ingram), 46 (camel/Photodisc), 46 (bear/Photodisc), 46 (snake/Photodisc), 47 (snake/Ingram), 52 (coconut/Ingram), 52 (leek/Photodisc), 52 (sweetcorn/Stockbyte), 173 (Photodisc); Science Photo Library p 74 (scan/just SPL)

Images sourced by Suzanne Williams/Pictureresearch.co.uk

Cover illustration by Carol Verbyst

www.hellooteacher.ir

Contents

Introduction 5

Starter unit 7

Abbreviations and symbols 9

Learning

1 I can talk about vocabulary learning 10
2 I can describe my progress and aims 12
3 I can understand a learner's dictionary 14
4 I can talk about English punctuation 16

Review 18

People

5 I can talk about appearance 20
6 I can talk about character 22
7 I can describe my feelings 24
8 I can talk about relationships 26
9 I can talk about families 28
10 I can talk about weddings and funerals 30

Review 33

The world around us

11 I can describe the universe 36
12 I can talk about rivers and the sea 38
13 I can describe the climate 41
14 I can describe natural disasters 44
15 I can describe animals and insects 46

Review 49

Daily life

16 I can describe a range of food 52
17 I can talk about diets and cooking 54
18 I can talk about money 56
19 I can talk about sleep 58
20 I can talk about injuries 60
21 I can talk about cars and driving 62
22 I can describe travel problems and accidents 64
23 I can talk about clothes and fashion 67

Review 70

Getting things done

24 I can describe a visit to the dentist 73
25 I can describe hospital procedures 74
26 I can explain household tasks 76
27 I can describe housework 78
28 I can talk to a hairdresser 79

Review 80

Describing things

29 I can describe urban life 82
30 I can describe parts of a building 84
31 I can describe objects 86
32 I can describe the senses 88
33 I can describe a painting 90
34 I can describe actions 92

Review 94

www.hellooteacher.ir

Social and political issues

35 I can talk about crime 96
36 I can describe the justice system 98
37 I can discuss health issues 100
38 I can talk about politics 102
39 I can talk about war and peace 104
40 I can talk about events in history 106

Review 107

Media and entertainment

41 I can understand newspapers 110
42 I can talk about films 112
43 I can talk about art and photography 114
44 I can talk about music 116
45 I can talk about people and places in sport 118
46 I can describe sporting events 120
47 I can talk about books 122
48 I can describe festivals 124

Review 126

Work and study

49 I can get through exams 129
50 I can describe university life 130
51 I can apply for a job 132
52 I can describe jobs 134
53 I can describe a career 136
54 I can describe working conditions 138

Review 139

Business

55 I can talk about finance 142
56 I can talk about companies 144
57 I can describe a successful business 146
58 I can discuss marketing 148

Review 150

Social English

59 I can express probability 152
60 I can explain similarities and differences 153
61 I can make arrangements to meet 154
62 I can discuss my likes and dislikes 155
63 I can give my opinion 156
64 I can talk about rules 158
65 I can discuss hopes and plans 160
66 I can express dissatisfaction 162
67 I can understand warnings 164

Review 165

Language

68 I can use link words 168
69 I can use a range of adjectives 171
70 I can express time and place 174
71 I can use prepositions in phrases 176
72 I can use prefixes 178
73 I can use suffixes 180
74 I can use verb patterns 182
75 I can use phrasal verbs 184
76 I can use a range of adverbs 186

Review 188

Styles of English

77 I can recognize informal English 191
78 I can write a formal letter 194
79 I can understand abbreviations and short forms 196
80 I can understand American English 198

Review 200

Vocabulary building tables 202
Answer key 203
Answer key to review units 223
List of spotlight boxes 232
Word list / Index 233
Acknowledgements 254

www.hellooteacher.ir

Introduction

What is Oxford Word Skills?

Oxford Word Skills is a series of three books for students to learn, practise, and revise new vocabulary.

Basic:	elementary and pre-intermediate (CEF levels A1 and A2)
Intermediate:	intermediate and upper-intermediate (CEF levels B1 and B2)
Advanced:	advanced (CEF levels C1 and C2)

There are over 2,000 new words or phrases in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.

How are the books organized?

Each book contains 80 units of vocabulary presentation and practice. Units are between one and three pages long, depending on the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable quantities for learners, with practice exercises following immediately. The units are grouped together thematically in modules of four to nine units. At the end of each module there are further practice exercises in the review units, so that learners can revise and test themselves on the vocabulary learned.

At the back of each book you will find:

- vocabulary building tables
- an answer key for all the exercises
- a list of all the vocabulary taught with a phonemic pronunciation guide and a unit reference to where the item appears.

There is a CD-ROM at each level with oral pronunciation models for all the vocabulary taught, and further practice exercises, including listening activities.

What vocabulary is included?

At Intermediate level, the vocabulary includes:

- a wide range of common topics, e.g. money, health issues, relationships
- words and phrases needed in social interaction, e.g. giving opinions, making arrangements to meet
- areas of lexical grammar, e.g. prefixes and suffixes, link words.

There is an emphasis on high-frequency vocabulary in everyday spoken English, but also vocabulary from different types of written text, e.g. job advertisements, magazine articles, web pages, and warning signs. At Advanced level, learners encounter more figurative meanings of vocabulary items, more idiomatic language, and a wide range of collocations.

The series includes almost all of the words in the Oxford 3000™, which lists the 3,000 words teachers and students should prioritize in their teaching and learning. The list is based on frequency and usefulness to learners, and was developed by Oxford University Press using corpus evidence and information supplied by a panel of over 70 experts in the fields of teaching and language study. In addition, we have included a wide range of high frequency phrases, e.g. *don't bother*, *I haven't a clue*, as well as items which are extremely useful in a particular context, e.g. *a filling* at the dentist's.

www.hellooteacher.ir

We have taken great care to ensure that learners will be able to understand the meaning of all the new words and phrases as used in the particular contexts by supplying a clear illustration, a glossary definition, or an example of each word or phrase. Learners should be aware that many English words have more than one meaning. They should also be aware that nouns may be countable in some senses and uncountable in others. They should refer to an appropriate learner's dictionary for information on other meanings and structures and on countability. (See 'How to learn new words' in the Starter unit for advice.)

How can teachers use the material in the classroom?

New vocabulary is presented through different types of text, including dialogues, tables, and visuals. The meaning of new vocabulary is explained in an accompanying glossary unless it is illustrated in visuals or diagrams. Particularly important items are highlighted by means of 'spotlight' boxes.

Here is a procedure you could follow:

- Students study the presentation for 5–10 minutes (longer if necessary).
- You answer any queries the students may have about the items, and provide a pronunciation model of the items for your students to repeat.
- Students do the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the answer key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class.
- When you are satisfied, you can ask students to go on to further exercises, while you monitor them as they work, and assist where necessary.
- When they have completed the written exercises, students can often test themselves on the new vocabulary using the cover card enclosed with the book. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new items while they look at the visuals, glossaries, or tables and test themselves. This is a simple, quick, and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises.
- After a period of time has elapsed, perhaps a couple of days or a week, you can use the review exercises for further consolidation and testing.
- You will often notice the headings 'About you' or 'About your country'. These indicate personalized exercises which give learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these, but they make ideal pair work activities for learners to practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner's answers) as follow-up. In the answer key, possible answers for these activities are provided by proficient non-native speakers from different parts of the world.

How can students use the material on their own?

The material has been designed so that it can be used effectively both in the classroom or by learners working alone. If working alone, learners should look at the Starter unit first. For self-study, we recommend that learners use the book alongside the CD-ROM, as it gives them a pronunciation model for every item of vocabulary, as well as further practice exercises. They can check their own answers and use the cover card to test themselves. One advantage of self-study learning is that students can select the topics that interest them, or the topics where they most need to expand their knowledge.

www.hellooteacher.ir

Starter

A How to use a unit

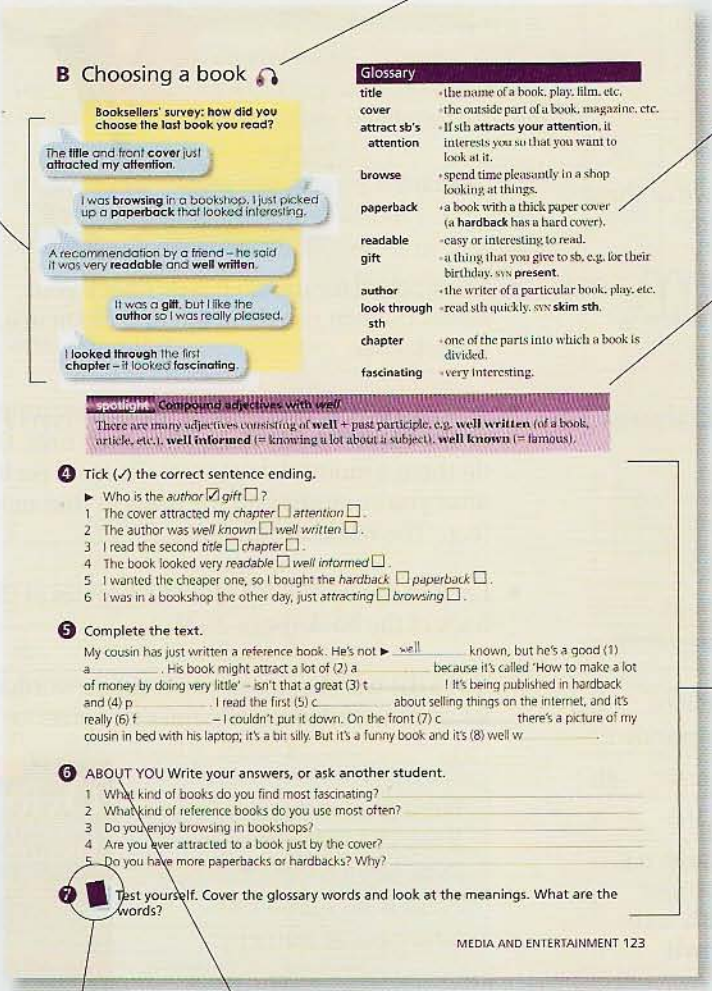
Study the new words. They are in **bold type**.

You can listen to the words on the CD-ROM and practise the pronunciation. Or you can look at the **word list** (page 233) to find out how to say the words.

A **glossary** explains the new words.

A '**spotlight**' tells you about important words.

Do the exercises. Check your answers in the **answer key** (page 203).



B Choosing a book

Booksellers' survey: how did you choose the last book you read?

The **title** and front **cover** just **attracted** my **attention**.

I was **browsing** in a bookshop. I just picked up a **paperback** that looked interesting.

A recommendation by a friend – he said it was very **readable** and **well written**.

It was a **gift**, but I like the **author** so I was really pleased.

I **looked through** the first **chapter** – it looked **fascinating**.

Glossary

title	• the name of a book, play, film, etc.
cover	• the outside part of a book, magazine, etc.
attract sb's attention	• If sth **attracts your attention**, it interests you so that you want to look at it.
browse	• spend time pleasantly in a shop looking at things.
paperback	• a book with a thick paper cover (a **hardback** has a hard cover).
readable	• easy or interesting to read.
gift	• a thing that you give to sb, e.g. for their birthday. SYN **present**.
author	• the writer of a particular book, play, etc.
look through sth	• read sth quickly. SYN **skim sth**.
chapter	• one of the parts into which a book is divided.
fascinating	• very interesting.

spotlight Compound adjectives with *well*

There are many adjectives consisting of **well** + past participle, e.g. **well written** (of a book, article, etc.), **well informed** (= knowing a lot about a subject), **well known** (= famous).

4 Tick (✓) the correct sentence ending.

► Who is the *author* ☑ *gift* ☐ ?
1 The cover attracted my *chapter* ☐ *attention* ☐ .
2 The author was *well known* ☐ *well written* ☐ .
3 I read the second *title* ☐ *chapter* ☐ .
4 The book looked very *readable* ☐ *well informed* ☐ .
5 I wanted the cheaper one, so I bought the *hardback* ☐ *paperback* ☐ .
6 I was in a bookshop the other day, just *attracting* ☐ *browsing* ☐ .

5 Complete the text.

My cousin has just written a reference book. He's not ► well known, but he's a good (1) a_____. His book might attract a lot of (2) a_____ because it's called 'How to make a lot of money by doing very little' – isn't that a great (3) t_____ ! It's being published in hardback and (4) p_____ . I read the first (5) c_____ about selling things on the internet, and it's really (6) f_____ – I couldn't put it down. On the front (7) c_____ there's a picture of my cousin in bed with his laptop; it's a bit silly. But it's a funny book and it's (8) well w_____ .

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

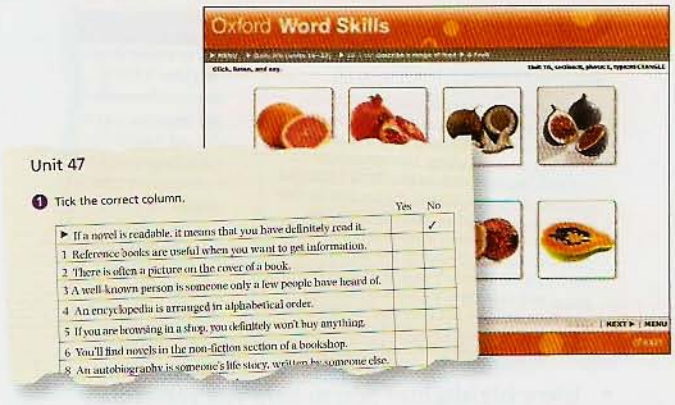
1 What kind of books do you find most fascinating? _____
2 What kind of reference books do you use most often? _____
3 Do you enjoy browsing in bookshops? _____
4 Are you ever attracted to a book just by the cover? _____
5 Do you have more paperbacks or hardbacks? Why? _____

7 Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. What are the words?

MEDIA AND ENTERTAINMENT 123

Use the **cover card** to test yourself.

Use the vocabulary to write or speak about yourself in 'ABOUT YOU' or 'ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY'.

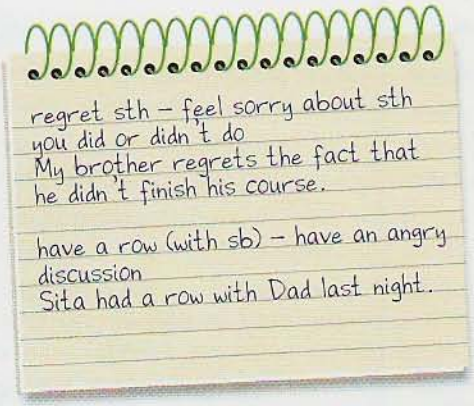


There's more practice in the **review** units and on the **CD-ROM**.

www.hellooteacher.ir

B How to learn new words

- Repeat the words and phrases two or three times to help you remember them.



- Write down new words in a notebook, with the meaning in English or your own language, or draw a picture.

- Write down any other important information about a word or phrase, e.g. words that often go together (*a serious relationship*) or constructions with verbs (*regret the fact that*). Write your own example sentences.

Perfect Weekend *Channel Five*
Wednesday 9 p.m. – 11 p.m.

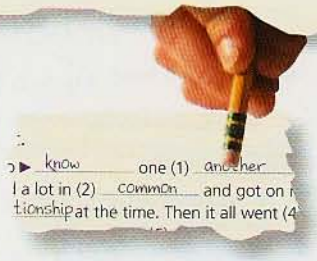
TV drama about a group of young people who **got to know one another** at university, and now, five years later, **get together** for a weekend. But things soon **go wrong**. John doesn't get on with Dan, and now realizes they **have nothing in common**, while Pete **regrets the fact that** he **split up** with Amy, the girl he used to **go out with**. Now Amy is **in a serious relationship** with Keith (who didn't go to university), and Keith doesn't like Amy's old friends. This creates tension in the group, and soon there's a big **row**. Amy falls out with Pete, and Dan and John stop speaking to each other. And that's just the beginning ...

Glossary
get to know sb mee
become friends.
one another each o
get together (of tw
social reason.
go wrong used whe
situation or relatio
realize sth begin to
know before.
have nothing in con
no interests that a
common.
regret sth / doing s
or didn't do

- Use a highlighter pen to help you remember difficult words.

7 Complete the text.

Milo and I got to ▶ know one (1) another when we wor summer. We had a lot in (2) common and got on really well, but serious (3) relationship at the time. Then it all went (4) wrong had a big (5) argument and he (6) split up with her. We st out with each other almost immediately, but Milo soon (8) regretted relationship with Inez. He (9) realized he was still in love with her, was a big mistake.



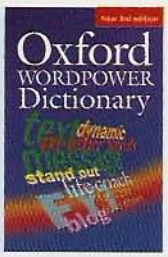
- Use a pencil for the exercises. Check your answers, then rub them out and do them again a week later.

- You can do the exercises in the review units, or the CD-ROM exercises, after each unit. Or do them a month later to test yourself, perhaps after you've studied all the units in that module (e.g. 'The world around us').

- Look at the vocabulary building tables at the back of the book (page 202).

- Go to the website (www.oup.com/elt/wordskills) for more useful materials and more practice.

Buy a good dictionary for your level. The *Oxford Wordpower Dictionary* (Oxford University Press) is very good for intermediate learners.



www.hellooteacher.ir

C Abbreviations and symbols

N	noun	USU	usually
V	verb	C	countable noun (A countable noun can be used with *a/an* and can have a plural form.)
ADJ	adjective		
ADV	adverb	U	uncountable noun (An uncountable noun cannot usually be used with *a/an* and usually has no plural form.)
OPP	opposite (for example, *modest* is the opposite of *arrogant*)		
SYN	synonym (a word that means the same as another word; for example, *drawback* is a synonym of *disadvantage*)	PT	past tense (the past simple form of an irregular verb)
		PP	past participle
INF	informal (If a word or phrase is **informal**, you use it when you are speaking to friends or people you know well.)	sth	something (used in glossaries and tables, e.g. *regret sth*)
		sb	somebody (used in glossaries and tables, e.g. *dismiss sb*)
FML	formal (If a word or phrase is **formal**, you use it at important and serious times with people you don't know well, or in written English.)	etc.	used at the end of a list to show there are other things, but you aren't going to say them all
PL	plural	e.g.	for example (as in: *jewellery*, e.g. *earrings*, *necklace*)
SING	singular		

Vowels

iː	see	/siː/
i	happy	/ˈhæpi/
ɪ	sit	/sɪt/
e	ten	/ten/
æ	hat	/hæt/
ɑː	father	/ˈfɑːðə(r)/
ɒ	got	/gɒt/
ɔː	saw	/sɔː/
ʊ	put	/pʊt/
u	casual	/ˈkæʒuəl/
uː	too	/tuː/
ʌ	cup	/kʌp/
ɜː	bird	/bɜːd/
ə	about	/əˈbaʊt/
eɪ	say	/seɪ/
əʊ	go	/gəʊ/
aɪ	five	/faɪv/
aʊ	now	/naʊ/
ɔɪ	boy	/bɔɪ/
ɪə	near	/nɪə(r)/
eə	hair	/heə(r)/
ʊə	sure	/ʃʊə(r)/

Consonants

p	pen	/pen/
b	bad	/bæd/
t	tea	/tiː/
d	did	/dɪd/
k	cat	/kæt/
g	got	/gɒt/
tʃ	cheap	/tʃiːp/
dʒ	jam	/dʒæm/
f	fall	/fɔːl/
v	verb	/vɜːb/
θ	thin	/θɪn/
ð	this	/ðɪs/
s	so	/səʊ/
z	zero	/zɪərəʊ/
ʃ	shoe	/ʃuː/
ʒ	television	/ˈtelɪvɪʒn, telɪˈvɪʒn/
h	hat	/hæt/
m	map	/mæp/
n	no	/nəʊ/
ŋ	sing	/sɪŋ/
l	leg	/leg/
r	red	/red/
j	yes	/jes/
w	wet	/wet/

www.hellooteacher.ir

1 I can talk about vocabulary learning

A Reading

Tips for reading

When you're reading in a **foreign** language, you should try to get the **gist** of the **text**. You will meet vocabulary you don't **recognize**, but you can often **go through** the text again. If so, try this:

- **Identify** the new words and phrases which seem to be important. Try to **guess** the meaning from the **context**, and/or use a dictionary.
- **Keep a record of** the words in a notebook, and, if possible, **make a note of** any special information. For example, is the word **formal** or **informal**? Is it used in a particular kind of **construction**, e.g. a verb that is often followed by a preposition?
- Write a **translation** if you think it helps; sometimes it isn't necessary.

spotlight *formal*

We use **formal** language to appear serious or official, or sometimes when we don't know people well. OPP **informal**. **formality** N. OPP **informality**.

Glossary

foreign	from a country that is not your own (a person is a **foreigner**).
gist	SING The **gist** of sth is the general meaning but not all the details.
text	the written part of a book, newspaper, etc.
recognize sb/sth	know who sb is or what sth is because you've seen or heard them before. **recognition** N.
go through sth	read sth carefully from beginning to end.
identify sth	recognize sth and decide what it is.
guess sth	give an answer to sth without being sure of the facts. **guess** N.
context	the words before and after the new word or phrase that help you to understand the meaning.
keep a record of sth	write sth down to help you remember it. **record sth** V.
make a note of sth	write sth down quickly to help you remember it.
construction	the way words are used together in a sentence. **construct sth** V.
translation	a text that has been changed from one language into another. **translate sth** V.

1 Replace the words in italics with a single word that has the same meaning.

▶ I looked at the pictures but didn't understand the *written part.* text

1 I understood the *general meaning* of the text. .....

2 We couldn't *recognize and decide* what language they were speaking. .....

3 The way you *use words together to make* a sentence in German is different. .....

4 He is *from another country.* .....

5 You can guess the meaning from the *words before and after the new word.* .....

6 There was a text which I had to *change from one language into another.* .....

2 Complete the dialogues.

▶ Is 'How do you do' formal ? ~ Yes, we usually just say hello .

1 Did you know the answer? ~ No, I had to ..... .

2 Did you understand everything? ~ No, but I got the ..... of it.

3 Did you ..... everyone? ~ There were one or two people I didn't know.

4 Were there many ..... ? ~ No, all the people were from this country.

5 Did you understand the text? ~ Yes, but can we ..... through it again?

6 Do you make a ..... of new words? ~ Yes, I keep a ..... in my notebook.

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Speaking and listening

- In a **conversation**, you can often ask someone to **repeat** words or phrases you don't understand, and **explain** the meaning to you.
- Repeat new words to yourself, so you know how to **pronounce** them.
- Look for **opportunities** to practise them when you're speaking. Don't be afraid to **experiment** with new language, and don't worry about **making mistakes**.
- It's important to **revise** new vocabulary. If not, you may forget it quite quickly.
- Remember: there isn't a correct **method** of learning vocabulary. Do what **works** for you.

spotlight *conversation, chat, discussion, argument*

A **conversation** is a talk between two or more people. You can also **have a chat with sb**, which is a friendly informal conversation (**chat** v). A **discussion about sth** is when you talk about something seriously (**discuss sth** v). An **argument** is a discussion in which people disagree, often angrily.

Glossary

repeat sth	say sth again. **repetition** N.
explain sth	make sth clear or easy to understand. **explanation** N.
pronounce sth	make the sound of a word or letter. **pronunciation** N.
opportunity	a time when it is possible to do sth that you want to do. SYN **chance.**
experiment with sth	try sth to see what result it has.
make mistakes	NOT ~~do mistakes~~.
revise sth	study sth again (you **do revision**).
method	a way of doing sth.
work	get or have the result you want.

3 What nouns are formed from these verbs?

▶ discuss discussion
1 repeat _____
2 pronounce _____
3 explain _____
4 revise _____
5 chat _____

4 Circle the correct answer.

▶ If you explain something, you make it easy to say/understand.
1 If you revise something, you say it again/study it again.
2 If something works, it is successful/difficult.
3 If you experiment with something, you try something/find something.
4 You can do/make a mistake.
5 A method is an opportunity to do something/a way of doing something.
6 A chat is a formal/an informal conversation.

5 Complete the sentences.

▶ We had a conversation on the phone last night.
1 We had a serious _____ in class today about politics.
2 My brother's got an _____ to work in Paris next year. Lucky him.
3 I saw Joelle in town and we had a quick _____. She told me about the wedding.
4 I used a new method for cooking the rice and it really _____. You must try it.
5 Do you think we'll have a _____ to go shopping when we're in Milan?

6 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

2 I can describe my progress and aims

A Making progress

When I started learning English, I was very **enthusiastic** and **motivated**, but I found the pronunciation difficult and people couldn't always understand me. **After a while** my pronunciation **improved** and I was able to **express** basic ideas quite **effectively**. It was **obvious** that I was **getting better**, and that was very **encouraging**. But at intermediate level, I **made** slower **progress**. There were so many new words and phrases, but also words that I could understand but couldn't use **accurately**. I think I **was** more **aware of** my mistakes, which **was** good – but also **frustrating**.

Glossary

enthusiastic • very interested in sth or excited by it. **enthusiasm** N.

motivated • If you are **motivated**, you really want to do sth. **motivation** N.

after a while • after a period of time.

improve • become better. SYNS **get better, make progress**. **improvement** N.

express sth • say or show what you think or feel.

effectively • in a way that gives you the result you want. **effective** ADJ.

obvious • easily seen and understood. SYN **clear**.

encouraging • If sth is **encouraging**, it gives you hope and makes you want to continue. **encourage** V. **encouragement** N.

accurately • with no mistakes. **accurate** ADJ.

be aware of sth • If you **are aware of sth**, you know about it.

frustrating • making you annoyed because you cannot do sth you want to do. **frustration** N.

1 Complete the sentences using the words on the right in the correct form.

▶	She did the work very *effectively*.	EFFECTIVE
1	He gave me a lot of _____.	ENCOURAGE
2	I think my English is _____.	IMPROVEMENT
3	My mother speaks English very _____.	ACCURATE
4	It's _____ when you can't understand.	FRUSTRATION
5	He doesn't have much _____.	MOTIVATED
6	I was very _____ when I started.	ENTHUSIASM

2 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.

▶ She shows lots of <u>interest and excitement</u>. *enthusiasm*

1 Do you think your English is <u>improving</u>? _____

2 I didn't worry about my mistakes after a <u>period of time</u>. _____

3 Where are you making the most <u>improvement</u>? _____

4 It's <u>clear</u> that he doesn't know the difference between *lend* and *borrow*. _____

5 She can speak French <u>without mistakes</u>. _____

6 I think she <u>knows about</u> the problem. _____

7 I can <u>say</u> most of the things I need to. _____

8 I make a lot of mistakes, which is <u>annoying</u>. _____

3 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Future goals

Felipe's goals

- I understand **everyday** English, but my vocabulary needs to **expand** so that I can understand **a wide range** of subjects, and express more **complex** ideas.
- I'd like to be more **fluent** when I'm speaking, and be able to talk about things **in** more **detail**. And I need to get better at using **appropriate** language when I speak.
- I can understand general things, but I want to read texts that are **relevant** to my work, and some of these contain quite **specialized** language.

Glossary

goal a thing you want to be able to do in the future. SYN **aim**.
everyday normal or usual.
expand become bigger or make sth bigger.
a wide range a large number of different things.
complex not simple; often difficult to understand. SYN **complicated**.
fluent able to speak a foreign language easily and well. **fluently** ADV.
in detail fully and including a lot of information.
appropriate right or suitable in a particular situation. OPP **inappropriate**.
relevant to sth useful for and connected to sth. OPP **irrelevant**.
specialized having or needing a lot of special knowledge.

spotlight *contain* and *include*

We can often use **contain** or **include** with the same meaning.
*The film **contains/includes** scenes of violence.*
Sometimes we can only use one of the verbs.
*The box **contains** magazines.* (There are magazines inside the box.)
*The price **includes** service.* (Service is one part of the price.)

4 Replace the underlined words with a synonym.

▶ The story is complex. complicated
1 I speak Russian very well. _____
2 It's part of normal life. _____
3 It isn't connected to my work. _____
4 The business got bigger. _____
5 It's not suitable here. _____
6 My goal is to get to university. _____

5 Complete the dialogues with a suitable word.

▶ Was the information important for your report? ~ No, it was irrelevant.
1 Did you explain it fully? ~ Yes, I described it in _____.
2 It wasn't a suitable word to use. ~ I agree, it was _____.
3 Is it a simple problem? ~ No, it's quite _____.
4 Is this yoghurt bad for you? ~ No it doesn't _____ any fat.
5 Is her vocabulary getting bigger? ~ Yes, it's definitely _____.
6 Do you need any special knowledge? ~ Yes, it's very _____.
7 Is the hotel room expensive? ~ Yes, but the price _____ dinner.
8 Were there many subjects? ~ Yes, quite a wide _____ of topics.

6 ABOUT YOU Write down your learning goals, or tell another student.

_____

_____

www.hellooteacher.ir

3 I can **understand a learner's dictionary**

How can a learner's dictionary help you? These examples are from *Oxford Wordpower Dictionary*.

Different meanings of the word are given in the **definitions**, which are in simple English.

win /wɪn/ ***verb*** (winning; *pt, pp* won /wʌn/) **1** [I, T] to be the best, first or strongest in a race, game, competition, etc.: *to win a game/match/championship* • *I never win at table tennis.* • *Which party do you think will win the next election?* **2** [T] to get money, a prize, etc. as a result of success in a competition, race, etc.: *We won a trip to Australia.* • *Who won the gold medal?* • *He won the jackpot in the lottery.*

HELP Note that we **earn** (not **win**) money at our job: *I earn £15 000 a year.*

The dictionary helps you **avoid** mak**ing** mistakes, and helps with grammar.

Idioms and phrasal verbs are at the end of the **entry**.

IDM **win/lose the toss** ➲ **toss**

you can't win (*informal*) there is no way of being completely successful or of pleasing everyone: *Whatever you do you will upset somebody. You can't win.*

PHR V **win sb over/round (to sth)** to persuade sb to support or agree with you: *They're against the proposal at the moment, but I'm sure we can win them over.*

Examples of usage are **provided**.

Phonetic **symbols** help with pronunciation. You can find out which **syllable** is **stressed**.

Words that are often used together (**collocations**) are given in bold.

mistake[1] /mɪ'steɪk/ ***noun*** [C] something that you think or do that is wrong: *Try not to **make** any **mistakes** in your essays.* • *a spelling mistake* • *It was a big mistake to trust her.* • *I made the mistake of giving him my address.*

IDM **by mistake** as a result of being careless: *The terrorists shot the wrong man by mistake.*

It can teach you **related** words: this helps you **build** your vocabulary and **select** the correct word for your needs.

OTHER WORDS FOR

mistake

Error is more formal than **mistake**: *a computing error.* When you make a mistake you **do** sth **wrong**: *I got the answer wrong.* • *You must have the wrong number* (= on the phone). **Fault** indicates who is responsible for sth bad: *The accident wasn't my fault. The other driver pulled out in front of me.* **Fault** is also used to describe a problem or weakness that sb/sth has: *a technical fault.*

It helps you with **style**: **for instance**, whether words are formal, informal, **slang**, **offensive**, etc.

guy /gaɪ/ ***noun*** **1** [C] (*informal*) a man or boy: *He's a nice guy.* **2** **guys** [pl] (*informal*) used when speaking to a group of men and women: *What do you guys want to eat?*

Glossary

definition an exact statement of what a word or phrase means. **define sth** v.

avoid doing sth If you **avoid doing sth**, you try not to do or experience it.

idiom a group of words whose meaning is different from the meanings of the individual words (also **expression**).

entry one of a list of items included in a dictionary, list, etc. (There are three dictionary **entries** on this page.)

provide sth give sth to sb or make sth available for sb.

style the way sth is written or spoken (e.g. an informal **style**, a formal **style**).

for instance SYN **for example**.

slang very informal words or phrases used in spoken language.

offensive rude and likely to upset sb. **offend sb** v.

symbol a letter, number, or sign that has a particular meaning (e.g. the **symbol** /ʃ/ is pronounced 'sh').

syllable a part of a word which contains a vowel sound. (*Go* has one syllable and *prefer* has two syllables.)

relate sth to sth connect sth to sth. **related** ADJ.

build sth make sth bigger; increase sth.

select sth SYN **choose sth** (but **select** is more formal). **selection** N.

www.hellooteacher.ir

spotlight *stress and emphasize*

Both verbs mean to say a syllable, word, or phrase with extra loudness.
The related nouns are **stress** (**on sth**) and **emphasis** (**on sth**).
*The **stress** is **on** the first syllable. Don't **emphasize** every word.*
They are also used to say that sth is important.
*The newspapers **stressed** the need for urgent action.*
*The **emphasis** is mainly **on** education.*

1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

▶	The city is fantastic: for example, the buildings are very impressive.	The city is fantastic: for instance, the buildings are very impressive.	S
1	That's a useful idiom to know.	That's a useful expression to know.	.....
2	Is that collocation correct?	Is that definition correct?	.....
3	What she said was very rude.	What she said was offensive.	.....
4	Does he use a lot of slang?	Does he use a lot of idioms?	.....
5	Can you avoid mistakes?	Can you define mistakes?	.....
6	Make sure you select the right number.	Make sure you choose the right number.	.....
7	The stress is on the first three letters.	The emphasis is on the first three letters.	.....
8	It doesn't give all the answers.	It doesn't provide all the answers.	.....

2 Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

symbols offending related entry ✓ selection syllable
instance stress idiom provide build collocations entry

▶ In a dictionary, *foreigner* comes after the entry for *foreign*.
1 Dictionaries have many uses: for ....., to find out meaning, or check pronunciation.
2 Does your local bookshop have a good ..... of dictionaries for sale?
3 Some dictionaries can help you ..... your vocabulary if they ..... synonyms and opposites, or other ..... words.
4 A dictionary can tell you which words are rude so that you can avoid ..... people.
5 You can check the pronunciation of any word in the dictionary by looking at the phonetic ..... and noting which ..... is stressed.
6 *Good luck!* is given as an ..... in the dictionary, at the end of the ..... for *luck*.
7 Dictionaries often tell you which words go together. Examples of ..... are *make a mistake* and *take a photo*.
8 In the word *emphasis*, the ..... is on the first syllable.

3 Now look at the dictionary entries on the left-hand page. Answer the questions.

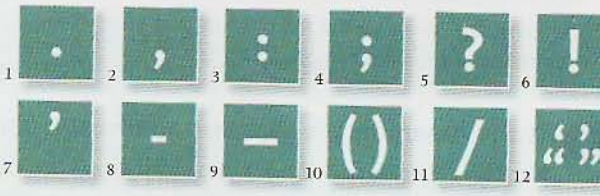
▶ Which syllable is stressed in *mistake*? The second syllable
1 Which related words are given for *mistake* and *make a mistake*? .....
2 How many definitions are there in the entry for *guy*? .....
3 What style is the idiom *You can't win*? .....
4 Is *guy* an offensive word? .....
5 Which phonetic symbols are given for *guy*? .....
6 Are these sentences correct?
a) I haven't got the keys, but it's not my fault; Jo lost them. .....
b) My dad wins a lot of money in his job. .....

www.hellooteacher.ir

4 I can talk about English punctuation

A Punctuation marks

1 **full stop**
2 **comma**
3 **colon**
4 **semicolon**
5 **question mark**
6 **exclamation mark**
7 **apostrophe**
8 **hyphen**
9 **dash**
10 **brackets**
11 **slash**
12 **quotation marks**



1 Complete the words for the punctuation marks.

▶ com m a
1 full s _____
2 col _____
3 hyp _____
4 bra _____
5 question m _____
6 excla _____ m _____
7 semi _____
8 apo _____

2 What punctuation is used in 1–8 below? You don't need to repeat *full stop* each time.

▶ We went home early. full stop
1 She had long, blonde hair. _____
2 What are you doing? _____
3 *Congratulations!* _____
4 It's too late. _____
5 I looked in the fridge; it was empty. _____
6 Someone (not me) left the door open. _____
7 A five-minute walk – and he still took a taxi. _____
8 'It's only me,' he said. _____

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the punctuation marks. What are they?

B Punctuation rules

SOME IMPORTANT PUNCTUATION RULES

A full stop is used at the end of a sentence that is not a question or an exclamation, and is sometimes used in **abbreviations**. Each new sentence must begin with a **capital letter**.

A comma in writing is like a **pause** in speech. It is used:
- to **separate** parts of a sentence, e.g. *After we left, someone tried to phone us.*
- between adjectives, e.g. *A big, expensive car.*
- to separate words in a **list**, though it is often **omitted** before *and*, e.g. *I went to France, Germany, Italy and Spain.*
- when words or phrases **interrupt** the normal progression of a sentence, e.g. *I decided, however, that I needed something to eat first.*

A colon is often used to introduce further **details** such as an explanation or a list, e.g. *The shop is full of antiques: dining tables, chairs, wardrobes, mirrors, and so on.*

A semicolon is sometimes used **instead of** a full stop when two sentences are very closely **connected**, or to separate two main clauses, especially ones that aren't **joined** by a conjunction **such as** *and* or *but*, e.g. *I went round this morning; nobody was there.*

A slash separates words or phrases that are **alternatives**, e.g. *single/married.*

www.hellooteacher.ir

Glossary

abbreviation a short form of a word (e.g. *a.m.* is an **abbreviation** meaning 'in the morning').

capital letter *A B C* are **capital letters** (*a b c* are **small letters**).

pause a short period of time when sb stops talking.

separate sb/sth keep people or things away from each other. SYN **divide sb/sth.**

list a series of names, items, or numbers (e.g. a **shopping list,** a **list of countries**).

omit sth FML If you **omit sth**, you don't include it. SYN **leave sth out.**

interrupt sth occur in the middle of sth and stop it continuing.

details small pieces of information about sth.

instead of sb/sth in the place of sb/sth.

connect sth put two or more things together. SYN **join sth.**

such as You use **such as** to introduce an example. SYN **like.**

alternative one of two or more things that you can choose between.

4 Complete the sentences.

► Sentences have to begin with a capital letter.

1 I wrote a _____ of irregular verbs in my notebook.
2 I would use this dictionary _____ of the other one; it's much better.
3 We often use *and* or *but* to _____ two parts of a sentence.
4 In this application form, you have to give _____ of your work experience.
5 I asked her to marry me. There was a long _____, and finally she said yes.
6 *Prep.* is an _____ of *preposition*.
7 You need to use more adjectives _____ as *beautiful*, *delightful*, and *attractive*.
8 The teacher said we can _____ out Exercise 5 and go on to Exercise 6.
9 You can use brackets to _____ extra information from the rest of the sentence.
10 The director had to _____ the lesson to tell us to leave the building quickly.
11 You could _____ the two sentences into one by using *so*.
12 You can use a full stop, but the _____ is that you use a semicolon.

5 **Find pairs of words in the box that go together for a reason. Write a sentence about them.**

comma	omit	abbreviation	join	such as ✓	p.m.	information
separate	like ✓	leave out	full stop	details	divide	connect

► 'Such as' and 'like' mean the same thing.

_____ _____
_____ _____
_____ _____

6 What punctuation is missing, and where?

► We live in this house A full stop is missing at the end of the sentence .

1 she works in Bristol. _____ .
2 He's a tall thin boy. _____ .
3 The book is *in on* the table. Which is correct? _____ .
4 We have two choices stay here and wait, or go and look for them. _____ .
5 When we arrived we went straight to a restaurant. _____ .
6 This is my boyfriends watch. _____ .
7 After that fortunately we had no more problems. _____ .
8 We couldn't get in the door was locked. _____ .

www.hellooteacher.ir

Review: Learning

Unit 1

1 Rewrite the sentences. Change the part of speech of the underlined words.

▶ Did you <u>discuss</u> it? Did you have a discussion about it?
1 Could you <u>translate</u> this, please? Could you do _____?
2 I've got to <u>revise</u> for an exam. I've got to do _____.
3 <u>Repetition</u> helps me remember. It helps me remember if _____.
4 How did he <u>explain</u> it? What was _____?
5 Go on – <u>guess!</u> Go on – have _____!
6 I <u>record</u> new words in a book. I keep _____.
7 Did you <u>chat</u> about it? Did you have _____.
8 How do you <u>pronounce</u> that word? What's _____?

2 Complete the text with words and phrases from the box.

make a note of | go through | texts ✓ | translation | pronounce | make
pronunciation | gist | experiment | foreign | guess | context | recognize

I've just started university and I'm studying Italian. We spend a lot of time reading ▶ texts – they're usually articles from Italian newspapers. They contain a lot of words you don't (1) _____, and to start with, you have to try to get the (2) _____ of the articles to show that you understand the general idea. In class we (3) _____ the texts and (4) _____ any useful new words. The teacher tells us to (5) _____ the meaning of new words by looking at the (6) _____ they are in. We then write a (7) _____ of them if we want to, and learn how to (8) _____ them correctly. I often (9) _____ mistakes with (10) _____, but I don't think it matters; it's important to (11) _____ with language; that's the best way to make progress. Next year, I'm starting another (12) _____ language: Russian. I'm really excited about that.

Unit 2

1 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

▶ I want to learn Italian – nothing very specialized, just everyday Italian.
1 It was a very c_____ story – quite hard to understand.
2 I don't know enough words, so my vocabulary needs to e_____. That is my main a_____ on this course.
3 I've lived in Costa Rica for five years now, and I can speak Spanish f_____.
4 You need to know the subject very well and talk about it in d_____.
5 There is now a wide r_____ of evening courses that you can do at the college.
6 Does this drink c_____ alcohol?
7 Some of the courses are too s_____ – I don't have the knowledge to do them.
8 You have to complete each sentence with an a_____ word.

2 Complete the text with words from the box.

progress | aware | spoke ✓ | getting | frustrating | encouraging
while | accurate | motivated | express

When I went to live in Argentina, I ▶ spoke some Spanish but I couldn't understand people when they spoke Spanish to me, so it was very (1) _____. But I was very (2) _____. I worked hard at my Spanish, and after a (3) _____ I could see that I was making a lot of (4) _____. It was also very (5) _____ when people told me that I was (6) _____

www.hellooteacher.ir

better. My problem was that I still made a lot of mistakes, and I wasn't (7) _____ of them. Anyway, I kept trying, and after about a year, I was able to (8) _____ most things I needed to, and my Spanish was also quite (9) _____ – I only made a few mistakes.

Unit 3

1 Complete the words in the text.

When you meet a new word in a text, ▶ for example, *genuine*, you might want to look up the meaning in a dictionary. It's important to look at all the (1) d_____ in an (2) e_____, and then (3) s_____ the correct one, according to the context of the sentence. For (4) i_____, if the sentence is *I bought a genuine Velasquez painting*, you know the meaning is 'real' or 'authentic'. *Genuine* is a difficult word to pronounce, so it is worth looking at the phonetic (5) s_____, and note too how the word is (6) s_____; in fact, the (7) s_____ is on the first (8) s_____.

If you come across an (9) i_____ or (10) e_____ such as *under the weather*, you should check the meaning (it means 'feeling slightly ill'), and then look at the (11) s_____ of the phrase: is it formal or informal? This particular phrase isn't rude, but you certainly wouldn't want to (12) o_____ anyone, so it's always a good idea to check.

Unit 4

1 Read the text, then answer the questions below.

1 *I really want to leave home, so I went to see a flat last night. It had everything: a kitchen, a living*
2 *room, a bathroom, a bedroom, and a study – and it was in a great location. I realized, however, that*
3 *it would be too expensive for me on my own. I rang Mr Pavlides at the agency this morning; he offered*
4 *to make it a bit cheaper, so I decided to take it. My mother was really pleased. 'You're moving out at*
5 *last! But Michael, who's going to wash your shirts for you now?' she said.*

What punctuation is there:

▶ after *home* in line 1 a comma
1 after *everything* in line 1? _____
2 after *on my own* in line 3? _____
3 after *this morning* in line 3? _____
4 before *You're* in line 4? _____
5 after *last* in line 5? _____
6 in *who's* in line 5? _____
7 after *now* in line 5? _____

2 Look at the text again. Complete the sentences.

▶ The first sentence begins with a capital letter.
1 There is a comma after *home*, which s_____ the two parts of the sentence.
2 There is a colon after *everything*. It is often used before more d_____ or a l_____.
3 In the sentence beginning *I realized*, the word *however* i_____ the progression of the sentence, so commas are used around it.
4 After the word *morning* there is a semicolon. This can be used i_____ of a full stop when the two sentences are closely c_____.

www.hellooteacher.ir

5 I can talk about appearance

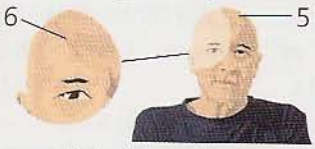
Male appearance

He's got **broad shoulders**[1] and is **well built**.

He's tall and **skinny**, but he's **in good shape**.

He's got thick **eyebrows**[2] and **stubble**[3]. He's **dark-skinned**[4]. OPP **light-** OR **pale-skinned**.

He's quite **plump**, with a **fattish** face.



He's **clean-shaven** and **bald**[5]. He has a **scar**[6] on his head.

He's **going bald** OR He's **losing his hair** OR His hair's **receding**.

Glossary

male Men and boys are **male**, women and girls are **female** (a person's **sex** is male or female).
well built with a solid, strong body. SYN **stocky**.
skinny very thin, but not in an attractive way.
in good/bad shape *in good/bad physical condition.*
plump quite fat, in a nice way.
fattish quite fat. (*See spotlight, next page.*)
clean-shaven without a beard or moustache.

1 One letter is missing from each word. Write the words correctly.

▶ skiny skinny
1 eyebows _____
2 fatish _____
3 sca _____
4 brod shoulders _____
5 subble _____
6 clean-shave _____
7 in good sape _____

2 Similar or different? Write S or D.

▶ fattish | plump S
1 skinny | dark-skinned _____
2 in good shape | in good condition _____
3 go bald | be bald _____
4 stocky | well built _____
5 dark-skinned | pale-skinned _____
6 stubble | a scar _____
7 pale-skinned | light-skinned _____
8 He's losing his hair. | His hair's receding. _____
9 male | female _____

3 Complete the questions. You will write your answers to the questions in Exercise 4.

In your family: ABOUT YOUR FAMILY

1 who's in good s_____? _____
2 who's going b_____? _____
3 who's c_____-shaven? _____
4 who's got broad s_____? _____
5 who's well b_____? _____
6 who's sk_____? _____
7 who's dark-s_____? _____
8 who's got a s_____ on their body? _____

4 ABOUT YOUR FAMILY Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.

5 Look at the pictures and cover the texts. Can you remember the descriptions?

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Female appearance

This is my mother at 27 when she **was pregnant**; in fact, she was **expecting** me. She had a **pretty**, **roundish** face with beautiful **smooth skin** and long hair.

Here's Mum now; she looks **tanned**. She's still **slim** with a good **figure**. Her **appearance** hasn't changed much, but she's got a few **wrinkles**[1], she's **going grey**, and her hair's much shorter and **neater**. She wears **contact lenses**, and you can't **tell** that she's nearly 60.

spotlight *-ish*

The suffix **-ish** is used with some adjectives to mean 'quite'. *A **roundish** face* is a face which is quite round. Also: **tallish**, **youngish**, **fattish**, etc.

Glossary

be pregnant • SYN **be expecting a baby.**
pretty • attractive and nice to look at (used especially about girls or young women).
smooth • with a completely flat surface. OPP **rough.**
skin • Your **skin** covers your body.
tanned • having brown skin after spending time in the sun. **tan** N.
slim • thin in an attractive way. SYN **slender.**
figure • the shape of a woman's body.
appearance • the way sb looks.
go grey OR **white** • become grey-haired or white-haired.
neat • tidy and carefully arranged.
contact lenses • small round pieces of plastic you wear in your eyes to help you see better.
tell sth • know or guess sth.

6 True or false? Write T or F.

▶ If your hair is neat, it's tidy. T
1 Contact lenses are the same as glasses. .....
2 Skin can be rough or smooth. .....
3 A tallish person is very tall. .....
4 A pregnant woman has just had a baby. .....
5 You get tanned sitting in the sun. .....
6 Everyone has a good figure. .....
7 You usually use 'pretty' to describe a man. .....
8 Your hair can go white or grey. .....

7 Complete the sentences.

▶ Does she wear contact lenses ?
1 Her ..... has gone grey, and it's completely changed her ..... .
2 She's still very slim, so you can't ..... she's ..... a baby in July.
3 I'm feeling so old these days – look at these ..... around my eyes!
4 My baby's skin is so ..... to touch, but my hands are really ..... .
5 She's got a beautiful figure: she's tall and ..... .
6 You can ..... she's been on holiday – she's got a lovely ..... .

8 Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. What are the words?

www.hellooteacher.ir

6 I can talk about character

How I **see** myself

Dan (33) 'I'm **ambitious**, **self-confident**, and **generous**. I'm also very **impatient**.'

Kaz (18) 'I'm always **cheerful**, I'm **easy-going**, and I've got lots of **energy**.'

Giles (45) 'I see myself as **honest**, **hard-working**, and generally **tolerant**.'

How others **see** me

'Some people really like me; others think I'm **arrogant** and maybe **aggressive**.'

'My parents don't think I'm very **responsible**; my friends just think I'm **crazy**.'

'Other people probably think I'm a bit **dull**, without much **sense of humour**.'

spotlight *crazy, mad, stupid*

Crazy INF and **mad** mean 'not sensible or practical; a bit stupid'.
Both words can describe a person or an action or idea, but the meaning is not always negative. They can describe someone who is a bit out of control but just wants to enjoy life. **Stupid** is always negative.

Glossary

see sb as sth	imagine or think of sb in a particular way.
ambitious	having a strong desire to do well or be successful. OPP **unambitious**. **ambition** N.
self-confident	feeling sure about your own ability. OPP **insecure**.
generous	happy to give more money and help than is usual. OPP **mean**. **generosity** N.
impatient	not able to stay calm and wait for sth/sb. OPP **patient**. **patience** N.
arrogant	thinking you are better than other people. OPP **modest**. **arrogance** N.
aggressive	likely to fight or argue. **aggression** N.
cheerful	feeling happy.
easy-going	relaxed and not worried by what other people do.
energy	the ability to be very active without getting tired. **energetic** ADJ.
responsible	able to act sensibly and intelligently. OPP **irresponsible**.
honest	always telling the truth. OPP **dishonest**. **honesty** N.
hard-working	able to work with effort and for a long time. OPP **lazy**.
tolerant	able to accept ideas you don't agree with. OPP **intolerant**. **tolerance** N.
dull	boring.
sense of humour	the ability to laugh at things and see when sth is funny.

1 Positive or negative, or can it be both? Write P or N or B.

▶ She's very cheerful. P
1 He's very arrogant. .....
2 They're a bit dull. .....
3 Both boys are very honest. .....
4 My boss is very tolerant. .....
▶ He's very ambitious. B
5 She's so modest. .....
6 He's very self-confident. .....
7 Karen is so mean. .....
8 My brother is absolutely mad. .....

www.hellooteacher.ir

2 Correct the spelling mistakes.

▶ onest honest
1 energie _____
2 responsable _____
3 generos _____
4 cheerfull _____
5 energetik _____
6 agressive _____
7 patiente _____
8 tolarant _____

3 Match 1–8 with a–i.

▶ feeling sure about your own ability c
1 boring _____
2 likely to fight or argue _____
3 thinking you are better than others _____
4 always telling the truth _____
5 ability to laugh at things _____
6 feeling happy _____
7 unhappy to give money or help people _____
8 able to accept ideas you don't agree with _____

a aggressive
b cheerful
c self-confident ✓
d tolerant
e sense of humour
f dull
g arrogant
h honest
i mean

4 Complete the tables.

ADJECTIVE	OPPOSITE
▶ patient	impatient
honest	_____
responsible	_____
lazy	_____
generous	_____
ambitious	_____
self-confident	_____

ADJECTIVE	NOUN
ambitious	ambition
honest	_____
tolerant	_____
aggressive	_____
arrogant	_____
generous	_____
patient	_____

5 Complete the words in each sentence.

▶ If you disagree with Matthew, he can get a bit aggressive .
1 My brother's a bit irresponsible and does some c_____ things; but he's OK.
2 Keiko's a good person to share a flat with: she's very e_____-g_____ .
3 I like Zoltan; he's got a great s_____ of h_____ .
4 Hamdi is a fantastic musician, but very few people realize this because he's so m_____ .
5 Since Katy got a new job and a boyfriend, she's become more s_____-c_____ .
6 My brother's lazy, but my sisters have always been very h_____-w_____ .
7 I don't think young Andy is r_____ enough to drive a car.
8 Andrea has so much e_____ ; she's always doing something.

6 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions, or ask another student.

1 Are you ambitious? If so, in what way? _____
2 Would you say you're hard-working or a bit lazy? _____
3 Are you intolerant of anything? If so, what? _____
4 When do you get impatient? _____
5 How do you see yourself? Write three adjectives. _____
6 Which two qualities do you think are the most important: honesty, patience, tolerance, or generosity? _____

7 Test yourself. Cover your opposites and nouns in Exercise 4 and test yourself. Then cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What do they mean?

www.hellooteacher.ir

7 I can describe my feelings

A Feelings

Word	Example	Meaning
thrilled	*He was **thrilled** to win and he **kissed**[1] the cup.*	very happy and excited. SYN **delighted.**
furious	*I lost his keys: he was **absolutely furious**.*	very angry.
astonished	*I was **astonished** to hear he was married.*	very surprised. SYN **amazed.**
heartbroken	*She was **heartbroken** when her father died.*	very sad and emotionally upset.
terrified	*I was **terrified** when the plane took off.*	very frightened. SYN **scared stiff** INF.
miserable	*You look **very miserable**. What's wrong?*	unhappy and depressed. SYN **fed up** INF.
proud	*I felt very **proud** when my book was published.*	pleased about sth you or other people have done.
jealous	*My boyfriend is **jealous** when I'm with other boys.* *I've always been **jealous** of Tom; everyone likes him.*	1 angry or sad because you're afraid of losing sb's love. 2 angry or sad because sb has sth you don't have. SYN **envious.**
anxious	*He was **anxious** before he went into hospital.*	worried and afraid.
upset	*Sally was very **upset** because no one spoke to her.*	sad and angry because of sth that has happened.

spotlight *absolutely* and *very*

Use **absolutely** before extreme adjectives, e.g. *furious, astonished, heartbroken, terrified.*
Use **very** before degree adjectives, e.g. *miserable, jealous, anxious, upset.*
*I was **absolutely** amazed.* (NOT ~~very~~ amazed.)
*They were **very** proud.* (NOT ~~absolutely~~ proud.)

1 Complete the words and phrases.

▶ amazed
1 anx_____
2 fur_____
3 ast_____
4 thr_____
5 _____broken
6 scared _____
7 ki_____

2 Write synonyms for these words and phrases.

▶ worried anxious
1 thrilled _____
2 fed up _____
3 scared stiff _____
4 astonished _____
5 envious _____

3 ABOUT YOU How might you feel in these situations? Write your answers using words from the table, or ask another student.

▶ Someone hits your car because they were driving badly. I'd be furious.
1 You've just passed an important exam. I'd be _____.
2 Your best friend has bought a car that you would love to have. _____.
3 Your lovely old dog has just died. _____.
4 A man walks up to you in the street and holds a knife to your face. _____.
5 You're on holiday but you can't go out because you've got a bad cold. _____.
6 You see someone you don't know kissing your boyfriend/girlfriend. _____.
7 You have been chosen to make a speech at an important event. _____.
8 You are going somewhere by plane and you don't like flying. _____.

4 Test yourself. Cover the meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

B How emotional are you?

ABOUT YOU

YOU AND YOUR EMOTIONS

		Are you like this?
a	I'm an **emotional** person and I like to **show my feelings**.	Yes/No
b	I think I'm quite **sensitive**, so I try not to **upset** other people.	Yes/No
c	I'm **sensitive** about my appearance.	Yes/No
d	When **I'm in a bad mood**, I sometimes **hurt people's feelings**.	Yes/No
e	In general, I think I'm quite a **moody** person.	Yes/No
f	When people have personal problems, I think I'm usually very **sympathetic** and **supportive**.	Yes/No

spotlight *sensitive*

Sensitive has two meanings:
1 a positive meaning: 'able to understand people's feelings and problems' (e.g. sentence (b) above). OPP **insensitive.**
2 a more negative meaning: 'easily upset' (e.g. sentence (c) above).

Glossary

emotional having strong feelings, and often showing them. **emotion** N.
show your feelings express your feelings openly. OPP **hide your feelings.**
upset sb make sb unhappy.
be in a bad mood feel angry or unhappy at a particular time. OPP **be in a good mood.**
hurt sb's feelings say sth that makes sb unhappy.
moody If you are **moody,** you often change and become angry or unhappy for no obvious reason.
sympathetic kind and showing you understand sb's problems (**sympathetic** doesn't mean 'friendly' or 'nice' in English).
supportive giving help to sb who has a problem.

5 Circle the correct answer.

▶ Try not to hurt/upset his feelings.
1 Sarah's not very emotional, and tends to show/hide her feelings.
2 You can talk to Gary easily about your problems; he's very sympathetic/moody.
3 Be careful what you say to Susan because she's very sympathetic/sensitive.
4 You never know what Karen will be like because she's so moody/supportive.
5 Brian is the most emotional/insensitive man I know; he upsets everyone.
6 Love, anger, and fear are all emotions/moods.

6 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

▶ Caroline is very sensitive. She seems to know when someone has a problem.
1 Keep away from Elton – he's in a bad _____ today.
2 He _____ his parents because he was so rude to them.
3 My children cooked all my meals when I was ill. They were very _____.
4 I broke my leg and it was really painful, but my friends weren't very _____.
5 I'm _____ a really good mood today. I think it's the fantastic weather.
6 Paul tends to upset people and _____ their feelings.

7 ABOUT YOU Complete the right-hand column in the questionnaire, or ask another student.

www.hellooteacher.ir

8 I can talk about relationships

A Friendship

Word	Example	Meaning
friendship	*Our **friendship** has always been very important to us.*	the relationship between people who are friends.
make friends	*I find it difficult to **make friends.***	form friendly relationships.
get on (well) with sb	*Do you **get on well with** your classmates?*	have a good relationship with sb. OPP **not get on with sb**.
rely on sb **reliable** ADJ	*I can always **rely on** my sisters. My brother's not very **reliable**.*	feel sure that sb will do what they say they will do. SYN **depend on sb**.
trust sb	*You have to **trust** your friends.*	believe sb is good and won't hurt you.
loyal	*He was very **loyal** to my father.*	being a friend to sb, even in difficult times. OPP **disloyal**.
sociable	*She's very **sociable** and gets on well with people.*	A **sociable** person likes the company of other people. OPP **antisocial**.
keep in touch	*Simon is an **old friend**. We've always **kept in touch**.*	(of two or more people) stay in contact by speaking or writing to each other.

1 Combine words in the box to make phrases.

▶ rely ✓ friend get on well friends on someone ✓ a close keep make in touch on someone depend with someone

▶ rely on someone _____ _____ _____

_____ _____ _____

spotlight *friend*

An **old friend** is someone you have known for a long time; a **close friend** is someone you know and like very much. If you **are friendly with sb**, you treat them as a friend.

2 Answer the questions.

▶ Another way of saying 'stay in contact with someone' is *keep in* touch.

1 *Rely (on)* is a verb. What's the adjective? _____

2 What's a synonym for *rely on*? _____

3 A *sociable* person enjoys the company of others. What's the opposite? _____

4 What's the opposite of *loyal*? _____

5 What's the relationship between people who are friends? _____

6 What do you call a friend you like very much? A _____ friend.

3 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals in the correct form. The meaning must stay the same.

▶ He's a bit antisocial. SOCIABLE He isn't very sociable.

1 He likes Ruben. FRIENDLY _____

2 She never phones us. TOUCH _____

3 I don't have a good relationship with my father. GET ON _____

4 I became her friend at university. MAKE _____

5 My boss is very reliable. RELY _____

6 I've known Donna for a long time. OLD _____

4 Test yourself. Cover the examples and meanings. What are the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

B When things go wrong

Perfect Weekend *Channel Five*
Wednesday 9 p.m. – 11 p.m.

TV drama about a group of young people who **got to know one another** at university, and now, five years later, **get together** for a weekend. But things soon **go wrong**. John doesn't get on with Dan, and now **realizes** they **have nothing in common**, while Pete **regrets** the fact that he **split up** with Amy, the girl he used to **go out with**. Now Amy is **in a** serious **relationship** with Keith (who didn't go to university), and Keith doesn't like Amy's old friends. This creates tension in the group, and soon there's a big **row**. Amy **falls out** with Pete, and Dan and John stop speaking to each other. And that's just the beginning ...

spotlight ***have a row / an argument***

Both phrases mean 'have an angry discussion', e.g. *I **had a row with** Li.*
The verb related to *argument* is **argue**, e.g. *They **argued with** each other.*

Glossary

get to know sb meet sb a number of times and become friends.
one another each other.
get together (of two or more people) meet for a social reason.
go wrong used when a problem happens in a situation or relationship.
realize sth begin to understand sth that you didn't know before.
have nothing in common (of two people) have no interests that are the same. OPP **have a lot in common.**
regret sth / doing sth feel sorry about sth you did or didn't do.
split up with sb stop being in a romantic relationship with sb.
go out with sb have sb as a boyfriend or girlfriend.
in a (serious) relationship having a long-term boyfriend or girlfriend.
fall out with sb argue with sb and stop being friendly with them.

5 Circle the correct word.

► They were very happy, then something got/went wrong.
1 Hana's by/in a serious relationship.
2 Lian and Chen have fallen out/on.
3 Shall we come/get together next week?
4 They have lots in/on common.
5 She got/went out with Len at university.
6 How did you get/go to know Anya?

6 Complete the missing words.

► I went out with Osman for two months, then we fell out over something stupid.
1 I don't get on with Dirk. We a_____ a lot, and last week we had a terrible r_____.
2 I'd like to get to k_____ Anders better because we have a lot in c_____.
3 Karli s_____ up with him last week and I think she r_____ it now; she's a bit depressed.
4 We have nothing in common. That's why I r_____ I could never g_____ o_____ with him.

7 Complete the text.

Milo and I got to ► know one (1) _____ when we worked together during the summer. We had a lot in (2) _____ and got on really well, but, unfortunately, he was in a serious (3) _____ at the time. Then it all went (4) _____. He and his girlfriend Inez had a big (5) _____ and he (6) _____ up with her. We started to (7) _____ out with each other almost immediately, but Milo soon (8) _____ his decision to end his relationship with Inez. He (9) _____ he was still in love with her, and that our relationship was a big mistake.

www.hellooteacher.ir

9 I can talk about families

A Family relationships

Marilyn Monroe was an **only child** from a **single-parent family**, but she lived with **foster parents** until she was seven, and then she was **adopted** by her mother's best friend. She got married at sixteen, and she got **divorced** three times.

Bill Clinton's father died before he was born. His mother, Virginia, had to find a way to **support** Bill, so she studied nursing, and Bill was **brought up** by his grandparents. When Bill was four, his mother married Roger Clinton, who became Bill's **stepfather**. Roger and Virginia had a son called Roger, who is Bill Clinton's **half-brother**.

Glossary

only child a child with no brothers or sisters.

single parent a mother or father who looks after their children alone.

foster parent sb who looks after another person's child in their home for a time.

adopt a child take sb's child into your family and legally make them your child.

get divorced legally end your marriage. SYN **get a divorce.**

support sb help someone live by giving them money, food, or a home.

bring sb up look after a child and teach them how to live.

stepfather a man who has married your mother but is not your father (related words: **stepmother**, **stepson**, **stepdaughter**, **stepbrother**, **stepsister**).

half-brother, **half-sister** a brother or sister who has either the same mother or the same father as you.

1 Complete the words or phrases.

▶ step mother
1 an o_____ child
2 h_____-sister
3 f_____ parents
4 s_____father
5 get _____orced
6 ad_____ a child
7 s_____ parent
8 br_____ somebody up

2 Same or different? Write S or D.

▶ She's a single parent. | She's a foster parent. D
1 He's an only child. | He hasn't got any brothers or sisters. _____
2 He's my half-brother. | He's my stepbrother. _____
3 He's my stepson. | He's my wife's son by her first marriage. _____
4 She was adopted as a baby. | She lived with foster parents as a baby. _____
5 She's my half-sister. | She's my mother's sister. _____
6 Our uncle supported us. | Our uncle brought us up. _____

3 Complete the questions.

1 Where were you b_____ up?
2 Have you got any brothers or sisters, or are you an o_____ child?
3 Do you have any h_____-brothers or -sisters?
4 Do you know anyone who is a s_____ parent? If so, who?
5 Do you know anyone who has recently got d_____ ?

ABOUT YOU

_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Family history

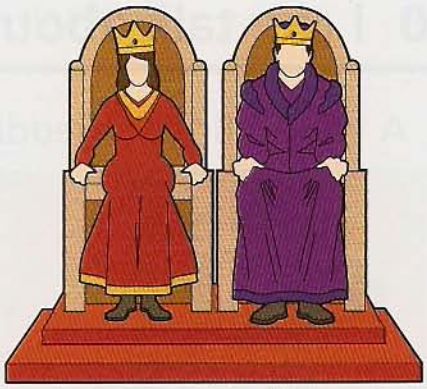
I'm **related to** a **member** of the **royal** family.

We have **ancestors** who were Russian **immigrants**. They **emigrated from** Russia **to** Britain in the nineteenth century.

I'm from London, but **previous generations** of my family lived in Malta.

Some of my **relatives** were **originally** from China.

I **look like** my grandmother, but I **take after** my father. We're both very lazy!



queen king

Glossary

be related to sb	be in the same family as sb. **relative** N. SYN **relation**.
member	a person who is in a group such as a family or a club.
royal	relating to a **king** or **queen** (*see picture*).
ancestor	a person in your family who lived a long time ago.
immigrant	a person who comes to a foreign country to live there.
emigrate from . . . to . . .	leave your country in order to live in another.
previous	happening before the one you are talking about.
generation	all the people in a family born at about the same time.
originally	in the beginning, before other things happened.
look like sb	have the same appearance as sb.
take after sb	be like an older member of your family.

5 Circle the correct answer.

▶ Our ancestors were Italian (immigrants)/members.
1 She's one of my ancestors/relatives; she was born in 1880.
2 Janet looks like/takes after her daughter.
3 My ancestors emigrated/related to Australia a century ago.
4 Are your relations/immigrants from Italy?
5 I'm originally/previously from Rome: that's where I was born.
6 He's married to a member/generation of the royal family.

6 Complete the questions. ABOUT YOU

▶ What do you know about your ancestors ?
1 Are you r to anyone famous?
2 Do you have a r family in your country?
If so, do you have a king or a q ?
3 Where do/did the p generations of your family live?
4 Which m of your family do you look l ?
5 Do you take a your mother or your father? How?

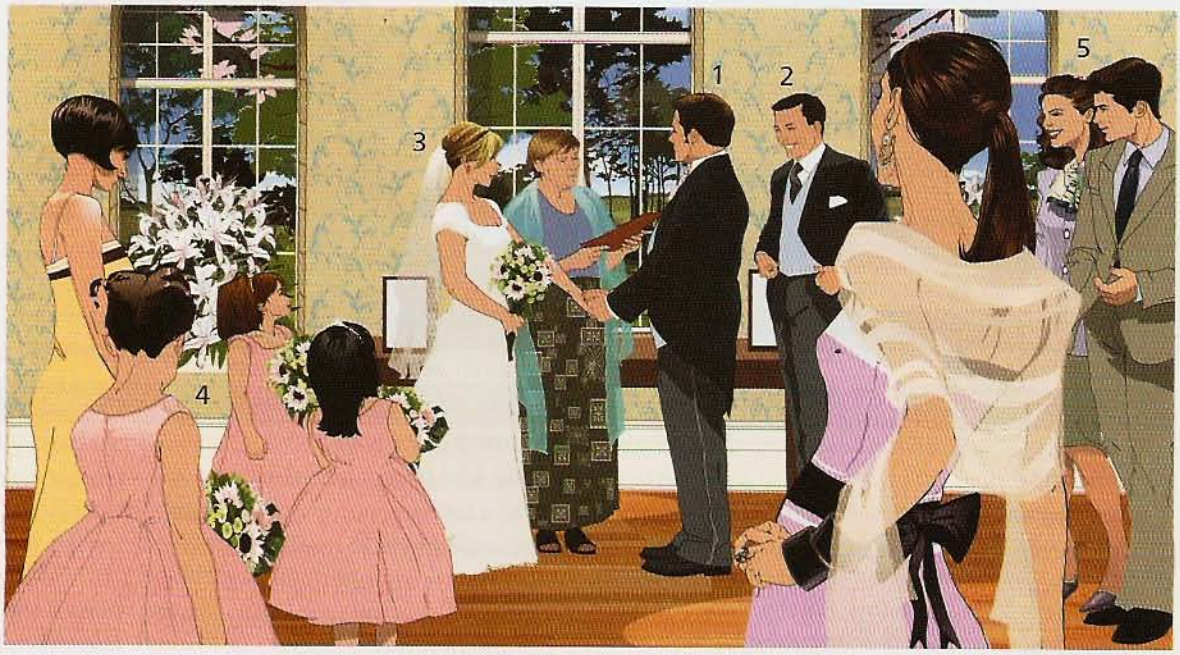
7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 6, or ask another student.

8 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

10 I can talk about weddings and funerals

A A typical British wedding



When two people are planning to get married, they can **choose** to have a **religious ceremony** or a **civil ceremony.** On the **wedding** day, the **groom**[1] is helped by a **best man**[2] who brings the **rings** to the wedding ceremony. The **bride**[3] may have one or more **bridesmaids**[4]. Afterwards, there is a **reception** for the **couple** and the wedding **guests**[5]. It's **traditional** for the best man and the groom to **make speeches**, and then everyone **drinks a toast** to the **couple**, and **wishes** them a long and happy **marriage**. After the reception, they usually go on their **honeymoon**. On the same day every year after that, the couple **celebrate** their wedding **anniversary.**

Glossary

choose sth PT **chose** PP **chosen** decide which thing you want. **choice** N.

ceremony a formal public event.

religious A **religious ceremony** takes place in a church, mosque, temple, etc. **religion** N.

civil A **civil ceremony** is a non-religious one.

wedding a time when a man and woman get married.

rings

wedding reception a meal and/or party after a wedding.

traditional A **traditional** thing is sth that people have done for a long time.

make a speech give a formal talk to a lot of people at a special event.

drink a toast to sb raise a glass of wine, etc. to wish sb success or happiness.

wish sb sth say that you hope good things will happen to sb.

honeymoon a holiday for a couple who have just got married.

celebrate sth have a special meal, party, etc. to show you are happy about sth.

anniversary the date on which sth happened the previous year or in the past.

spotlight *wedding* and *marriage*; *bride* and *groom*

A **wedding** is the ceremony for a **couple** (two people who are getting married). **Marriage** is the relationship between a husband and wife.

We went to my sister's ***wedding*** *on Saturday.*

Jack and Dana's ***marriage*** *lasted 40 years.*

On the wedding day, the couple are called the **bride** and **groom.** After they are married, they become **husband** and **wife.**

www.hellooteacher.ir

1 Correct the spelling mistakes. Be careful: some words are correct.

▶ mariage marriage
1 anniversery _____
2 I've choosen it _____
3 tradicional _____
4 civile _____
5 bridgesmaid _____
6 celebrate _____
7 weding _____
8 honeymoon _____
9 speach _____
10 gest _____
11 ceremonie _____
12 recepcion _____
13 religian _____

2 Circle the correct word.

▶ Jane and Mark's wedding/marriage is next Saturday.
1 Mark is the groom/best man.
2 The bridesmaid/bride is Mark's sister.
3 They have chosen/wished a religious ceremony.
4 They've invited about sixty brides/guests to the wedding.
5 The reception will be before/after the wedding ceremony.
6 The rings will be brought to the ceremony by the couple/best man.
7 Speeches are traditional at the reception/best man.
8 When they're on their honeymoon, Jane and Mark will be bride and groom/husband and wife.

3 Complete the phrases using words from the box.

▶ groom ceremony a speech man a toast ceremony✓
reception your honeymoon anniversary a happy marriage

▶ wedding ceremony
1 go on _____
2 drink _____
3 wish someone _____
4 make _____
5 bride and _____
6 celebrate your _____
7 a religious _____
8 the best _____
9 a wedding _____

4 Complete the questions with a suitable word.

1 Can people _____ to have a religious ceremony or a _____ ceremony?
2 Does the groom have a _____ man at the ceremony?
3 Does the bride have any _____ with her?
4 In the ceremony, do the bride and groom put on wedding _____ ?
5 Is there usually a _____ after the ceremony?
6 How many _____ are usually invited?
7 Is it _____ for people to _____ speeches?
8 Do people usually drink a _____ to the bride and groom?
9 Do the _____ traditionally go on their _____ after the wedding?
10 Do people usually _____ their wedding anniversary every year?

ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY

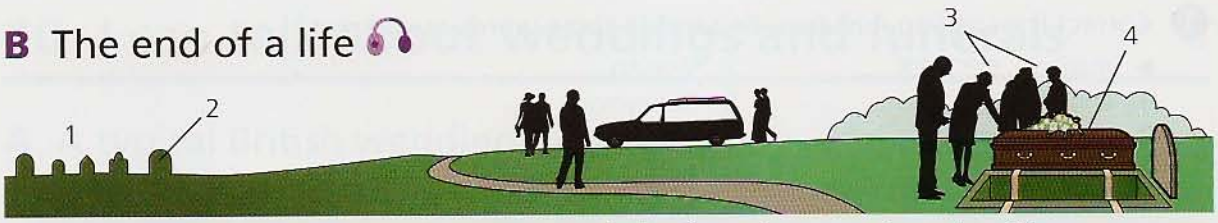
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

5 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Answer the questions in Exercise 4, or ask another student.

6 Test yourself. Look at the picture and cover the text. Can you remember the words for the people?

www.hellooteacher.ir

B The end of a life



1 **graves** 2 **gravestone** 3 **mourners;** the family are **in mourning** 4 **coffin**

Word	Example	Meaning
die (**die of** an illness) **death** N, **dead** ADJ	*He **died of** old age.* *His **death** was very sad.*	stop living.
widow	*Mark's **widow** never remarried.*	a woman whose husband has died.
widower	*He's been a **widower** for years.*	a man whose wife has died.
funeral	*The **funeral** was at the church.*	a ceremony after sb dies.
bury sb, **burial** N	*He was **buried** this morning.*	put a dead body in the ground.
cremate sb **cremation** N	*My grandmother wasn't buried; she was **cremated.***	burn the body of a dead person as part of a funeral.
cemetery	*He's buried in that **cemetery**.*	a place where dead people are buried.
will N	*He **left** his sister €10,000 **in his will**.*	a document that says who will have your money or things when you die.
inherit sth **inheritance** N	*I **inherited** €1,000 from my uncle.*	receive money or things from sb when they die.

7 One letter is missing. Write the words correctly.

▶ ded *dead*
1 widoer _____
2 gravstone _____
3 funral _____
4 bry _____
5 inerit _____
6 deth _____
7 cemetry _____
8 cofin _____

8 Circle the correct words or phrases.

▶ We went to the coffin/cemetery/funeral yesterday.
1 The old lady died/is dead/is death last Tuesday.
2 My grandfather's name is on the death/will/gravestone.
3 I met Jack at the funeral/burial/widow.
4 My grandfather was inherited/buried/cremated when he died.
5 Mrs Erikson was a widow/widower/mourner.
6 My wife was standing near the grave/coffin/cremation.

9 Complete the text.

I never knew my grandfather, because he ▶ *died* in 1960, before I was born. He died (1) _____ heart problems. My grandmother was (2) _____ mourning for a long time. She didn't marry again; she was a (3) _____ for thirty years. I was very sad at the news of her (4) _____ in 1990. I can remember her (5) _____ at our local church. She was (6) _____ in the cemetery near the park. She left my mother some money in her (7) _____, and my uncle (8) _____ her house.

10 Test yourself. Cover the words and examples and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?

www.hellooteacher.ir

Review: People

Unit 5

1 Circle the correct answer.

▶ My uncle is going black/(grey).
1 Is she waiting for/expecting a baby?
2 Do you wear contact/content lenses?
3 Ahmed always looks very neat/plump and tidy.
4 You can't know/tell that she's in her fifties.
5 She goes to the gym every day; that's why she still has a great appearance/figure.
6 Olga was very bald/tanned after her holiday in Portugal.
7 You get a few scars/wrinkles round your eyes as you get older.
8 My boss is in his forties but still in good shape/figure.

2 Complete the sentences.

1 Emilio's well built, with broad _____ .
2 My dad's completely _____ ; now my older brother is _____ his hair as well.
3 He got the _____ on his leg when he fell off his bike as a child.
4 I don't think his _____ has changed much in the last 20 years: he's still in good _____ .
5 My father has always been clean-_____ – never had a beard.
6 I wouldn't say she's fat, but she is quite _____ .

Unit 6

1 Complete the table.

Adjective	Meaning	Noun	OPP of adjective
ambitious	having a strong desire to be successful.	ambition	unambitious
g_____	happy to give more money and help than is usual.	_____	_____
h_____	always telling the truth.	_____	_____
t_____	able to accept ideas you don't agree with.	_____	_____
p_____	able to stay calm and wait for sth.	_____	_____
a_____	thinking you are better than other people.	_____	_____
h_____	able to work with effort and for a long time.	XXXXXX	_____

2 Complete the dialogues.

▶ Is he energetic? ~ No, he's got no energy .
1 That was a mad thing to do.~ Yes, absolutely _____ .
2 Do you find him interesting? ~ No, I think he's a _____ man.
3 Do you think you're hard-working? ~ To be honest, no – I'm quite _____ .
4 He's always looking for a fight. ~ Yes, I find him very _____ .
5 She never laughs at anything. ~ I know, she's got no _____ of _____ .
6 He's such a happy person. ~ Yes, he's always very _____ .

www.hellooteacher.ir

Unit 7

1 Replace the underlined word with either a synonym or an opposite.

▶ Is he always in such a bad mood? SYN terrible OPP good
1 Michael is usually very sensitive. OPP _____
2 Why are they so miserable? SYN _____
3 We were amazed to see her. SYN _____
4 He never shows his feelings. OPP _____
5 I was terrified when it happened. SYN _____
6 I was delighted with my results. SYN _____

2 Are these sentences logical? If not, cross out the word that is not logical and replace it with a better word.

▶ I was astonished that I passed the exam, but really ~~miserable~~. delighted
▶ She's very emotional, so she tends to show her feelings a lot. This is logical.
1 He was furious with me, and I was thrilled. _____
2 She was so proud when her son did well, and really jealous. _____
3 I was anxious before the flight, and scared stiff by the time we took off. _____
4 I don't know what upset her, but she was thrilled. _____
5 She can be very insensitive and often hurts people's feelings. _____
6 I can't talk to her because she's insensitive and very supportive. _____

Unit 8

1 One word is missing in each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end.

▶ Paulo split ∧ with Simone last week. up
1 Petros and I have nothing common. _____
2 How did you get know her? _____
3 I like Imran; we get very well. _____
4 Don't forget to keep touch. _____
5 You can't rely her brother. _____
6 I don't think they're a relationship at the moment. _____

2 Complete the sentences. Keep the meaning the same as in the sentences on the left.

▶ Being friends with Tomi is important to me. My friendship with Tomi is important to me.
1 He just likes being with people. He's very _____.
2 I understand what happened now. I _____ what happened.
3 He's been my friend in difficult times. He's been very _____.
4 I went out for a meal with the others last week. We got _____ for a meal last week.
5 We share a lot of interests. We have a lot in _____.
6 They argue a lot. They have a lot of _____.
7 She's sorry that it happened. She _____ that it happened.
8 I can always depend on my sister. My sister is very _____.

Unit 9

1 Which words are being defined?

▶ a member of your family. relative
1 a person who comes from a foreign country to live in your country. _____
2 a woman who married your father but who is not your mother. _____

www.hellooteacher.ir

3 someone in your family who lived a long time ago. _____
4 take a child into your family and make them your child legally. _____
5 have the same appearance as someone. _____
6 be like an older member of your family. _____
7 end a marriage legally. _____
8 all the people in a family born at about the same time. _____

2 Complete the text.

John Lennon's ▶ ancestors were Irish (1) _____ who came to live in Liverpool. John was an (2) _____ child in a single (3) _____ family. When he was five, his mother gave John to her sister, Mimi, to look after, so he was (4) _____ up by his aunt. Lennon got married in 1962 to Cynthia, and had a son, Julian. Sadly, the marriage went wrong. The Lennons got (5) _____ in 1968, and Julian was brought (6) _____ by his mother. Lennon remarried in 1969, this time marrying Yoko Ono, who already had a daughter, Kyoko, from a (7) _____ marriage which had ended in divorce. John and Yoko had a son called Sean. Julian and Sean are (8) _____ -brothers, and Julian and Kyoko are (9) _____ brother and (10) _____ sister.

Unit 10

1 Find 11 more words or phrases related to weddings in the word square.

D	R	I	N	K	A	T	O	A	S	T	P
C	E	R	M	W	P	D	O	C	S	A	M
E	D	D	U	E	S	J	R	O	R	C	A
R	I	N	G	D	S	H	R	U	E	X	K
E	P	I	G	D	X	O	Z	P	C	U	E
M	A	R	R	I	A	G	E	L	E	G	A
O	W	U	O	N	V	I	N	E	P	O	S
N	U	D	O	G	G	U	E	S	T	L	P
Y	E	S	M	I	F	U	R	O	I	G	E
H	O	N	E	Y	M	O	O	N	O	D	E
K	L	I	S	H	M	E	X	O	N	I	C
D	B	R	I	D	E	S	M	A	I	D	H

2 Complete the texts.

When my neighbour Mr Patrick ▶ died recently, I went to his (1) _____ . His wife died ten years ago, so he had been a (2) _____ for a long time. He always wanted to be (3) _____ in the cemetery next to his wife. There were a lot of (4) _____ at the funeral: mostly family and old friends. His son, Malcolm, (5) _____ his house, and I believe he's going to move back to live in it.

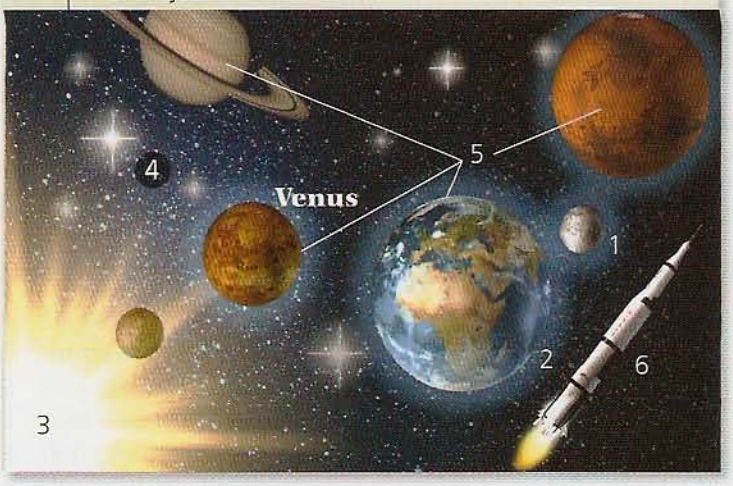
My cousin, Elizabeth, got married last year. She and her ▶ husband , Martin, had to (6) _____ whether to have a religious (7) _____ or a (8) _____ one. In the end, they (9) _____ a religious wedding. She was a beautiful (10) _____ , and Martin looked fantastic. Martin's brother, Steve, was the (11) _____ man. It was a very traditional ceremony, and afterwards there was a (12) _____ at a hotel near the church. Next week it will be their first wedding (13) _____ , so the family is going to get together to (14) _____ with a big party.

www.hellooteacher.ir

11 I can describe the universe

A The universe

- The **moon**[1] is a **satellite** of the **earth**[2]; **in other words**, it **circles** around the earth. This takes **approximately** 28 days.
- The earth **revolves** around the sun every 365 days.
- The **sun**[3] is a star, but seems much larger than other **stars**[4] because it is so close to the earth. Light from the sun takes approximately eight minutes to **reach** the earth.
- Nine **planets**[5] revolve around the sun. We call the sun and all its planets the **solar system**.
- *Seventy-five years ago, sending* **rockets**[6] *into* **space** *seemed* **far-fetched**, *but now it is a fact of life and we have* **gained** *considerable* **knowledge** *of the earth's satellite and our solar system.*



Glossary

universe the whole of space and everything in it, including the planets and stars.

satellite an object that moves round a bigger object in space.

in other words used for saying sth in a different way.

circle sth go round sth in a circle. SYN **revolve around sth.**

approximately about. SYN **roughly.**

reach sth arrive at a place.

space the area beyond the earth round the planets and stars.

far-fetched not easy to believe because it is very improbable.

gain sth get more and more of sth useful, such as knowledge or experience.

knowledge what you know and understand about sth.

1 One word is wrong in each sentence. Cross it out and write the correct word.

▶ The ~~sun~~ circles the earth. moon

1 The planets are in the solar space. _____

2 The earth revolves around the moon. _____

3 The sun is a planet. _____

4 Man first walked on the sun in 1969. _____

5 Venus is a star. _____

6 We can send planes into space. _____

7 The stars are part of the earth. _____

2 Complete the sentences.

▶ There are billions of stars in the universe .

1 Is it important to send rockets into _____ ?

2 The earth revolves around the sun: in other _____ , earth is a planet in our solar system.

3 The Venus Express rocket took _____ five months to _____ the planet Venus.

4 The idea of human life on Mars is far-_____ .

5 We have _____ a lot of knowledge about the solar system in recent years.

6 The earth _____ around the sun every 365 days.

7 My _____ of space is very limited. I'd like to learn more about it.

8 The moon is a _____ of the earth.

3 Test yourself. Cover the text and name everything in the picture.

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Scientific exploration

Why go to Mars?

Scientists have already sent **satellites** to **explore** the surface of Mars, and **carried out experiments** to see if they can **discover** any signs of life. So far, they haven't found any, but an **analysis** of rocks from Mars has **confirmed** that they were created by the presence of water and wind. In other words, life could have **existed** in the past.

Glossary

scientist	a person who studies the physical world. **science** N. **scientific** ADJ.
satellite	a piece of electronic equipment that is sent into space and moves around.
explore sth	travel round a place in order to learn about it. **exploration** N.
carry out sth	do and complete a task.
experiment	a scientific test done in order to learn sth.
analysis	a careful study of sth in order to explain it. **analyse** V.
confirm sth	say or show that sth is true or definite. **confirmation** N.
exist	If sth **exists**, it is present in the real world. **existence** N.

spotlight ***discover* or *invent?***

If you **discover** something, you learn about or find something for the first time. **discovery** N. If you **invent** something, you create something that didn't exist before. **invention** N.

*They've **discovered** a new planet. Who **invented** the telescope?*

4 Circle the correct word.

▶ There was an experiment/exploration to test the levels of sugar in the blood.
1 These animals only explore/exist in South America – nowhere else.
2 They're going to explore/analyse the area to see what they can find.
3 The discovery/invention of the electric light bulb changed people's lives.
4 Scientists have carried out/confirmed experiments on animals.
5 Who invented/discovered the life-saving drug penicillin?
6 We've got the data, so now we need to analyse/explore it.

5 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the word on the right.

▶	Television was an incredible *invention*.	INVENT
1	There's a report from a group of _____.	SCIENCE
2	The _____ of penicillin was of major importance.	DISCOVER
3	We're waiting for _____ of the results.	CONFIRM
4	There will be an _____ of the findings in the laboratory.	ANALYSE
5	The 60s and 70s were an exciting period for space _____.	EXPLORE
6	Humans are always looking for the _____ of new life forms.	EXIST

6 Complete the sentences.

▶ The police *discovered* drugs inside his shoes.
1 At the moment there is no evidence that life _____ on Mars.
2 They left camp and went to _____ the countryside to see what they could find.
3 With the use of _____, TV can show news from anywhere in the world.
4 Scientists believe they will have to _____ out further experiments.
5 I don't know who first _____ the camera. Do you?
6 We knew he was ill, but the doctors have now _____ that it's serious.

7 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Can you remember the meanings?

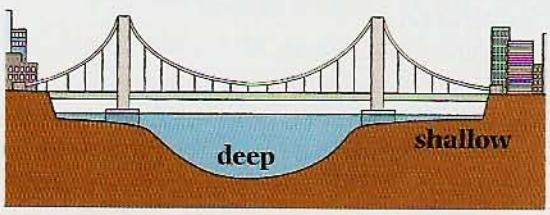
www.hellooteacher.ir

12 I can talk about rivers and the sea

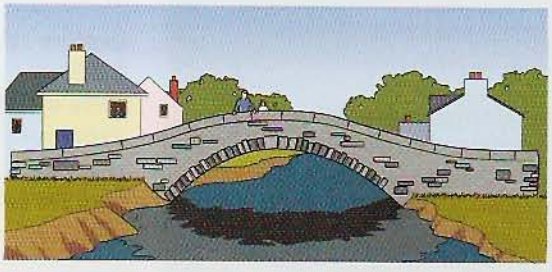
A Water

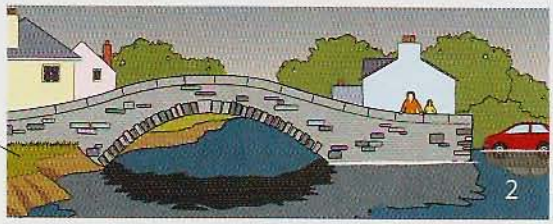
RIVERS

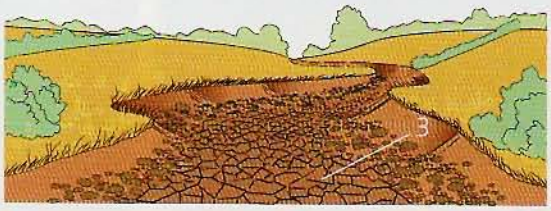
wide river



narrow river





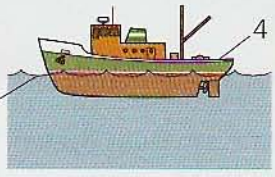


Rivers **flow** to the sea. A river can be **wide** (**width** N) and **deep** (**depth** N) or **narrow** and **shallow**. If it rains heavily, a river can **burst** its **banks**[1], which **causes floods**[2]. If there is no rain for a long time, the river **dries up**[3].

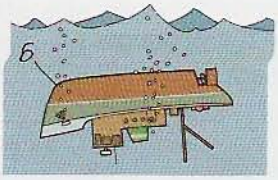
THE SEA and OCEANS

The **tide** comes in (**high tide**) and goes out (**low tide**) twice a day.

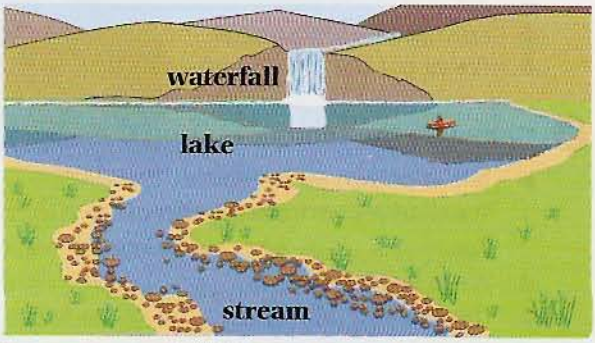
Boats **float**[4] on the **surface**[5] of the water.



In bad weather, a boat can **capsize** and ***sink***[6]. *People on the* boat may be trapped **underwater** and may **drown**.



DIFFERENT AREAS OF WATER



Glossary

flow move smoothly (like water).

burst break open suddenly and violently.

ocean a very big sea, e.g. the Atlantic Ocean.

tide the regular change in the sea level caused by the moon and sun.

capsize (used of boats) turn over in the water.

underwater happening or existing below the surface of the water.

drown die in water because you can't breathe.

spotlight ***cause*** V, N

To **cause something** is to make something (often unpleasant) happen.

*The wind **caused** problems for cyclists.*

The **cause of something** is the person or thing that makes it happen.

*The police don't know the **cause** of the accident.*

www.hellooteacher.ir

1 One letter is missing. Write the words correctly.

▶ lak lake
1 flod _____
2 high tid _____
3 shalow _____
4 flot _____
5 suface _____
6 narro _____
7 pudle _____
8 dron _____
9 waterfal _____
10 ocen _____

2 Match 1–8 with a–i.

▶ the tide i
1 burst _____
2 the river _____
3 low _____
4 the width _____
5 it flows _____
6 drown _____
7 a shallow _____
8 the boat _____

a capsized
b to the sea
c its banks
d dried up
e in the lake
f river
g of the river
h tide
i went out ✓

3 Yes or No? Write Y or N.

▶ Do streams have a tide? N
1 Is the depth of a river the same as its width? _____
2 Can you have a high tide and a low tide? _____
3 Do puddles form when it rains a lot? _____
4 Can people float in water? _____
5 Can people capsize? _____
6 Can a pond dry up? _____
7 Can people swim up a waterfall? _____
8 Can people sit on the bank of a river? _____
9 Are canals deeper than seas? _____
10 Does water flow in a pond? _____

4 Circle the correct word.

▶ The River Seine floats/flows through Paris.
1 The leaves floated on the surface/underwater.
2 I went sailing on the pond/lake.
3 The ship capsized/drowned in the storm.
4 I swam across the whole depth/width of the river.
5 There's a little stream/tide at the end of our garden.
6 Sadly the dog drowned/sank when the ship capsized.
7 You can stand up in the river here; it's very narrow/shallow.
8 Our furniture got very wet during the floods/tides.

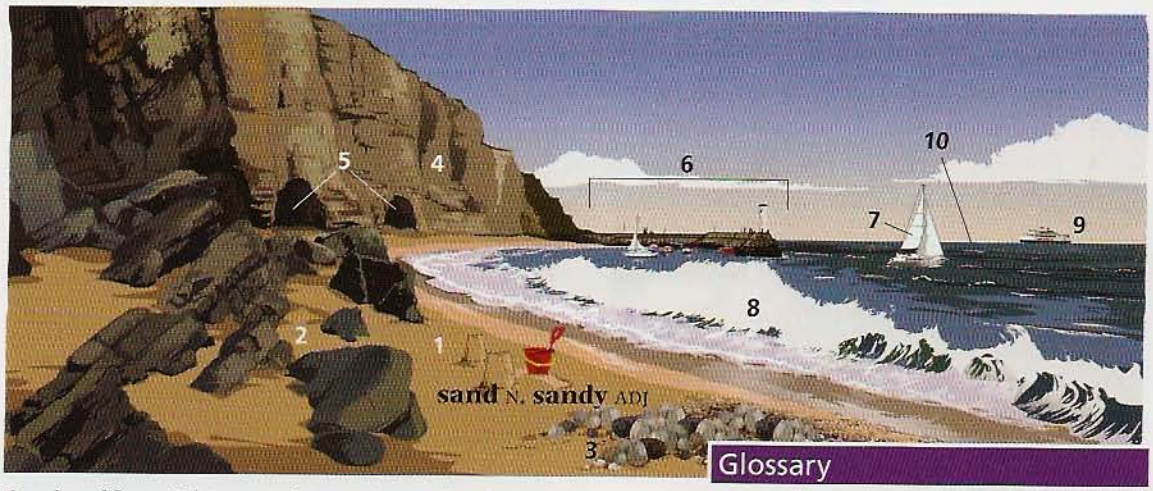
5 Complete the texts with a suitable word in the correct form.

We had some storms with very heavy rain last summer. The river which runs through the city (1) _____ its banks, and (2) _____ serious floods. The water was quite (3) _____ : it was two metres in some parts, and you could see people's possessions (4) _____ in the water.

We had a terrible day sailing on a (5) _____ in the mountains last weekend. The wind was very strong, and suddenly our little boat (6) _____ and we ended up in the water. We swam to safety, but watched the boat slowly (7) _____ to the bottom. Later we discovered it was very dangerous there, and last year someone (8) _____ .

www.hellooteacher.ir

B The coast



Our local **beach**[1] is mainly **sandy**, with a few **rocks**[2] and **pebbles**[3] down by the **shore**. There's a **steep cliff**[4] rising above the beach, and children often play in the **caves**[5] there. At the end of the **bay** there's a small **harbour**[6]. When the weather's bad, the **sailing boats**[7] are **protected** from the **waves**[8] and the **rough** sea. We often see large **ships**[9] on the **horizon**[10].

bay

Glossary

coast the area of land that is close to or next to the sea or an ocean.

shore the land along the edge of the sea, a lake, etc.

steep A **steep** hill or **cliff** goes up quickly from a low place to a high one.

protect sb/sth from sth keep sb/sth safe from sth. **protection** N.

rough A **rough** sea has big waves. OPP **calm**.

6 Which words are being defined?

▶ a small stone you find on a beach pebble
1 the line between the land or the sea and the sky _____
2 a large piece of stone _____
3 *an area of sand or small stones beside the sea* _____
4 a high steep area of rock next to the sea _____
5 a large boat often used to carry passengers _____
6 the land at the edge of the sea where there is sand or rocks _____
7 a place where ships or boats are tied up and protected from the sea _____
8 a large hole in a cliff or under the ground _____
9 the area of land next to the sea _____
10 an area of the coast where the land goes in to form a curve _____

7 Complete the sentences.

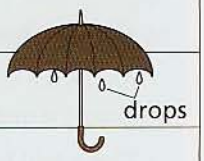
▶ It was a nice day, so we went to the beach .
1 When it's stormy, the sea gets very _____ .
2 A huge _____ hit the boat and we capsized.
3 The harbour _____ the little boats in bad weather.
4 At one end of the beach there are rocks and pebbles, but the other end is _____ .
5 You can't climb the cliff; it's too _____ .
6 I could see a boat _____ the horizon.

8 Test yourself. Cover the text and look at the picture. What are the words?

www.hellooteacher.ir

13 I can describe the climate Do Units 11 and 12 first

A The weather

Word/Phrase	Example	Meaning
pour (with rain)	It's **pouring** outside!	rain heavily.
soaking wet SYN **soaked**	It was pouring with rain and I got **soaking wet**.	extremely wet.
drizzle V, N	It was **drizzling** when I left the office.	rain lightly, with very small **drops**. 
rainbow	Did you see the **rainbow**?	
bitterly cold	It's **bitterly cold** today.	extremely cold.
chilly	It gets **chilly** in the evening.	a little too cold to be comfortable.
mild	It's been a very **mild** winter.	warmer than usual for the time of year.
heatwave	I hate this **heatwave**!	a period of unusually hot weather.
muggy SYN **humid**	It's really **muggy** today.	warm and damp in an unpleasant way.
mist N **misty** ADJ	You get a lot of **mist** in the mornings in autumn.	thin cloud near the ground which is difficult to see through (not as thick as fog).
frost N **frosty** ADJ	There was a **frost** last night; there's ice on the car.	the weather condition when the temperature is below 0°C and ice forms on windows, the ground, etc.
breeze N **breezy** ADJ	It's hot today, but there's a lovely **breeze**.	a light wind.
gale	There were **gales** last night.	a strong wind.

1 Tick (✓) the correct answer.

▶	Which is colder?	☑ a chilly day	☐ a mild day
1	Which is stronger?	☐ a gale	☐ a breeze
2	Which is colder?	☐ a breezy morning	☐ a frosty morning
3	Which is warmer?	☐ a muggy evening	☐ a chilly evening
4	Which means more water?	☐ It poured for an hour.	☐ It drizzled for an hour.
5	Which is harder to see through?	☐ fog	☐ mist
6	Which means more water?	☐ I got wet.	☐ I got soaked.

2 Complete the words in the texts.

While we were out, it suddenly started to ▶ p**our** with rain. We didn't have an umbrella, so we got (1) s..... wet. When the rain stopped, the sun came out and we could see a (2) r..... . It wasn't cold; in fact, it was quite a (3) m..... day for November.

She woke up. It was (4) b..... cold, and she noticed the (5) f..... on the windows. By midday, though, the temperature had gone up. As she left the house, she felt a few (6) d..... of rain on her head, then it (7) d..... for the rest of the day.

Last summer was unusually hot; we had a (8) h..... which lasted for several weeks, and it was incredibly (9) m..... and unpleasant at night.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words/phrases and examples in the table and look at the meanings. What are the words?

www.hellooteacher.ir

OUR ENVIRONMENT

Global warming is the **gradual** *increase in the average temperature of* **the earth's**[1] **atmosphere**, and is caused by **harmful gases**. Many **environmentalists** believe that most of this **pollution** is the result of **human** activities. Here are some of the **effects**:

- As the ice at the **poles**[2] **melts**, sea levels could **rise** by almost a metre in the next century.
- There will be more **extreme** and **unpredictable** weather, e.g. heatwaves or floods.
- The earth will become even warmer because the **rainforests**[3] are **disappearing**.
- **Famine** and **disease** will **spread**, and this will especially **affect** people in poor countries.

spotlight ***effect*** N, ***affect*** V

An effect is a change which is caused *by something.*
What are the ***effects*** *of global warming?*
To **affect** something means to make it change in a particular way.
Climate change will ***affect*** *all our lives* (= will make our lives change).

Glossary

climate • the normal weather conditions of a particular region.

(the) environment • the natural world; the air, land, and water in which people, plants, and animals live (an **environmentalist** is sb who studies the environment).

gradual • happening slowly over a long period of time. **gradually** ADV.

the atmosphere • the gases around the earth, planets, etc.

harmful • causing damage, injury, or illness. **harm sth/sb** V.

gas • a substance like air, e.g. oxygen and hydrogen.

pollution • dirty and dangerous gases, chemicals, etc. that harm the environment. **pollute** V.

human • connected with people.

melt • If you heat ice, it **melts**: it changes from a **solid** to a **liquid**.

rise • increase; go higher. **rise** N. OPP **fall** V, N.

extreme • much hotter, colder, or more violent than usual.

unpredictable • If sth is **unpredictable**, you can't say how it will change in the future. OPP **predictable**. **predict** V.

disappear • stop existing. SYN **vanish**.

famine • A **famine** is when there is not enough food in a country.

disease • illness in people, animals, or plants.

spread • affect more and more people or things.

www.hellooteacher.ir

4 Complete the words.

▶ h u m a n
1 p r _ d _ c t _ b l e
2 d i s _ _ _ e a r
3 f _ m _ n e
4 h _ r m f _ l
5 a t m o _ _ _ e r e
6 e n v _ r o _ m _ n t
7 p _ l l _ t _ _ n
8 l _ q u _ d
9 d _ s _ _ s e
10 c l _ m _ t _

5 Good or bad? Write G or B.

▶ This gas won't harm anyone. G
1 Some kinds of animals are vanishing. ___
2 The flood water is falling. ___
3 Famine is spreading. ___
4 This liquid is harmful. ___
5 The weather is less extreme. ___
6 The earth's temperature is rising. ___
7 The ice at the poles is gradually melting. ___
8 The river is polluted. ___

6 Circle the correct word.

▶ Ice is a solid/liquid.
1 How does the situation effect/affect you?
2 It's all very predictable/unpredictable: you never know what's going to happen.
3 My brother studies the environment/an environmentalist.
4 Global warming is caused by people/human activity.
5 Eat your ice cream quickly – it's spreading/melting.
6 Water is a liquid/gas.
7 The rainforest is gradually disappearing/melting.
8 There are harmful gases in the atmosphere/effect.

7 Complete the sentences.

▶ The earth is g radually getting warmer.
1 We had a lot of e_____ weather last year: a long heatwave and gales in the autumn. I think it's all part of c_____ change.
2 If you freeze water, it changes from a l_____ to a s_____ .
3 The beach was p_____ with oil, which seriously a_____ the sea birds and animals.
4 Environmentalists p_____ that there will be a r_____ in sea levels in the future.
5 With g_____ warming, some kinds of plants and animals are d_____ very fast.
6 Certain diseases s_____ from person to person very quickly.
7 P_____ has a very h_____ effect on the environment.
8 After many months without rain, there is a real danger of f_____ in this part of Africa.

8 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 How worried are you about global warming?

2 Do you have rainforests in your country? If so, what is happening to them?

3 Has the climate changed in recent years in your country? If so, how?

4 Which human activities do you think are harming the environment most?

5 What kind of pollution is common in your country?

9 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

14 I can describe natural disasters

A Types of disaster

Hurricane[1]: this word is used especially of storms in the western Atlantic. It is a **violent** storm with very strong winds. In other parts of the world, especially Asia, it is called a **typhoon**.

Earthquake[2]: a **sudden** violent movement of the **ground** causing **damage**.

Tidal wave[3]: a very large ocean wave that is caused by a storm or earthquake, and which **destroys** things when it reaches land.

Volcanic eruption[4]: a **volcano** is a mountain with a hole in the top, and when it **erupts**, hot gases and **lava** are forced out into the air and onto the **surrounding** land.

Drought[5]: a long period with no rain. **Crops** die, and people may **starve to death.**

Glossary

disaster a very bad event, causing harm or death.
violent very strong and usually causing damage. **violence** N.
sudden happening very quickly. **suddenly** ADV.
ground the top part of the earth's surface that people walk on.
damage harm or injury caused when sth is broken. **damage** V.
destroy sth break sth completely so it can't be used again. **destruction** N.
erupt explode and throw out fire, burning rocks, etc.
lava hot liquid rock (*see picture*).
surrounding that is near or around sth. **surroundings** N.
crops plants that are grown for food, e.g. rice and potatoes.
starve (to death) suffer (or die) because you don't have enough food.

1 Combine five more pairs of words from the box to form compound words or phrases.

earth ✓	volcanic	tidal	surrounding	starve	land
eruption	violent	wave	quake ✓	to death	storm

▶ earthquake _____ _____

_____ _____ _____

2 What nouns are formed from these adjectives and verbs?

▶ volcanic volcano
1 destroy _____
2 violent _____
3 erupt _____
4 surrounding _____
5 damage _____

3 Complete the words in the sentences.

▶ When the t*idal* w*ave* reached land, it was over ten metres high.
1 During the h_____, winds reached over 150 kph, and many homes were either completely d_____ or badly d_____. It was a terrible d_____ for the island.
2 They expect a period of d_____: the c_____ will die and people could s_____.
3 The volcano e_____ without warning and the g_____ was covered in red, hot l_____.
4 There was a s_____ and v_____ storm. It was the beginning of the t_____.

4 Test yourself. Cover the texts and look at the pictures. Can you name each disaster and what happens?

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Effects

EARTHQUAKE HITS KASHMIR

Late last night a sudden earthquake struck the region of Kashmir on the borders of India and Pakistan, and hundreds of people are thought to have lost their lives as buildings collapsed while they slept.

Thousands have now been **evacuated**, but there are **fears** that many are still **trapped** inside their homes, so the **death toll** could rise. The damage has already been **considerable** and the next 48 hours will be **crucial**, not only to **rescue** more people but also to try to **maintain supplies** of water and electricity.

Glossary	
hit sth/sb	make sudden violent contact with sth/sb. SYN **strike sth/sb.**
collapse	If a building **collapses**, it falls to the ground. **collapse** N.
evacuate sb	move sb away from a dangerous place. **evacuation** N.
fear	a feeling that sth bad might happen. **fear** V.
trap sb	If sb is **trapped**, they are inside sth and cannot get out.
death toll	the number of people killed in a disaster, accident, etc.
considerable	very large in size or amount.
crucial	very important.
rescue sb	take sb from a dangerous place to safety. SYN **save sb.**
maintain sth	make sth continue at a certain level.
supply (PL. **supplies**)	an amount of sth that you need.

5 Complete the text with words from the box in the correct form.

supply | trap | earthquake ✓ | maintain | strike/hit | fear | collapse | evacuate | rescue

When an ▶ earthquake (1) _____ a city, there is always a danger that buildings will (2) _____ and people will be (3) _____ inside. As soon as the immediate danger has passed, the first job is to (4) _____ people from the area, and (5) _____ those in danger. At the same time, the government will send in (6) _____ of food, water, and blankets to the disaster area. One of the hardest things of all is to (7) _____ a supply of clean drinking water, and there is always the (8) _____ that more people could die.

6 Replace the underlined words with a different word that has the same meaning.

▶ Many people <u>are afraid</u> that there will be more earthquakes. fear

1 Many buildings <u>fell to the ground</u>. _____
2 It could be a <u>very important</u> decision. _____
3 The villagers have all been <u>moved from the village</u>. _____
4 There are people who are <u>inside their homes and cannot get out</u>. _____
5 Scientists believe the hurricane will <u>reach and attack</u> Florida within 24 hours. _____
6 The <u>number of people killed</u> could be as high as 2,000. _____
7 The storm has done <u>a great deal of</u> damage. _____
8 He was injured while trying to <u>take</u> his son <u>to safety</u> from the fire. _____

7 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

15 I can describe animals and insects

A Creatures great and small: wild animals and insects

lion

elephant

gorilla

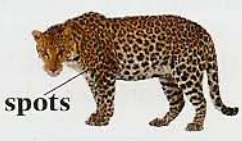
shark

tiger

camel

bear

whale



leopard

monkey

snake

eagle

spider

fly

bee

mosquito

Glossary

creature a living thing such as an animal, bird, fish, or insect.
wild living in natural conditions; not looked after by people.
insect a small animal with six legs, one or two pairs of wings, and a body in three parts.

1 One letter is missing. Write the words correctly.

▶ tier tiger
1 lepard _____
2 elepant _____
3 eale _____
4 grilla _____
5 wale _____
6 sider _____
7 nake _____
8 sark _____
9 money _____

2 Which creature:

▶ has wings? f<u>ly</u>, e_____, b_____, m_____
1 has a tail? l_____, e_____, l_____, t_____, c_____, m_____
2 is an insect? f_____, b_____, m_____
3 has thick fur? g_____, b_____
4 has a trunk? e_____
5 has stripes? t_____
6 has spots? l_____
7 has a beak and feathers? e_____

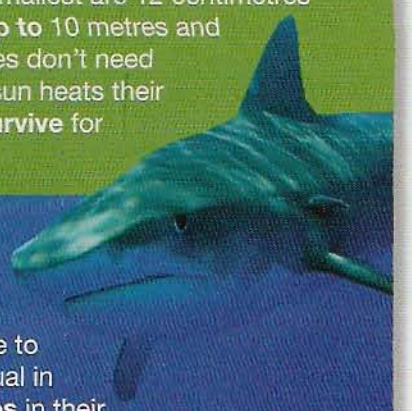
3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Name the creatures.

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Unusual facts about animals

Snakes

There are about 2,600 different kinds of snake. About 400 are **poisonous**, but more are **harmless**. In size, they **vary** enormously: the smallest are 12 centimetres long, the biggest are **up to** 10 metres and **weigh** 250 kilos. Snakes don't need energy from food (the sun heats their bodies), so they can **survive** for months without eating.



Sharks

The **average lifespan** of a shark is about 25 years but some can live to be 100. They are unusual in that they have no **bones** in their body, and large sharks may have up to 4,000 teeth. They are very dangerous when they **hunt**, but only a few **attack** humans: more people die from bee **stings** than from shark attacks.

Glossary

poisonous producing a dangerous substance (**poison**) that can kill or harm you.

harmless not causing damage, injury, or illness. OPP **harmful. harm** N, V.

vary (of a group) be different from each other.

up to used when saying the most an amount can be.

weigh have a certain **weight** N, which is how heavy sth is.

survive continue to live in a difficult situation. **survival** N.

average normal or typical.

lifespan the time that sth is likely to live (for people, we say **life expectancy**).

bone

hunt sth go after sth to catch and kill it.

attack sb/sth try to hurt sb/sth by using physical force. **attack** N.

sting a sudden pain caused by poison sent into the skin. **sting** V.

4 True or false? Write T or F.

▶ The average lifespan of a snake is 25 years. F

1 Most snakes are poisonous. _____
2 Most sharks are harmless to humans. _____
3 Some snakes are longer than ten metres. _____
4 Snakes can be as heavy as 250 kilos. _____
5 Sharks have bones in their body. _____
6 Sharks sting when they attack. _____

5 Answer the questions.

▶ Is *attack* a noun or a verb, or can it be both? both

1 What is the noun from the verb *survive*? _____
2 If animals have a *lifespan*, what do people have? Life _____
3 What is the noun from the verb *weigh*? _____
4 What is the adjective from *poison*? _____
5 What are the two adjectives from the noun *harm*? _____ and _____

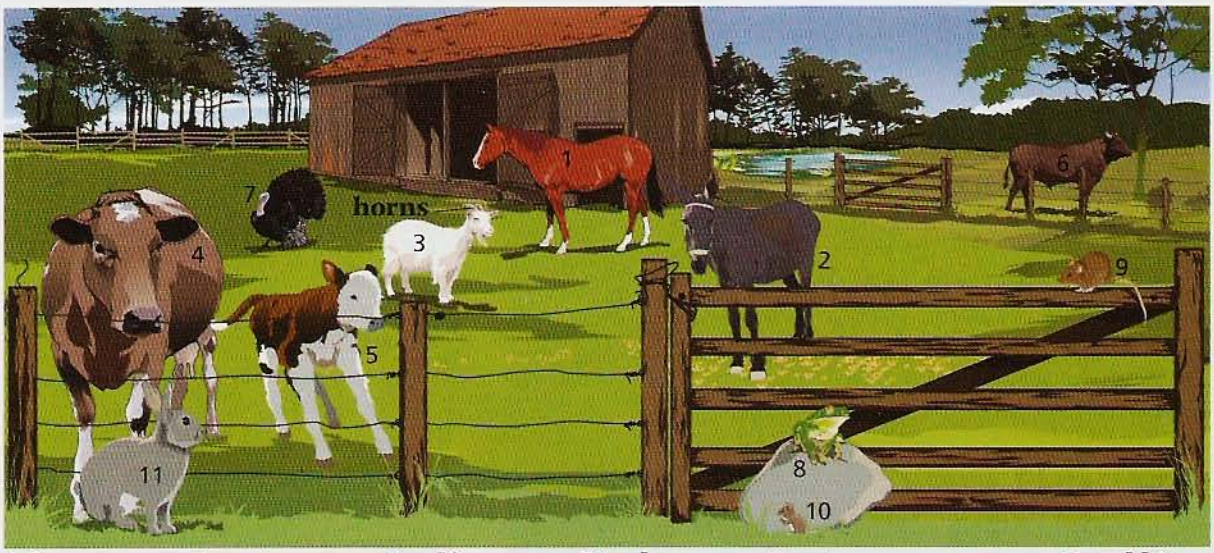
6 Complete the words in these animal facts.

▶ The average lifespan of most bees is 30 to 35 days.

1 Some snakes can s_____ for almost a year without food.
2 Nobody knows the a_____ lifespan of a snake, but in zoos they can reach 30.
3 People h_____ sharks for their meat and skin, but also for sport.
4 Over 100 people a year die from a bee or wasp s_____ .
5 Snakes can grow u_____ to ten metres long.
6 The size of sharks can v_____ from the size of your hand to the size of a bus.

www.hellooteacher.ir

C Farm and small animals



1 **horse** 3 **goat** 5 **calf** 7 **turkey** 9 **rat** 11 **rabbit**
2 **donkey** 4 **cow** 6 **bull** 8 **frog** 10 **mouse** (PL **mice**)

7 Complete the sentences.

▶ A goat often has two horns on its head.
1 A young cow is a _____ .
2 The plural of mouse is _____ .
3 Cows, sheep, and _____ produce milk that people drink.
4 A _____ is like a small horse with long ears.
5 A _____ is like a mouse, but is larger.
6 A _____ lives in or near water, and can jump.
7 A bull is the adult _____ of the cow family.
8 A _____ is a group of cows.
9 A _____ is a large bird, similar to a chicken, that can be eaten.
10 The general word for bulls and cows on a farm is _____ .

spotlight *cows and cattle*

A **cow** is the **female** animal that is kept on farms to produce milk. The **male** is a **bull**. Cows and bulls kept as farm animals can be called **cattle**. A group of cows is called a **herd**.

8 Complete these animals' names.

▶ r a t
1 h _____ e
2 g _____ t
3 b _____ l
4 c _____ f
5 f _____ g
6 m _____ e
7 d _____ y
8 t _____ y

9 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Answer the questions or ask another student.

1 Which of the animals on this page do people eat? _____
2 Do people keep these animals in your country? If so, why?
horses? _____
goats? _____
bulls? _____
donkeys? _____
mice? _____

10 Test yourself. Look at the picture and cover the words. Say the words.

www.hellooteacher.ir

Review: The world around us

Unit 11

1 Complete the questions and answers.

Space Quiz

Q How long would a ▶ r ocket take to (1) r _____ Mars?
A It would take (2) a _____ 260 days.
Q Is the (3) e _____ the only (4) p _____ in the solar (5) s _____ where life (6) e _____ ?
A Yes, most (7) s _____ believe that to be true.
Q Who (8) d _____ the planet Venus?
A Most people think it was the ancient Greeks.
Q Who (9) i _____ the first American rocket to go into (10) s _____ ?
A Robert Goddard, in the early twentieth century.
Q What are 'Phobos' and 'Deimos'?
A They are two small moons or (11) s _____ which (12) c _____ the planet Mars.
Q How many stars are there in the (13) u _____ ?
A Nobody knows for sure, but some say (14) r _____ ten thousand billion billion!

2 Complete the definitions.

▶ sun = the star that shines during the day
1 explore = _____ round a place in order to learn about it
2 far-fetched = _____ easy to believe
3 revolve around something = go round something in a _____
4 experiment = a scientific _____ in order to learn or find out about something
5 scientist = a person who _____ or teaches science
6 confirm = say or show that something is _____ or definite
7 in other words: used for saying something in a _____ way
8 invent = create something that didn't _____ before

Unit 12

1 Circle the odd one out.

▶ boat (harbour) ship

1	rock	wave	pebble	3	float	sink	drown	5	pond	flood	lake
2	stream	river	puddle	4	bank	ocean	shore	6	steep	shallow	deep

2 Complete the sentences.

▶ This river flows out to the sea.
1 The river is wide in some places but very _____ in others.
2 Look! There's something floating on the _____ of the water.
3 They're building a harbour to provide _____ for the boats in bad weather.
4 The boat _____ in bad weather and one person nearly drowned.
5 Looking out to sea, there were a couple of large ships on the _____ .
6 It wasn't very nice on the boat because the sea was so _____ .
7 The canal is ten metres wide and the water is about two metres _____
8 We had to climb a _____ cliff, which was very difficult.

www.hellooteacher.ir

3 One letter is wrong in each line. Cross out the word that is wrong and write the correct word at the end.

▶ When does the ~~time~~ come in this morning? tide
1 There are large socks on the beach. _____
2 They travelled by chip. _____
3 There's a sleep cliff by the shore. _____
4 We have a number of fish in our pony. _____
5 We saw some fishing boots. _____
6 Look out! There's a big cave coming. _____
7 It rained heavily and we had a floor. _____
8 Why did the boat pink? _____
9 The river blows down to the sea here. _____
10 It's a very sandy peach. _____

Unit 13

1 Complete the sentences.

▶ Cars and factories are causing a lot of pollution .
1 It's _____ with rain outside. The children will get very wet.
2 What are the main _____ of global warming?
3 It's usually cold in January, but this winter it has been very _____ .
4 Unfortunately, it's very hard to _____ the future: anything could happen.
5 It was very hot, but fortunately there was a lovely _____ coming off the sea.
6 Global warming is causing more _____ weather conditions, which will _____ people in different parts of the world in different ways.

2 Replace the underlined words with a single word that has the same meaning.

▶ Pollution is damaging the air, land, and water in which we live. environment
1 Global warming will cause damage to the environment. _____
2 If you heat ice, it changes from a solid to a liquid. _____
3 With global warming, sea levels will get higher. _____
4 Famine could affect more people in a larger area. _____
5 These changes may happen slowly over a period of time. _____
6 Some rainforests will no longer exist. _____

Unit 14

1 Match two sentences below with each of the natural disasters in the box.

hurricane	earthquake ✓	tidal wave	volcanic eruption	drought

▶ Many buildings collapsed. earthquake
1 Hot gases came out of the top of the mountain. _____
2 Winds reached 150 kph. _____
3 There was a huge volume of water. _____
4 We've had months without rain. _____
5 There was a sudden violent movement of the ground. _____
6 When it reached land, it destroyed everything along the beach. _____
7 Lava covered the surrounding villages. _____
8 People are starving to death. _____
9 Many trees were destroyed in the storm. _____

www.hellooteacher.ir

2 Match 1–7 with a–h.

▶	There has been considerable ___f___	a	in the early morning.
1	The death ___	b	more people.
2	The school and several houses ___	c	inside buildings.
3	They rescued ___	d	toll could rise.
4	They need to maintain ___	e	more will die.
5	People are trapped ___	f	damage. ✓
6	The earthquake struck ___	g	collapsed.
7	People fear that ___	h	supplies.

Unit 15

1 Complete the table with words from the box.

tiger✓ calf lion fly whale bee donkey gorilla shark leopard goat mosquito

Wild animals	Farm animals	Insects	Sea creatures
▶ tiger			
			XXXXXXXXXXX
	XXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXX

2 What is the connection between each creature on the left and a word on the right?

tigers ✓ snakes leopards elephants
eagles bears bees goats

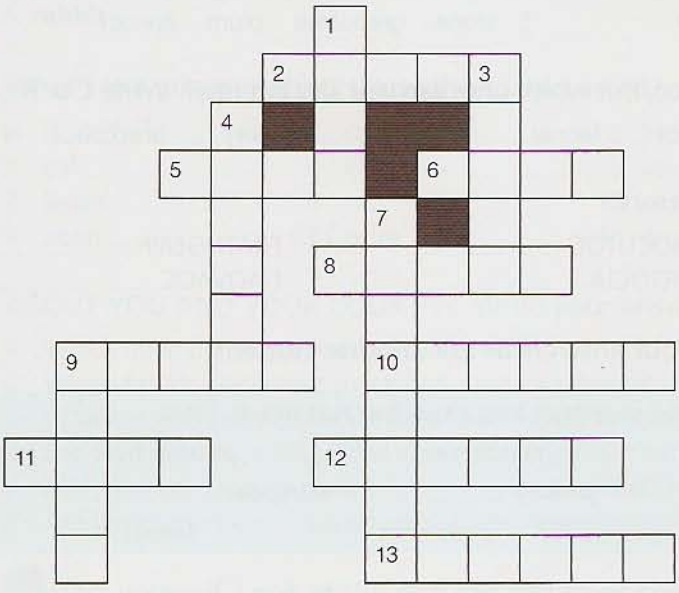
beak stripes ✓ trunk spots
sting horns fur poisonous

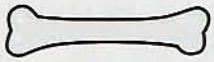
▶ Tigers have stripes. _____ _____

_____ _____ _____

_____ _____

3 Complete the crossword.



ACROSS
2 birds have these
5 
6 differ from each other
8 large animal, lives in the desert
9 bees can do this
10 a very intelligent animal
11 a young cow
12 how heavy something is
13 small creature with eight legs

DOWN
1 plural of *mouse*
3 long thin creature, moves along the ground
4 you can die if you eat or drink this
7 not causing injury or danger
9 large sea creature, can be dangerous

www.hellooteacher.ir

16 I can describe a range of food

A Fruit, vegetables, and herbs

1 plums
2 apricots

3 raspberries
4 grapefruits

5 avocado
6 figs

7 coconut
8 passion fruits

9 papaya
10 pomegranates

1 spinach
2 leek

3 celery
4 broccoli

5 chickpeas
6 fennel

7 artichoke
8 asparagus

9 sweetcorn
10 beetroot

herbs:
1 *parsley*
2 mint
3 basil
4 *thyme*
5 rosemary

1 Circle the odd one out in each group.

▶ fig coconut (parsley) raspberry
1 leek papaya artichoke asparagus
2 spinach basil mint rosemary
3 celery asparagus beetroot thyme
4 fig sweetcorn pomegranate coconut
5 stone grapefruit plum apricot

2 These vegetables are usually cooked, but which ones can you also eat raw? Write C or R.

▶ spinach R artichoke ___ beetroot ___ fennel ___ chickpeas ___ celery ___ broccoli ___

3 Find five more fruits from the letters.

▶ BARSERPY raspberry
1 MULP _____
2 NOCUTOC _____
3 PRTOCIA _____
4 FRATUGERIP _____
5 DAOVAOC _____

4 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

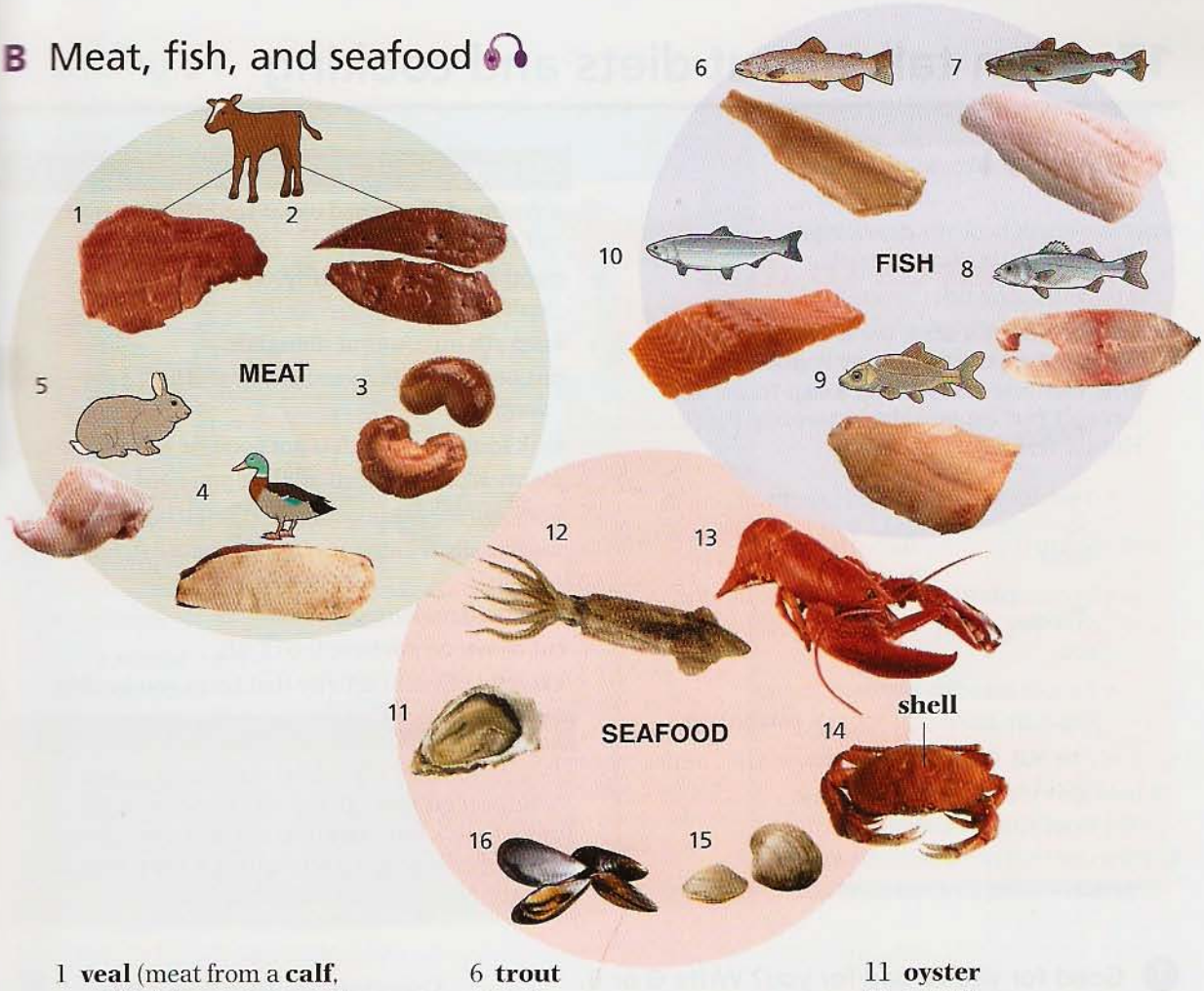
Do people eat these things in your country? Yes. / Yes, but not much. / No.

papaya _____ coconut _____ raspberries _____ passion fruit _____
plums _____ basil _____ parsley _____ chickpeas _____
asparagus _____ artichoke _____ sweetcorn _____ fennel _____

5 Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Meat, fish, and seafood



1 **veal** (meat from a **calf**, which is a young cow)
2 **calf's liver**
3 **kidney**
4 **duck**
5 **rabbit**
6 **trout**
7 **cod**
8 **sea bass**
9 **carp**
10 **salmon**
11 **oyster**
12 **squid**
13 **lobster**
14 **crab**
15 **clams**
16 **mussels**

6 What's the missing letter? Write the correct word.

▶ dck duck
1 caf _____
2 loster _____
3 abbit _____
4 squd _____
5 kiney _____
6 trot _____
7 oster _____
8 live _____
9 val _____
10 sea bas _____
11 musels _____
12 samon _____

7 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Which meat do people eat most: veal, rabbit, or duck? _____
2 Which fish do people eat most: cod, carp, or salmon? _____
3 Which seafood do people eat most: crab, clams, or mussels? _____
4 Are there any kinds of seafood above that you never eat? Why? _____
5 Are there any kinds of meat above that you never eat? Why? _____
6 Are there any kinds of fish above that you never eat? Why? _____

8 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you name the different types of meat, fish, and seafood?

www.hellooteacher.ir

17 I can talk about diets and cooking

A Diets

Who needs to diet?

I never **go on a diet**: it's **a waste of time**. Diets list all the food that is **good for you**, but few people can **keep** them **up**. I haven't **put on weight** in twenty years. Here's why:

- I eat almost anything I like, but I don't eat a lot. And I don't eat **junk food**.
- I drink **plenty of** water. It's better for you than **fizzy drinks**, and cheaper too.
- I avoid **snacks** between meals because most of them are **fattening**.
- I've **cut down on** the amount of food I eat in the evening.
- I get plenty of **exercise**.

Glossary

a waste of time a bad use of your time (also **a waste of money**).
good for you SYN **healthy**. OPP **bad for you / unhealthy**.
keep sth up continue doing sth.
put on weight become heavier and fatter. OPP **lose weight**.
junk food food which is not good for you (e.g. crisps).
plenty of sth as much of sth as you need.
fizzy drink a drink containing small bubbles of gas.
snack a small amount of food usually eaten between meals.
fattening making you fatter.
cut down on sth have less of sth.
exercise physical activity that keeps you healthy.

spotlight *diet*

A person's **diet** is the food they eat. It can be a **balanced diet** (all the right food the body needs), or a **bad diet** (too much of the wrong food). Some people **diet / go on a diet**, which means eating less to lose weight.

1 Good for you or bad for you? Write G or B.

▶ healthy food G
1 junk food ____
2 fizzy drinks ____
3 plenty of water ____
4 fattening food ____
5 snacks between meals ____
6 a balanced diet ____
7 plenty of exercise ____

2 Complete the sentences.

▶ Eat it – it's good for you.
1 They're both going ____ a diet.
2 She's cut down ____ chocolate.
3 I tried to diet but couldn't keep it ____.
4 That diet was a waste ____ time.
5 He's put ____ a lot of weight.
6 We've got plenty ____ orange juice.

3 Complete the sentences with a suitable word. ABOUT YOU

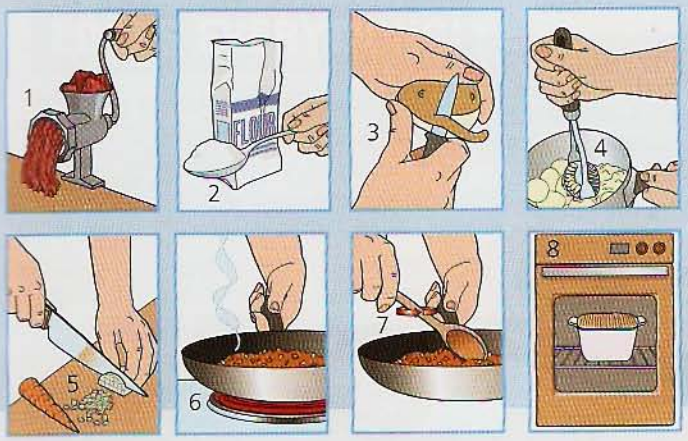
▶ You shouldn't eat much cream and cheese: they're fattening.
1 You should drink ____ of water: about 6 to 8 glasses a day.
2 You should get plenty of ____. One good way is going to the gym.
3 It's difficult to ____ down on the amount of salt you eat.
4 Doing lots of exercise is better than going on a ____.
5 I think diets are a ____ of time and money.
6 The problem with diets is that most people can't ____ them up.

4 ABOUT YOU Do you agree with the sentences in Exercise 3? Write Yes or No.

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Cooking

Recipe for *Cottage Pie*



Ingredients

300 g **minced**[1] beef
300 g potatoes
1 large onion
1 carrot
2–3 chopped tomatoes
300 ml beef **stock**
1 tablespoon of **flour**[2]
butter, salt, and pepper

Peel[3] the potatoes and **boil** until just cooked. Then **mash**[4] them with butter. **Chop**[5] the onion and carrot. **Fry**[6] the meat and vegetables quickly, then **stir**[7] in the flour and cook for one minute. **Add** the stock, tomatoes, salt and pepper, and let it all cook slowly for 20 minutes. Then put it in a large **dish**, cover with the mashed potato and some butter, and **bake** in a hot **oven**[8] for 30 minutes.

Glossary

recipe a set of instructions for cooking sth.

ingredients the food items you need to have to make sth to eat.

stock water with added flavour of meat, fish, or vegetables.

boil sth cook sth in water, usually in a **saucepan**.

fry sth cook sth in oil, usually in a **frying pan**.

add sth put sth together with sth else.

dish a container for serving food at the table (it is larger than a plate).

bake sth cook sth in the oven without oil or fat (with oil or fat = **roast**).

5 Which word is being defined?

▶ Use a special machine to cut meat into very small pieces mince
1 Remove the skin _____
2 Cut into many pieces _____
3 Put something with another thing _____
4 Press and mix until soft and smooth _____
5 Cook in water _____
6 Cook in oil _____
7 Cook in the oven without oil or fat _____
8 Cook in the oven with oil or fat _____

6 Complete the words in each sentence.

▶ Boil the carrots in that saucepan.
1 I've got a good r_____ for spaghetti Bolognese, so we just need to buy the i_____.
2 A_____ the meat to the vegetables and fry it for about 10 minutes.
3 The frying p_____ is fine, but I need a larger d_____ to serve the meat on.
4 You have to b_____ the cake in the o_____ for about 40 minutes.
5 If you add some f_____, it will make the sauce thicker.
6 Add the s_____, then s_____ the rice continuously while it cooks.

7 Test yourself. Cover the text and say what you can see in the pictures. Then look at the food but cover the cooking instructions. How do you make Cottage Pie?

www.hellooteacher.ir

18 I can talk about money

A Buying things

A phone costs €120. You **can't afford** it, but there's a **scratch**[1] on it, so you ask the shop assistant for a **discount**.

They agree to take €20 **off**, so you buy it and get a **receipt**.

Next day, there's a problem with it, so you take it back and ask for a **refund**.

They refuse, so you wait for **the sales**.

Then, it is **reduced to** €80 – a **bargain**.

You buy it and pay cash. You give them €100 and they give you €20 **change.**

1 Complete the sentences.

► If something costs €10 less than usual, it has €10 off.

1 If you don't have enough money to buy something, then you can't _____ it.
2 If you ask to pay less than the normal price, you are asking for a _____.
3 If the normal price is €60 and the shop sells it for €50, then it has been _____ by €10.
4 The time when shops sell goods more cheaply than normal is called the _____.
5 If you buy something which is a good price for the product, you can say it's a _____.
6 If you pay with €50 for something that costs €30, you should get €20 _____.
7 When you have paid, the shop assistant should give you a _____.
8 If you want your money back on a product, you can ask for a _____.

Glossary

afford sth If you **can afford sth** you have enough money to pay for it.
scratch a mark on the surface of sth made by a sharp object (*see picture*).
discount a cut in the usual price of something. SYN **reduction**.
off If sth has €20 **off**, it costs €20 less than usual.
receipt a piece of paper that shows that sth has been paid for.
refund an amount of money paid back to you when you return sth to a shop.
the sales a time when shops sell things at a lower price.
reduce sth make sth less in size, quantity, or price. **reduction** N.
bargain sth that is a good price or is cheaper than usual.
change If sth costs €2 and you give the assistant €5, you get €3 **change**.

2 Complete the questions in the questionnaire.

► Do you keep the receipt when you've bought something?
1 When you go shopping, do you always look for a b_____?
2 If you saw a product in a shop that had a s_____ on it, would you ask the shop assistant to take money o_____?
3 Do you always check your c_____ when you pay?
4 Do you often wait and buy things in the s_____? If so, what things?
5 Do you often take things back and ask for a r_____?

ABOUT YOU

I often lose it.
_____.
_____.
_____.
_____.
_____.

3 ABOUT YOU *Answer the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.*

www.hellooteacher.ir

B I'm not very good with money

LOTTERY WINNER LOSES EVERYTHING!

Maria Costas was an ordinary working mum without much **income** until she won over €3m on the lottery and became a very **wealthy** woman. She immediately bought a house **worth** €1m, a car that **cost a fortune**, and jewellery **valued** at €250,000. Unfortunately, the house was a **waste of money**. She **owned** it for six months, never lived there, then had to sell it for much less than she paid for it. Maria also wasted **huge amounts** of money on designer clothes and foreign holidays, and within eighteen months she was completely **broke**. Now she **owes** the bank over €5,000, and has credit card **debts** as well.

Glossary

income	the money you earn from work, plus any other money you receive.
wealthy	rich. SYN **well off.**
worth	If a flat is **worth** €3m, you could sell it for €3m (that is the **value**).
cost a fortune	be very expensive.
value sth at sth	decide what sth is worth, or what you could sell it for.
waste of money	a bad use of money.
own sth	If you **own sth**, it is yours; it **belongs to** you.
huge	very large. SYN **massive.**
amount	a quantity of sth; a sum of money.
broke	INF having no money.
owe sb sth	have to pay money to sb for sth they have done or given.
debt	an amount of money that you owe sb.

4 Cover the text. Answer the questions.

▶ How did Maria become wealthy? She won the lottery.
1 How much was her new house worth? _____
2 What was her jewellery valued at? _____
3 How long did she own her new house? _____
4 Why was the house a waste of money? _____
5 How much does she owe the bank? _____
6 Does she have any other debts? _____

5 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals.

▶ My boss has a lot of money. WEALTHY My boss is very wealthy.
1 It's a very large house. HUGE _____
2 The house is worth £2,000,000. VALUE _____
3 Rani hasn't got any money. BROKE _____
4 The flat doesn't belong to me. OWN _____
5 Her shoes were very expensive. FORTUNE _____
6 Gisela has debts of €5,000. OWE _____

6 Complete the sentences.

▶ The watch went wrong after two months; it was a waste of money.
1 My uncle won a huge _____ of money, so he's very _____ off now.
2 I haven't got any money; I'm completely _____ .
3 It's a nice flat, but it isn't _____ half a million euros.
4 It's an absolutely _____ school: there are about 2,500 students.
5 He's got a day job and an evening job, so he has a good _____ .

7 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

19 I can talk about sleep

A Before, during, and after sleep

BEFORE: You feel **sleepy**, start **yawning**[1], and decide to go to bed. You might put on **pyjamas**[2] or a **nightie**[3], perhaps **set the alarm**[4], and then get into bed. Soon, if you're lucky, you **fall asleep**.

DURING: When you're **asleep**, you have **dreams**[5] and possibly **nightmares**. Some people **snore**[6]; at this point they're **fast asleep**.

AFTER: 7.30 a.m. The alarm **goes off**. It might **wake you up**, or you might be **wide awake** already. People without an alarm might **oversleep**, others might decide to **have a lie-in**.

1

4

2

5

3

6

Glossary

sleepy tired and ready to go to sleep.
fall asleep start sleeping. SYN **go to sleep**.
asleep sleeping.
nightmare a bad dream.
fast asleep sleeping deeply. SYN **in a deep sleep**. OPP **wide awake**.
go off ring or make a noise.
wake sb up make sb stop sleeping.
oversleep sleep longer than you should or want.
have a lie-in INF stay in bed later than usual.

1 Replace the underlined word or phrase with words or phrases with the same meaning.

I felt ▶ tired, so I went to bed quite early last night. I went to sleep without a problem and very soon I was in a deep sleep. Unfortunately, in the middle of the night, I had a bad dream which woke me up. After that, I was awake for ages and didn't fall asleep again until about half past four, so when the alarm rang just after seven, I didn't hear it and I carried on sleeping. When I finally woke up, I felt terrible.

▶ sleepy
1 .....
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....
6 .....

2 Complete the sentences.

1 Barry's still in bed and he's fast ▶ asleep . Do you want me to ..... him up?
2 I felt really ..... , so I went to bed.
3 I forgot to ..... my alarm last night, and I'm afraid I ..... this morning.
4 I don't have to get up early tomorrow, so I think I'll have a ..... .
5 It was after midnight but I still felt wide ..... .
6 I felt really tired – I couldn't stop ..... .
7 My husband wears red ..... in bed and ..... so loudly that he keeps me awake.

3 Test yourself. Cover the text above. Say what you can see in the pictures.

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Sleep habits

ABOUT YOU

Antonio: 'I **sleep like a log** wherever I am.' .....

Ella: 'If I eat late, I often **have a restless night**.' .....

Hiroko: 'I need a good night's sleep, otherwise I can't **concentrate** the next day.' .....

Raul: '**Lack of sleep** makes me really **irritable**.' .....

Suzanna: 'I often have nightmares and wake up feeling **exhausted**.' .....

Carla: 'I've always been **a heavy sleeper** – nothing **disturbs** me.' .....

Nick: 'I **suffer from insomnia**, so I never get much sleep.' .....

Agnieszka: 'During the day, I often **have a nap**.' .....

Omar: 'When there are things **on my mind** – like exams – I sleep really badly.' .....

Glossary

habit a thing you do often, almost without thinking.

sleep like a log sleep very well. OPP **sleep badly**.

have a restless night be unable to sleep well and often wake up.

concentrate (on sth) give all your attention to sth.

lack of sth a situation in which you don't have enough of sth (e.g. money, food, or sleep).

irritable becoming angry easily.

exhausted extremely tired, physically or mentally.

a heavy sleeper a person who doesn't wake up easily. OPP **a light sleeper**.

disturb sb do sth to stop sb who is trying to sleep, work, etc.

suffer from sth have the experience of sth unpleasant.

insomnia If you suffer from **insomnia**, you are often unable to sleep.

have a nap have a short sleep, e.g. for half an hour.

on my mind If sth is **on your mind**, you're thinking or worrying about it.

4 Find six more phrases in the box.

concentrate ✓ have like a log insomnia have a restless sleep a nap
a heavy on something ✓ on night suffer from sleeper my mind

▶ concentrate on something

.....

.....

.....

5 Complete the sentences with suitable words or phrases.

▶ I get very irritable if I don't sleep well.

1 These days I often have a ..... after lunch; it's almost become a ..... .

2 After a relaxing bath and a hot drink, I always sleep ..... .

3 I never sleep more than three hours a night – I ..... insomnia.

4 I had too much to eat and drink last night, and I had a very ..... night.

5 I didn't sleep well last night because I've got a lot of things on my ..... .

6 Nothing ..... me at night – I'm a very ..... sleeper.

7 I was absolutely ..... last night and I slept for ten hours.

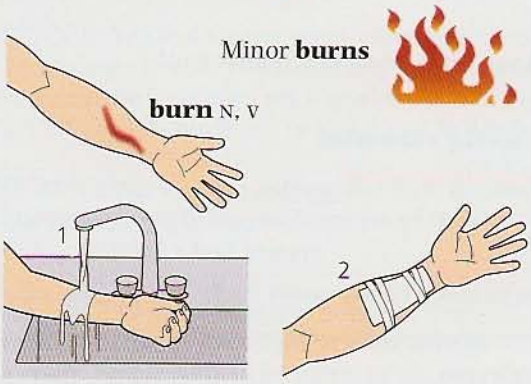
8 I'm afraid I'm a bit irritable at the moment. I'm suffering from a ..... of sleep.

6 ABOUT YOU Read the statements at the top of the page again. Are they true for you? Write your answers or ask another student.

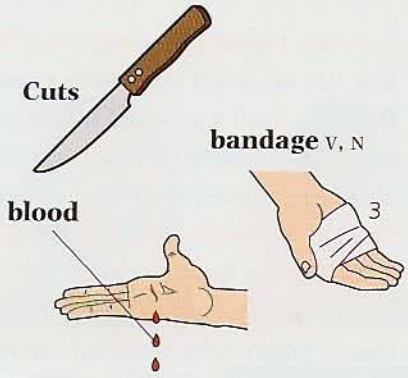
www.hellooteacher.ir

20 I can talk about injuries

A Burns and cuts



Hold the affected area under **running water**[1] for 15 minutes. **Cover** it with a dry, clean **dressing**[2] to **prevent infection.** If **symptoms** of infection **develop**, see your doctor.



Wash and dry your hands **thoroughly.** Clean the **wound** under running water. Dry the area, and put a dressing over it **temporarily** while you clean the skin around the wound. Cover the cut completely with a dressing, or **bandage**[3] it. It should **heal up** in a few days.

Glossary

cover sth	put sth over sth, especially to protect it.
prevent sth	stop sth from happening. **prevention** N.
infection	an illness caused by bacteria or a virus.
symptom	a change in your body which is a sign of illness.
develop	grow or increase.
thoroughly	in a very careful and complete way.
wound	an area of damage to part of your body (especially a **cut**).
temporarily	for a short time only.
heal OR **heal up**	become healthy again.

1 Complete the words.

► p r e v e n t
1 i n f _ _ _ _ i o n
2 b _ n d _ g e
3 t h _ r _ _ g h l _
4 w _ _ n d
5 b l _ _ d
6 s _ m p t _ m
7 t _ _ p o r _ r _ l y
8 d _ v _ l _ p

2 Complete the texts.

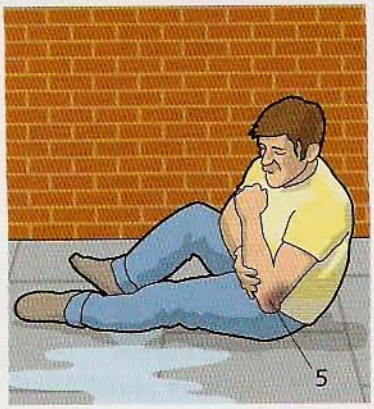
I was cooking last weekend and picked up a hot pan and ► burnt myself. It was really painful. I held the (1) b_____ under (2) r_____ water for fifteen minutes, then I (3) c_____ it with a dressing. I made sure it was clean because you have to (4) p_____ infection. Since then, it's got a lot better and I haven't had any (5) s_____ of infection.

I cut my hand yesterday. I cleaned the (6) w_____ under running water, then covered it (7) t_____ with a (8) d_____, and washed the skin around it. I couldn't find a (9) b_____, so I went to the chemist's for one. I probably didn't clean the wound (10) t_____ enough, as it hasn't (11) h_____ very well, and I think I've got an (12) i_____.

3 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

B A nasty injury



The other day I **slipped**[1] and fell **backwards** and **banged** my **elbow**[2] on the ground.

I started to feel **dizzy**[3] and then I **fainted**[4]. I was **unconscious** for a minute or so.

When I **came round**, my arm was very painful. It was quite **swollen** and **bruised**[5], but it wasn't **bleeding**. I realized it was a serious **injury**, so I went to hospital.

4 True or false? Write T or F.

▶ If you come round, you are conscious. T
1 If you bang your head, it always bleeds. .....
2 If you faint, you become unconscious. .....
3 If you lose blood, you always faint. .....
4 A bruised knee looks blue. .....
5 A nasty burn is a serious burn. .....
6 If you slip, you can easily fall. .....
7 Your elbow is at the end of your arm. .....
8 A swollen finger is bigger than usual. .....
9 Feeling dizzy is very painful. .....
10 Backwards is the opposite of forwards. .....

Glossary

nasty very bad or unpleasant.
injury an area of damage done to sb's body, especially in an accident. **injure** v.
backward(s) in the direction behind you. OPP **forward(s)**.
bang sth hit a part of your body against sth when you are moving.
dizzy feeling as if everything is turning around and you might fall.
unconscious in a state like sleep, often caused by an injury. OPP **conscious.**
come round become conscious again. OPPS **faint**, **pass out**.
swollen larger than usual because of an injury.
bleed lose blood from your body.

5 A word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end.

▶ The ball hit him next to his eye; his eye was quite/the next day. bruised
1 I on the ice and fell over. .....
2 I know he slipped, but did he fall or forwards? .....
3 He fainted, and when he came he didn't know where he was. .....
4 Nobody was killed, but three people were in the accident. .....
5 She her head on the door and fell to the floor. .....
6 My finger was so I put a dressing on it. .....

6 ABOUT YOU Which of the following have you done or experienced? Tick them.

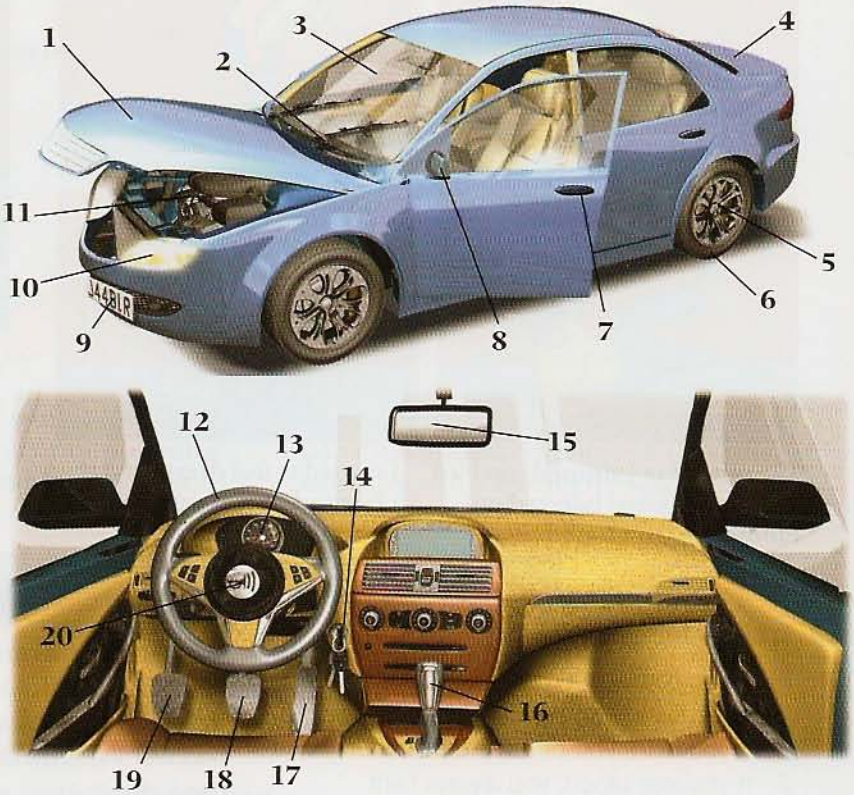
1 had a swollen eye. .....
2 fainted in a public place. .....
3 had a serious injury. .....
4 slipped and fallen into a river. .....
5 had a nasty burn on your arm. .....
6 lost quite a lot of blood in an accident. .....

www.hellooteacher.ir

21 I can talk about cars and driving

A The car

1 bonnet
2 windscreen wiper
3 windscreen
4 boot
5 wheel
6 tyre
7 door handle
8 wing mirror
9 number plate
10 headlights
11 engine
12 steering wheel
13 speedometer
14 ignition
15 rear-view mirror
16 gear stick/lever
17 accelerator
18 brake
19 clutch
20 horn



1 Combine words from the box to form six more compound words.

rear-view ✓ steering door windscreen lever mirror number
wing gear wheel mirror ✓ wiper handle plate

▶ rear-view mirror _____ _____

_____ _____

_____ _____

2 Outside the car or inside the car? Write O or I.

▶ clutch I
1 tyre _____
2 speedometer _____
3 steering wheel _____
4 headlight _____
5 brake _____
6 rear-view mirror _____
7 wheel _____
8 horn _____
9 windscreen wiper _____

3 Complete the sentences.

If you want to . . .
▶ start the car, turn on the ignition .
1 stop, put your foot on the _____ .
2 change gear, put your foot on the _____ .
3 go faster, put your foot on the _____ .
4 store luggage, open the _____ .
5 look at the engine, open the _____ .
6 see at night, turn on the _____ .
7 turn a corner, look in your _____ .
8 drive in the rain, turn on the _____ .
9 warn someone, press your _____ .

4 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. How many things can you name?

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Driving tips

TIPS FOR SAFER DRIVING

- Always **be prepared for** bad road conditions and bad drivers.
- On wet roads, **brake**, **steer**, and **accelerate** gently to avoid **skidding**.
- **Watch out** for motorcyclists and cyclists; give them plenty of space when **overtaking**.
- In car parks, **reverse** into a parking space **rather than** drive into it.
- **Keep** to the **speed limit** and don't drive too **close to** the vehicle in front.

Glossary

tip	a piece of practical advice.
be prepared for sth	be ready and able to deal with any problems. **prepare** v.
brake	go more slowly or stop a vehicle by using the brakes.
steer	control the direction a vehicle is moving in.
accelerate	go faster. OPP **slow down**.
skid	suddenly move sideways without control.
watch out	be careful because there is a possible danger.
overtake sb/sth	go past sb/sth that is going more slowly.
reverse	go backwards in a car.
rather than	instead of; in place of.
speed limit	the highest legal speed at which you can drive on a road.
close to sth	near sth.

spotlight *keep*

Keep often means 'continue or stay in a particular place or condition'.

***Keep** to the speed limit.* (Stay below the speed limit.)

***Keep** left.* (Stay on the left.)

5 Cover the glossary, then complete the meanings.

▶ brake = stop a vehicle

1 overtake = go ..... another car
2 accelerate = go .....
3 reverse = go .....
4 tip = a piece of .....
5 steer = control the ..... of the vehicle
6 rather than = ... of

6 Complete the sentences.

▶ You shouldn't overtake on a bridge.

1 The weather was awful and I wasn't really ..... for it.
2 I never go over the speed ..... , or drive too ..... to the cars in front.
3 He crashed into the tree after he ..... on the wet road.
4 There's a school on the corner, so ..... out for small children.
5 Do you always ..... to the speed limit?
6 I parked in the street ..... than the car park because it's free.

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Are these useful tips, or did you know them already? .....
2 Do you usually brake and accelerate gently? .....
3 Do you usually reverse into parking spaces in a car park? Why/Why not? .....
4 Are there times when you don't keep to the speed limit? .....
5 Do you know what to do if your car skids? .....
6 What do you do to prepare for bad winter weather? .....

8 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

22 I can describe travel problems and accidents

A Trains and planes

'We had **trouble** getting to the airport because we **got held up** in traffic.'

'I wanted to leave at 8.30, but my **day return** was only **valid** after 9.30.'

'The train was **due** at 9.42 but it didn't **get in** until 10.25.'

'I was late because they **cancelled** my train without **warning**.'

'The flight from Heathrow was delayed, so I missed my **connecting flight** to Palermo.'

'My brother was **meant to pick me up** at the airport, but he didn't **turn up**.'

Glossary

trouble (doing sth/with sth) a situation that causes a problem.

get/be held up If you **get held up** or **are held up**, sth has caused you to be late. SYN **be delayed.**

day return a ticket to travel to a place and back again on the same day.

valid acceptable and able to be used.

due expected to arrive or happen.

get in (usually of a train or **coach** *see picture*) arrive.

cancel sth decide that sth that has been planned will not happen.

warning information that sth bad may happen.

connecting flight a flight that leaves soon after another one arrives.

meant to do sth If sb is or was **meant to do sth**, they have been asked to do it.

pick sb/sth up go to a place and collect sb/sth (usually in a car).

turn up arrive or appear (often used in the negative).

1 Good news or bad news? Write G or B.

▶ I got my connecting flight. G
1 The train was cancelled. .....
2 The train's due in a minute. .....
3 They didn't turn up. .....
4 This ticket is still valid. .....
5 I couldn't get a day return. .....
6 They didn't get held up. .....
7 We were delayed. .....

2 Complete the sentences.

▶ My husband was meant to meet me, but he didn't turn up.
1 They've just said the train is ..... in five minutes, so that's good.
2 The plane to Madrid was late, so I missed my ..... flight to Malaga.
3 We had a lot of ..... at the border: we were ..... for two hours.
4 Passengers arrived late because the train company ..... two trains this morning.
5 I was ..... to meet them at the station, but I got ..... up in the traffic.
6 What time does your train ..... in?
7 He's gone to the airport to ..... them up.
8 There was no ..... that trains might be cancelled.

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY *Write your answers or ask another student.*

1 Do most trains get in on time, or are they often delayed? If delayed, why?

.....

2 When did you last miss a train or plane? Why, and what happened?

.....

www.hellooteacher.ir

B On the roads

Hi Sammy

We've just got back from a little **trip** to Spain. We stayed **overnight** in Malaga, then **hired a car** and drove up to Seville, **stopping off** at Osuna **on the way**. We loved Seville – you really must go there. We also went down to Cadiz, **via** Jerez, but the journey was a **nightmare**! We **got stuck** in a **traffic jam** for hours, and when we finally **ended up** on **the outskirts** of Cadiz, there was more **heavy traffic** because of **the rush hour**. Still, it was nice when we got there. We went to . . .

spotlight ***way***

The **way** is the route or direction that you need to take to get somewhere.

*Is this the **way** to the bank? I went **the wrong way** and got lost. We stopped **on the way** to Scotland. I saw him **on my way** to school.*

Glossary

trip a journey to a place and back again, for business or pleasure, often for a short period of time (e.g. a **day trip**, a **business trip**).

overnight for one night.

hire a car pay to use a car for a short time. SYN **rent a car.**

stop off stop during a journey to do sth.

via going through a place (to get to another place).

nightmare INF an experience that is very unpleasant.

get/be stuck be unable to move easily.

traffic jam a long line of cars moving very slowly.

end up find yourself in a place or situation you didn't plan.

the outskirts (PL N) The outer part of a town or city is called **the outskirts.**

heavy traffic a lot of cars on the road at a particular time.

the rush hour the time when a lot of people are travelling to and from work.

4 Match words on the left with words on the right to make eight more words or phrases.

heavy ✓ rush hire traffic	off way traffic ✓ stuck up
the wrong stop get end on	a car hour the way jam

▶ heavy traffic _____ _____ _____

_____ _____ _____

_____ _____ _____

5 Complete the definitions.

▶ The outer part of a town or city is the outskirts.

1 A journey to a place and then back again is a _____.

2 A long line of cars moving slowly is a _____ _____.

3 If you stay somewhere for one night, you stay _____.

4 To pay to use a car for a short time is to _____ it.

5 A very unpleasant experience is a _____. It also means 'a bad dream'.

6 If you go through Birmingham to get to London, you go _____ Birmingham.

6 Complete the questions. ABOUT YOU

1 Have you or your family ever _____ a car? If so, when and why? _____

2 On long journeys, do you want to get from A to B as quickly as possible, or do you like to _____ off somewhere on the _____? _____

3 Do you often get _____ in _____ traffic? _____

4 Do you ever go on day _____? If so, where to? _____

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 6, or ask another student.

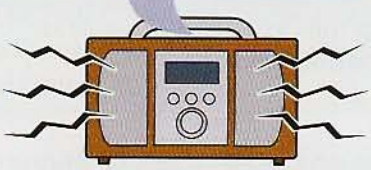
www.hellooteacher.ir

C A road accident

Here is the latest travel news . . .

There's been a **serious accident** on the M3 outside Winchester. It **occurred** just after 7.00 a.m., when a **van skidded** on the wet road and **collided with** other **vehicles**. The accident has **blocked** two **lanes** of the motorway. **Emergency services** are at the scene of the accident, and motorists are being advised to **avoid** the area.

And on the M23 at Junction 9 near Gatwick, an **ambulance** has **broken down** while taking an **injured** driver to hospital. This is causing delays for traffic on the way to the airport . . .



Glossary

serious accident • a bad or dangerous accident.

occur FML • happen, especially in a way that has not been planned.

van

skid • suddenly move forwards or sideways without any control.

collide with sth • hit sth very hard while moving. SYN **crash into sth.**

vehicle • FML e.g. a car, bike, bus, or lorry.

block a road, etc. • make it difficult for anything to pass.

lane • a part of a wide road marked by painted white lines.

emergency services • the police, ambulance, and fire services.

avoid sb/sth • stay away from sb/sth.

ambulance

break down • (of a vehicle) stop working.

injured • hurt physically.

8 One letter is missing. Write the words correctly.

▶ injurd injured
1 amblance _____
2 veicle _____
3 serius _____
4 emegency _____
5 ocur _____
6 bloc _____
7 avid _____
8 colide _____

9 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.

▶ Was it a bad accident? serious
1 Fortunately the driver wasn't hurt. _____
2 There are too many cars, vans, and lorries on the road. _____
3 The van crashed into another car. _____
4 The car went sideways out of control on the icy road. _____
5 The police and an ambulance arrived within minutes. _____
6 The accident happened late last night. _____

10 Complete the sentences.

▶ The car was hit by a big van .
1 We couldn't get by because there was a fallen tree _____ the road.
2 I think the driver must have _____ on the ice.
3 There was a _____ accident last week when a woman was nearly killed.
4 You should move into the outside _____ to overtake another car.
5 The car _____ on the way to the airport and I had to ring for help.
6 Several people were _____, and they were taken to hospital.

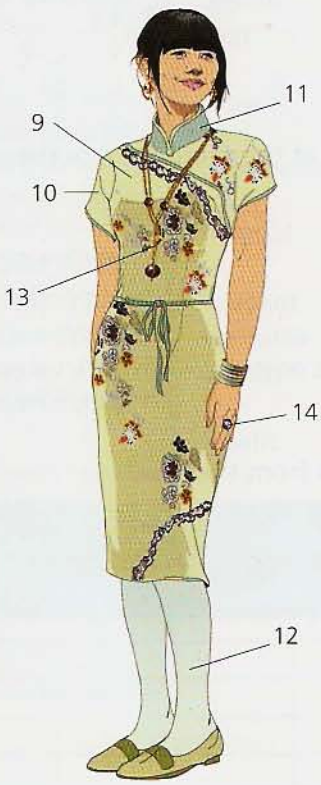
11 Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. Say the words.

www.hellooteacher.ir

23 I can talk about clothes and fashion

A Clothes

Amy



Beth

Gavin

1 **cap**
2 **cotton blouse/shirt**
3 **belt**
4 **waistcoat**
5 **denim skirt**
6 **high-heeled leather boots**
7 **earrings**
8 **bracelet**
9 **silk dress**
10 **short sleeves**
11 **collar**
12 **tights**
13 **necklace**
14 **ring**
15 **V-neck sweater**
16 **button**
17 **suede shoes**
18 **pocket**

spotlight *jewellery* and *material*

Necklace, **bracelet**, **ring**, and **earrings** are all examples of **jewellery**.
Cotton and **silk** are types of **material**. SYN **fabric**.
Leather and **suede** are **materials** made from animal skin.

Underwear: 1 **bra** 2 **knickers** 3 **slip** 4 **underpants** 5 **vest**

www.hellooteacher.ir

1 Complete the words.

▶ k n i ck e rs

1 ___ n d ___ r w ___ ___ r
2 m ___ t ___ r ___ ___ l
3 s l ___ ___ v ___
4 t i ___ ___ t s
5 s ___ ___ d e
6 n ___ c k l ___ ___ e
7 b l ___ ___ s e
8 e a ___ ___ i n ___ s
9 v ___ ___ t
10 b ___ t t ___ n

2 Cover the words and look at the pictures. Are these statements true or false? Write T or F.

▶ Amy's wearing a necklace. F

1 Amy's wearing a belt. ___
2 Gavin's wearing a ring. ___
3 Beth's wearing tights. ___
4 Beth's dress has got two buttons on it. ___
5 Gavin's wearing denim jeans. ___
6 Amy's blouse has got short sleeves. ___
7 Beth's dress has got two pockets. ___
8 Beth's wearing high-heeled shoes. ___
9 Amy's wearing earrings. ___
10 Amy's wearing a denim skirt. ___

3 Complete the table with words from the box.

cotton skirt waistcoat vest bracelet leather cap underpants ✓ ring necklace slip bra blouse suede earrings silk

Underwear	▶ underpants			
Jewellery				
Material(s)				
Clothes				

4 Complete the questions with words from the box.

belts leather cap ✓ denim ring neck sleeves silk bracelet material

ABOUT YOU

▶ *Do you ever wear a* cap *? If so, when and why?* ___
1 Do you wear a ___ ? If so, on which finger(s)? ___
2 Do you wear a ___ ? If so, on which wrist? ___
3 How many leather ___ have you got? ___
4 How many pairs of ___ jeans have you got? ___
5 What have you got that is made of ___ or ___ ? ___
6 Have you got any V- ___ sweaters? If so, what colour? ___
7 In summer, do you wear short ___ a lot? ___
8 Do you have a favourite ___ ? If so, what? ___

5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 4, or ask another student.

6 *Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you name the items?*

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Fashion

Three golden rules for fashion

Fashion expert Alyson Walsh says that every **stylish** woman should have a 'capsule wardrobe' – a timeless collection of clothes for every occasion. This includes: a little black dress, the perfect jeans, leather handbag, a fine wool jumper, white shirt, knee-length skirt, etc. Being stylish is about what **suits** you and your **figure**. Here are three golden rules:

- Spend as much as possible on the basics (your capsule wardrobe) and don't worry too much about **fashionable** clothes – you probably won't wear them after one season.
- Choose **neutral** colours: black, cream, white, and dark blue. Neutrals look **elegant**, and are **versatile** and easy to **match**. Just think of Armani fashions, year after year.
- A simple **outfit** can be **transformed** with the **latest** fashion **accessory**, e.g. a belt.

Glossary

stylish	attractive and fashionable. **style** N.
suit	If something **suits** you, it looks good on you.
figure	the shape of the body, especially that of a woman.
fashionable	popular at the present time. OPP **unfashionable**.
neutral	(of a colour) not strong or bright. **neutral** N.
elegant	attractive and well designed.
versatile	having many different uses.
match	look good with something else. **matching** ADJ.
outfit	a set of clothes that you wear together.
transform sth	change sth completely, usually in a positive way.
latest	new or very recent.
accessory	sth you wear or carry that goes with your clothes, e.g. a bag.

7 Circle the correct answer.

▶ It's a very (versatile) fashionable jacket – I can wear it on different occasions.
1 You should buy that blouse; it suits/matches your skirt.
2 She wore a very unfashionable/stylish jacket – it looked awful.
3 I need to get a new figure/outfit for my brother's wedding.
4 This coat is the latest/neutral fashion, but I don't particularly like the style/figure.
5 I think that dress really matches/suits you.
6 My mother's got a versatile/very good figure.
7 You can make a simple dress look great with the right outfits/accessories.
8 I always wear neutral/bright colours, but they can be a bit boring.

8 Complete the sentences.

▶ She can wear tight jeans because she has such a good figure .
1 I bought some pink shoes and a _____ handbag; they look great together.
2 I'd love to be like Mary; she looks so _____ whatever she wears.
3 I want a pair of those trousers; they're the _____ fashion.
4 She never wears red – it doesn't _____ her.
5 Black is very _____ because you can wear it with almost anything.
6 She's got a new hairstyle and it completely _____ the way she looks.
7 Expensive _____ such as bags and belts can have a big effect on how you look.
8 I really like her new _____ because it all works well together.

9 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

Review: Daily life

Unit 16

1 Complete the table with the words from the box.

fig beetroot basil ✓ cod veal sweetcorn rabbit oysters
pomegranate salmon clams parsley broccoli raspberry carp
thyme mussels mint sea bass liver crab kidney leeks apricot

Herbs	Fruit	Vegetables	Fish	Seafood	Meat
▶ basil					

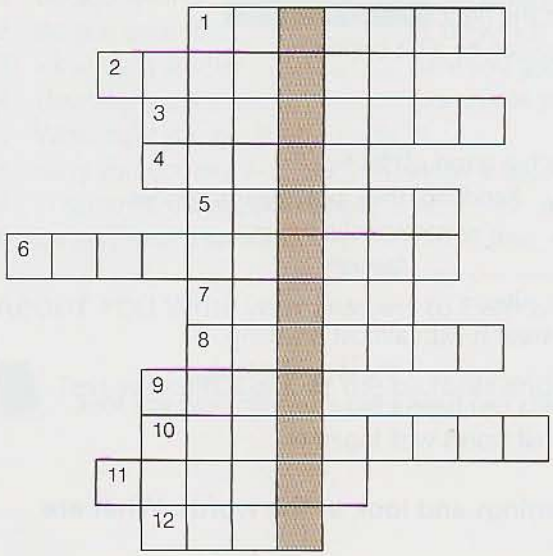
Unit 17

1 Complete the definitions.

▶ boil = cook in water
1 junk food = food which is ..... good for you
2 cut down on food = eat ..... food
3 healthy food = food which is ..... for you
4 a waste of money = a ..... use of your money
5 put on weight = become .....
6 fry = cook in .....
7 bake = cook in the oven ..... oil or fat
8 chop = ... into small pieces
9 fattening = making you put on .....
10 recipe = a set of instructions for ..... something

Unit 18

1 Complete the crossword, using the clues at the top of the next page. The letters in the grey squares spell out another phrase related to money. What is it?



www.hellooteacher.ir

1 a piece of paper that shows that something has been paid for
2 informal phrase meaning 'wealthy' (two words)
3 a time when shops sell things at a lower price (two words)
4 a bad use of something, e.g. money or time
5 If something costs €15, you give the shop assistant €20 and you get €5 _____.
6 haven't got enough money to do something (two words)
7 informal word for having no money
8 a very good price for something you are buying
9 the amount of money that you owe someone
10 a lower price than before
11 the total sum of money
12 massive

The letters in the grey squares make the phrase _____.

Unit 19

1 Complete the text with suitable words.

Insomnia: how to get a good night's sleep

Many people suffer from insomnia. They may not be able to (1) _____ asleep. Others may wake up during the night and not (2) _____ back to sleep again; or they may wake up too early in the morning.

Is it a serious problem?

No, not really, but if you suffer from a (3) _____ of sleep, it can make you feel tired, depressed, and (4) _____. It can also make it hard to (5) _____ on your work during the day.

How much sleep do I need?

Adults need 7–8 hours a night. If you feel (6) _____ during the day, you aren't getting enough sleep at night. However, sleep (7) _____ may change with age. For example, older people may sleep less at night but have a (8) _____ during the day.

What is a sleep diary?

A sleep diary can help you understand your sleeping patterns. You have to keep a record of when you go to sleep and wake up, how often you have a restless (9) _____, etc. And if you sleep badly, you can write down whether you have things on your (10) _____, for example, family problems, or worries at work.

Unit 20

1 Read the definitions and complete the words.

▶ bandage thin white cloth you tie around a cut or wound
1 bl_____ lose blood from the body
2 di_____ feeling as if everything is turning round and you might fall
3 pre_____ stop something from happening
4 sym_____ a change in your body which is a sign of illness
5 inf_____ an illness caused by bacteria or a virus
6 inj_____ an area of damage in the body, often caused by an accident
7 dev_____ grow, increase, or change into something
8 tho_____ in a very careful and complete way

www.hellooteacher.ir

Unit 21

1 Match 1–7 with a–h to make compound words.

▶	wing g	a	stick
1	steering	b	wiper
2	gear	c	handle
3	speed	d	mirror
4	rear-view	e	plate
5	door	f	wheel
6	number	g	mirror
7	windscreen	h	limit

Unit 22

1 Tick (✓) the words that are possible in the sentence.

▶ We were *stuck* ☑ *delayed* ☑ *stopped off* ☐ in a traffic jam.
1 The train was *cancelled* ☐ *held up* ☐ *collided* ☐ .
2 We stopped on the *outskirts* ☐ *the rush hour* ☐ *the way* ☐ .
3 He turned up in *a lane* ☐ *a vehicle* ☐ *an ambulance* ☐ .
4 They crashed into *a coach* ☐ *a van* ☐ *an accident* ☐ .
5 The car *broke down* ☐ *hired* ☐ *crashed* ☐ .
6 The passengers were *turned up* ☐ *injured* ☐ *delayed* ☐ .
7 I've got *a valid ticket* ☐ *a day return* ☐ *a traffic jam* ☐ .
8 The train *gets in* ☐ *is due* ☐ *ends up* ☐ at two o'clock.

2 Complete the phrases with a suitable verb.

▶ crash ..... into another vehicle
1 h..... a car
2 p..... your friend up at the station
3 t..... up late for a flight
4 g..... held up in traffic
5 s..... on the ice
6 s..... off on the way for a coffee
7 e..... up in the wrong place

Unit 23

1 Circle the one which is different.

▶ blouse waistcoat sweater (outfit)
1 cap style boot sweater
2 leather bracelet suede cotton
3 collar pocket dress sleeve
4 cotton denim silk vest
5 earrings button necklace ring
6 suede fashionable elegant versatile
7 bra knickers underpants underwear

2 Complete the sentence so that it means the same as the sentence on the left.

▶ I don't like strong colours. — I like neutral colours.
1 You can wear this blouse with anything. — This blouse is very .....
2 Her bag's the same colour as her shoes. — Her bag ..... her shoes.
3 Her new hairstyle looks really good on her. — Her new hairstyle ..... her.
4 I need a new skirt and jacket for work. — I need a new ..... for work .
5 I'm going to get a necklace and some earrings. — I'm going to get some .....
6 I don't like cotton or silk. — I don't like these .....

www.hellooteacher.ir

24 I can describe a visit to the dentist

I'd **had toothache** for a couple of weeks. When I tried to **bite** or **chew** on one of my back teeth, it was very **painful**. I needed to have a **check-up** anyway, so I rang the **dental surgery** and **made an appointment** for Friday. The dentist **examined** my teeth and told me I needed two **fillings**, and said he would have to **take out** the tooth which was **causing** the pain. I've got to go back for **treatment** on Tuesday, and I'm **dreading** it.

spotlight ***dread, look forward to***

If you are **dreading** something, you are afraid of something that is going to happen. If you are **looking forward** to something, you are happy or excited about something that is going to happen.

I dread going to the dentist.

My treatment finishes tomorrow; I'm really looking forward to that.

Glossary

have toothache	have a pain in your tooth.
bite sth PT **bit** PP **bitten**	cut sth with your teeth.
chew	use your teeth to break up food in your mouth.
painful	If something is **painful**, it hurts.
check-up	a medical or dental examination to see if you are healthy.
dental surgery	a place where a dentist sees you (also **doctor's surgery**).
make an appointment	arrange a time to go to a dentist, doctor, etc.
examine sb/sth	look at sb/sth very carefully.
filling	a mixture that a dentist puts in your tooth to fill a hole.
take out a tooth	remove a tooth from your mouth.
cause sth	be the reason that sth happens, often sth bad.
treatment	the things a doctor or dentist does to make you better. **treat sb** v.

1 Complete the sentences with *I*, *The tooth*, or *The dentist*.

▶ I needed a check-up.
1 _____ took the tooth out.
2 _____ was causing me pain.
3 _____ made an appointment.
4 _____ examined my teeth.
5 _____ was dreading going to the surgery.
6 _____ gave me a filling.
7 _____ had to have some treatment.
8 _____ was treated at the surgery.
9 _____ was painful.
10 _____ bit on an apple and hurt my tooth.

2 Complete the questions.

ABOUT YOU

▶ How often do you have a check-up ?
1 Do you _____ forward to going to the dentist? Why/Why not?
2 What's your dental _____ like?
3 When did you last _____ toothache?
4 When did the dentist last give you a _____?
5 Is it ever _____ when you bite or _____ your food?
6 When did a dentist last _____ out one of your teeth?

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.

4 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

25 I can describe hospital procedures

GOING INTO HOSPITAL

go into hospital go for treatment and stay there for a night or more.
go to hospital go there for treatment, but not stay in.

- Your doctor is **concerned** about you.

concerned about sb worried about sb.

- He sends you to see a **specialist**.

specialist a person who knows a lot about a particular subject, e.g. a heart specialist. In a hospital, this person is often called a **consultant.**

- You may have **tests**, **X-rays**[1], or **scans**[2].

test a medical examination of part of your body, e.g. an eye test, a blood test.

1

2

- The specialist decides how to **treat** you.

treat sb give medical help to sb to make them better. **treatment** N.

- You may **have an operation immediately** if it is **urgent.**

operation In an **operation**, the doctor cuts open the body (**operates**) to treat the person.
immediately with no delay. SYN **straightaway.**
urgent needing to be done quickly.

- The **surgeon** explains the **benefits** and **risks** to you, the **patient**.

surgeon a doctor who does medical operations.
benefit a thing that has a good or helpful result.
risk a danger that sth bad may happen.
patient a person who is having treatment.

- After the operation you return to the **ward**, where the nurses **care for** you.

care for sb look after sb. SYN **take care of sb.**
ward *(see picture)*

- The operation is **successful**. When you are **well enough**, you can go home to **recover**.

successful If sth is **successful**, it has gone well.
recover (from sth) become well after you have been ill. SYN **get over sth.**

operating theatre

ward

spotlight *enough*

You can use **enough** after adjectives and adverbs. It means 'as good, well, old, long, etc. as is necessary'.
She's not ***well enough*** *to go out.* (She needs to feel better before she can go out.)
He's ***strong enough*** *to get up.* (He has the strength he needs to get up.)
You can also use **enough** before plural and uncountable nouns.
There aren't ***enough*** *doctors.* (We need more doctors.)
I haven't got ***enough*** *money.* (I need more money.)

www.hellooteacher.ir

1 Correct the spelling mistakes.

▶ spezialist specialist

1 consultent _____
2 inmediately _____
3 recouver _____
4 pacient _____
5 straightway _____
6 urgente _____
7 well enogh _____
8 succesful _____
9 benifit _____
10 sirgeon _____

2 Circle the correct answer.

▶ The patient/surgeon has the operation.

1 The consultant/patient goes into hospital.
2 The specialist/patient orders the scans.
3 The consultant/patient may have to have an X-ray.
4 The specialist/patient may need treatment urgently.
5 The surgeon/patient explains the benefits of the treatment.
6 The patient/nurse cares for the person after the operation.
7 The specialist/patient gets over the illness.
8 The nurse/patient works on the ward.

3 Complete the conversation with suitable words.

A Hi, Mary, how are you?
B Oh, not too bad, but I'm a bit c oncerned about my eye.
A I'm sorry to hear that. What's the matter?
B Well, I've just been to hospital to see a (1) c_____ and I had some (2) t_____ too, to see what was wrong. I've got a problem at the back of my eye, and I need to have an (3) o_____ .
A Oh, dear. Is it (4) u_____ ?
B Yes, I have to have it done (5) s_____ – I've got to go (6) i_____ hospital tomorrow.
A And are there any (7) r_____ with the treatment?
B I don't think so; it's a very simple operation, and it's usually very (8) s_____ : 98 per cent of people can see better afterwards.
A And when will you be well (9) e_____ to start work again?
B He said I'll need a week to (10) g_____ o_____ the operation. My sister is going to (11) t_____ c_____ of me at home.
A Well, good luck – I hope it goes well.

4 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

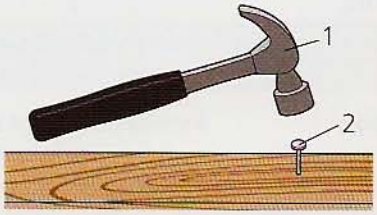
1 Have you ever been into hospital for a few days or longer? When? _____
2 Have you ever visited a patient in hospital? If so, when, and who was it? _____
3 When patients are on a ward, do the nurses take care of them, or does the family look after them too? _____
4 Can you see a specialist straightaway in your country, or do you have to wait? If so, how long? _____
5 Do you have to see your doctor first before you go and see a specialist? _____
6 Where do patients usually go to recover after an operation? _____

5 Test yourself. Cover the meanings in the table and look at the procedures. Can you remember the meanings of the new words?

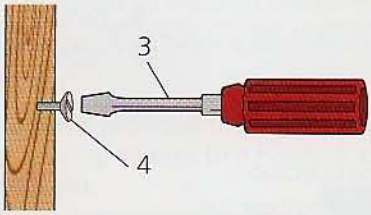
www.hellooteacher.ir

26 I can **explain household tasks**

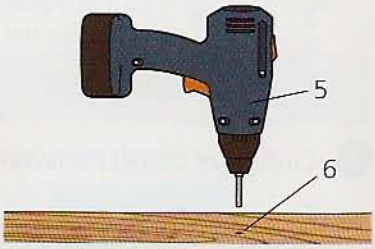
A Using tools and household objects



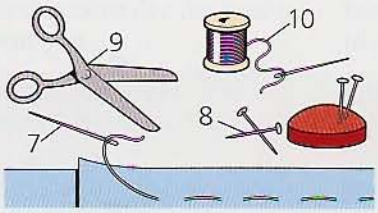
You use a **hammer**[1] to **bang a nail**[2] into a piece of wood.



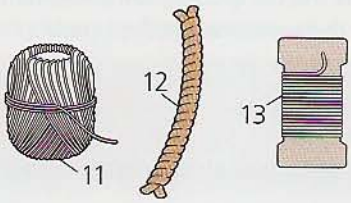
You use a **screwdriver**[3] to **tighten** or **loosen** a **screw**[4].



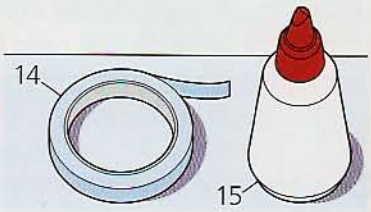
You use a **drill**[5] to make a **hole**[6]. A hammer, a screwdriver, and a drill are **tools**.



You use a **needle**[7], **pins**[8], **scissors**[9], and **cotton/thread**[10] when you're **sewing**.



You use **string**[11], **rope**[12], or **wire**[13] to **tie** things together.



You use ™**Sellotape**[14] or **glue**[15] to **stick** things **together**.

1 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ Stick it together with glue/cotton.
- 1 Sew it with a pin/needle.
- 2 Cut it with scissors/a drill.
- 3 Tighten it with a hammer/screwdriver.
- 4 Tie it together with rope/nails.
- 5 Bang it in with string/a hammer.
- 6 Make a hole with thread/a drill.
- 7 Stick it together with Sellotape/wire.
- 8 Loosen the screw/cotton.

spotlight Nouns

Cotton, thread, string, rope, wire, Sellotape, and **glue** are all uncountable nouns. **Scissors** is a plural noun.

Where's the string? *I need some glue.*
Where are the scissors?

2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ She didn't have any string, so she stuck the parcel together with Sellotape.
- 1 I've got a hammer and a screwdriver, but I haven't got any other _____.
- 2 When you make a skirt, you cut the fabric with _____, you hold the pieces together with pins, and then you _____ it with a needle and _____.
- 3 If you break the handle off a cup, you can _____ it on with _____.
- 4 I tied all the keys together with a piece of _____.
- 5 If the screws on your door handle are loose, use a _____ to _____ them.
- 6 A drill is very useful if you need to make a _____ in a wall.
- 7 Pass the hammer and I can bang in this _____.
- 8 We _____ a long rope to the tree for the children to play on.

3 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the sentences?

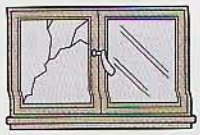
www.hellooteacher.ir

B Common problems

Our flat: things to do
- The lamp isn't working. Try changing the light bulb.
- The radiator's leaking. We'll have to repair it.
- The window's cracked. It needs replacing.
- The TV isn't working properly.
- The radio is faulty.
- The bedroom needs decorating.
- There's something wrong with the door. It keeps sticking.
- The lift's out of order. I hope they fix it soon.
- There's a stain on the carpet which we need to remove.

Meaning

light bulb



cracked window

If sth **isn't working**, it isn't functioning or it's broken.

leak allow liquid or gas to go through a hole or crack. **leak** N.

cracked (*see picture*)

replace sth exchange sth for sth that is better or newer.

properly correctly or well.

faulty not working well; only working sometimes.

decorate a room put paint or paper on the walls.

wrong causing problems or difficulties.

stick be in one position and difficult to move.

out of order If a machine or piece of equipment in a public place is **out of order**, it isn't working.

stain

stain N, V (*see picture*)

remove sth take sth away.

Spotlight *repair, fix, or mend sth*

Repair sth, **fix sth**, and **mend sth** all mean 'put sth right that is broken or damaged'.
*Can you **repair/fix** the fridge?* *It took ages to **repair/mend** the roof.*

We use **mend** and **repair**, rather than **fix**, to talk about repairing clothes.
*I **mended** the hole in my pocket.* *I must get my shoes **repaired**.*

4 Tick (✓) the words which are possible.

▶ My shoe has a hole in it. Can you *repair* ☑ *mend* ☑ *remove* ☐ it for me?
1 This table's broken. We need to *decorate* ☐ *fix* ☐ *repair* ☐ it.
2 Is the bedroom lamp OK? ~ No, it's *faulty* ☐ *out of order* ☐ *not working* ☐.
3 We're going to *remove* ☐ *replace* ☐ *decorate* ☐ the fridge.
4 We need a new *lamp* ☐ *stain* ☐ *light bulb* ☐.
5 The public phone *is out of order* ☐ *is wrong* ☐ *isn't working properly* ☐.
6 The radiator is *leaking* ☐ *faulty* ☐ *sticking* ☐.

5 Complete the text.

The house was in a terrible condition. The rain had come into all the bedrooms because the roof was ▶ leaking, and there were (1) s..... on the walls and carpets. A builder (2) f..... the roof for us, and after that, we had to (3) d..... all the bedrooms. We also had to (4) r..... several windows that were (5) c..... . Then we realized that the central heating wasn't (6) w....., and it cost a lot to have it (7) r..... . The bathroom was a problem too: the shower didn't work (8) p..... – some days the water was hot, others it was freezing, and the taps were (9) l..... too. The previous owners had left two old cars in the garden and we had to pay someone to (10) r..... them. It was all so expensive.

6 Test yourself. Look at the text, and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

27 I can describe housework

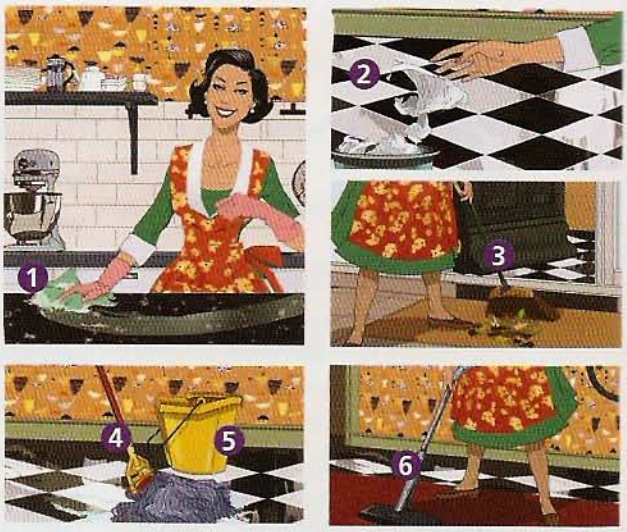
Mrs Bristow's Handy Housework Routine

Daily **tasks**

Make the beds and **do the washing up**. Clean the bathroom and kitchen. **Wipe** all surfaces with a soapy **cloth**[1] to remove **grease**. **Tidy up** and **throw away**[2] any rubbish.

Weekly tasks

Using a **broom**[3], **sweep** the area outside your front door to remove **mud** and general **dirt**. Wash the floors with a **mop**[4] and **bucket**[5] and warm, soapy water. **Vacuum**[6] the carpets, and then **dust** or **polish** the furniture. Wipe the inside of the fridge.



1 Write the missing parts of speech.

- ▶ dirty ADJ dirt N
- 1 dusty ADJ ..... N
- 2 mud N ..... ADJ
- 3 greasy ADJ ..... N
- 4 vacuum cleaner N V

2 Complete the phrases.

- ▶ Do the daily tasks .
- 1 ..... the floor to remove mud and dirt.
- 2 Use a ..... to hoover the carpet.
- 3 Tidy ..... the kitchen every day.
- 4 Remove grease with a soapy ..... .
- 5 ..... the washing up.
- 6 Use a ..... and ..... to wash the floor.
- 7 ..... or ..... the furniture once a week.
- 8 Use a cloth to ..... the kitchen surfaces.
- 9 Use a broom to ..... the floor.
- 10 ..... away any rubbish.

Glossary

task a piece of work you must do.

do the washing up wash dishes, plates, glasses, etc. after a meal.

wipe sth clean or dry sth with a cloth.

grease oil or fat that comes from cooking. **greasy** ADJ.

tidy (up) make a place look better by putting things in the correct place.

sweep sth remove dirt from the floor or ground with a **broom**[3].

mud soft, wet earth. (If you walk in a field after rain, your shoes will be **muddy** ADJ.)

dirt a substance that isn't clean (e.g. mud). **dirty** ADJ.

vacuum sth clean a carpet or floor using a **vacuum cleaner**[6]. SYN **hoover** V.

dust sth remove very small pieces of dry dirt (**dust** N) from sth. **dusty** ADJ.

polish sth make sth shine by rubbing it with a cream or liquid (**polish** N).

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Look again at Mrs Bristow's tasks. In your home, which do you do?

.....

2 Which tasks does someone else do in your home?

.....

www.hellooteacher.ir

28 I can talk to a hairdresser

I'd like to **have** my hair **cut / have a haircut.**

I'm **letting** it grow long, so just **trim** it / **give it a trim**, please. I'd like to **keep** the **fringe**[1] and the **parting**[2] on the left.

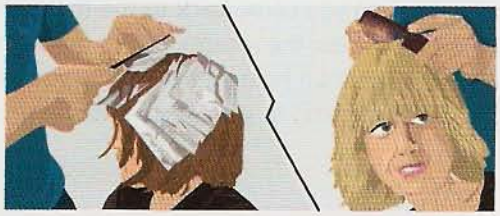
What would you like?

I want to keep the same **hairstyle**, please. I'd like a **cut and blow-dry** (= dry with a **hairdryer**).

hairdryer

I want to have it **permed** / I'd like a **perm**, please.

Could you **colour** it for me, please?



spotlight ***have/get sth done***

If you **have sth done** or **get sth done**, you pay sb to do sth for you. Compare:

*I **have** my hair **cut** every month.* (I go to the hairdresser's.)

*I **colour** my hair every month.* (I do it myself.)

Glossary

let allow sth to happen without trying to stop it.

trim sth cut sth a little so that it is shorter and tidier. SYN **give sth a trim. trim** N.

keep sth make sth stay in a particular state or condition and not change.

hairstyle the way your hair is cut and arranged.

1 Complete the words.

▶ h a i r c u t

1 f r ___ ___ e

2 s ___ ___ s s ___ r ___

3 h ___ ___ r s t ___ ___ e

4 h ___ ___ r d ___ ___ ___ r

5 p ___ ___ t ___ n g

6 t ___ ___ m

7 c ___ l ___ ___ r

8 b l ___ w - d r ___

2 Put the words in order, and add one more word.

▶ going / I'm / hair / to / cut / have I'm going to have my hair cut.

1 could / colour / you / me / for / please? ___

2 Sasha / her / letting / is / hair ___

3 fringe / like / a / parting / I'd / and / a / right / the ___

4 please / blow-dry / like / a / and / I'd ___

5 want / please / hairstyle / same / I / to / the ___

6 to / she's / her / trimmed / going / hair ___

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Are you letting your hair grow at the moment? ___

2 When did you last have your hair cut? ___

3 Have you got a fringe or a parting? ___

4 Where do you get your hair cut? ___

5 In your family, who has their hair permed or coloured? ___

4 Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the requests?

www.hellooteacher.ir

Review: Getting things done

Unit 24

1 Read the dentist's questions and statements. One word is missing in each one. Where from? Write it at the end.

▶ How long have you (toothache? had
1 Is it when you bite? _____
2 I will probably have to the tooth out. _____
3 This is the tooth which is the pain. _____
4 When did you last a check-up? _____
5 Can you come back to the tomorrow? _____
6 Just ask the receptionist to make an for you. _____
7 There's a hole in this tooth – you need a. _____
8 I'm going to your teeth and then decide what you need. _____

Unit 25

1 Which words are being defined?

▶ a person who knows a lot about a subject specialist
1 give someone medical help to make them better _____
2 worried about someone or something _____
3 a doctor who operates on you _____
4 another word for 'immediately' _____
5 something that has a good or helpful result _____
6 look after someone, especially if they are ill _____
7 become well after you have been ill _____
8 a person who is ill and having medical treatment _____
9 the place in a hospital where sick people stay _____
10 a danger that something bad could happen _____

Unit 26

1 Complete the sentences with suitable words.

▶ I'm going to decorate the bedroom. Sandro doesn't like the colour of the walls.
1 There's a _____ on the carpet. Do you know how to _____ it?
2 Did you know the lift was _____ _____ order? ~ Yes, but someone is going to _____ it later today.
3 I'm afraid this radiator is _____ ; there's water on the carpet.
4 I've got a hole in my pocket. Could you _____ it for me, please?
5 This lamp isn't _____. Have we got any light _____ ?
6 I'm afraid there's something _____ _____ the front door. We may have to get someone to _____ it.

www.hellooteacher.ir

2 Which word is being described? Write it at the end.

▶ You use one when you're sewing. needle

1 You use one to bang a nail in the wall. _____

2 You use one to make a hole in the wall. _____

3 You use one to tighten a screw. _____

4 You use them to cut things. _____

5 You use it to tie a boat to a wall. _____

6 You use it to tie some sticks together. _____

7 You use it to stick a broken bowl together. _____

8 You use it to wrap a parcel. _____

Unit 27

1 Complete the sentences.

Mr Bristow's Handy Housework excuses

▶ I couldn't do the washing up because there was no hot water.

1 I couldn't sweep the floor because I couldn't find the _____.

2 I couldn't wash the floor because there was a mop but no _____.

3 I couldn't hoover the carpets because the _____ wasn't working.

4 I couldn't _____ away the rubbish because the bins were all full.

5 I couldn't _____ the furniture because the cloth was dirty.

6 And I didn't _____ the surfaces because they all looked clean to me, anyway.

Unit 28

1 There is a mistake in each sentence. Write the correct sentence at the end.

▶ I like your new style of hair. I like your new hairstyle.

1 I made my hair cut last week. _____

2 I just want trim, please. _____

3 I'd like a cutting and blow-dry, please. _____

4 Are you leaving your hair grow? _____

5 Can you pass me the scissor? _____

6 She's got a parted on the left. _____

7 I'm having my hair colour tomorrow. _____

8 Can I borrow your hairdry? _____

www.hellooteacher.ir

29 I can describe urban life

A The inner city

I parked in the **multi-storey car park** and went the rest of the way on foot. The street lights had just come on, and I could see the **pavements** were **filthy**. At the entrance to the **subway**, there was an old guy **begging** for money. I gave him something and **hurried** on down. There was the usual **graffiti** all over the walls, and **litter** everywhere. I came up the other side and passed a man who was **whistling** quite cheerfully, but I found this part of the **inner city** so **depressing** that I **wondered** if my decision to walk had been a good idea.

Glossary

multi-storey car park	a large car park with several floors.
pavement	the part of the road where people walk.
filthy	very dirty.
subway	a tunnel that goes under a road or railway so people can walk to the other side.
beg	ask for food or money.
hurry	move or do sth quickly. SYN **rush**.
graffiti	pictures or writing on a wall in a public place (often humorous or political).
litter	paper and rubbish that is dropped and left on the ground in a public place.
whistle	make a musical sound with your lips nearly closed.
inner city	the part of a large city which is near the centre and often poor.
depressing	making you feel sad and without hope.
wonder	ask yourself questions about sth.

1 Correct the spelling mistakes.

▶ hury hurry

1 fillthy _____
2 liter _____
3 pavment _____
4 whisle _____
5 grafiti _____
6 deppresing _____

2 Complete the definitions.

▶ inner city = poor parts of a city, near the centre
1 filthy = very _____
2 rush = move or do something _____
3 pavement = place where people _____
4 litter = paper dropped on the _____
5 multi-storey = with several _____
6 beg = ask for _____ or _____
7 whistle = make a sound with your _____ nearly closed
8 graffiti = _____ on a wall in a public place

3 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

▶ My dog comes back to me when I whistle .
1 I hate people who drop _____ in the street. Why can't they put it in a bin?
2 It's a dangerous road, so use the _____ to get to the other side.
3 Leila says that someone in our class is getting married. I _____ who it is.
4 You've got lots of time – you don't need to _____ to get the train.
5 Two men were cleaning the _____ off the walls in the subway.
6 The street was filthy and it was pouring with rain. It was very _____ .

4 Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?

www.hellooteacher.ir

B In a suburb

The **area** where I live is **ideal**. It's a **suburb** not far from the centre and it's quite **lively**, but there's still a feeling of **space**, and my block of flats is **surrounded by** trees. It's also a **handy** place to live because there are good **local** shops, and a bus service that gets me into the centre in 15 to 20 minutes. The only **disadvantage** is that with the **growth** in the population, it's gradually becoming more **built-up** than it used to be, which is **a shame**.

spotlight *area, region, district, part*

The word **area** can be used for part of a town, country, or the world. A **region** is part of a country or the world, e.g. *a desert* ***region***. A **district** is part of a town or country, often with special qualities, e.g. *the financial* ***district***. A **part** is often used when we are talking about a town, e.g. *a lovely* ***part*** *of the city.*

Glossary

suburb an area outside the centre of a town, where a lot of people live.
ideal perfect; the best possible.
lively full of interest, and with things to do.
space a place or area that is empty and not used.
surrounded by sth If a building is **surrounded by sth**, that thing is all around it.
handy INF located near to things you need. SYN **convenient**.
local located in the area where you live.
disadvantage a situation or thing that is not good or causes problems. SYN **drawback**. OPP **advantage**.
growth an increase in size or number.
built-up with a lot of buildings.
a shame a fact or situation that makes you feel disappointed. SYN **a pity**.

5 Same or different? Write S or D.

▶ One of the suburbs/areas outside the centre. S
1 The ideal/perfect place to live. ____
2 A mountainous area/region. ____
3 We need more growth/space. ____
4 It was a pity/shame. ____
5 A handy/lively area. ____
6 It's a commercial district/area. ____
7 It's a real disadvantage/drawback. ____
8 It's a large space/suburb. ____

6 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

▶ There used to be lots of space, but now it's a really built-up area.
1 I live in a _____ about two kilometres from the centre.
2 Unfortunately, the whole area is _____ by factories, which is a _____.
3 There are a few _____ shops just round the corner.
4 It's very _____ because it's close to my children's school and the place where I work.
5 It's a nice area with great shops; the only _____ is that the bus service is terrible.
6 We've found our _____ house: it has absolutely everything we want.

7 ABOUT YOUR AREA Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Is your area built-up, or is there a feeling of space? _____
2 What is your home surrounded by? _____
3 What local shops do you have? _____
4 Is it a handy place to live for you? _____
5 What are the disadvantages? _____

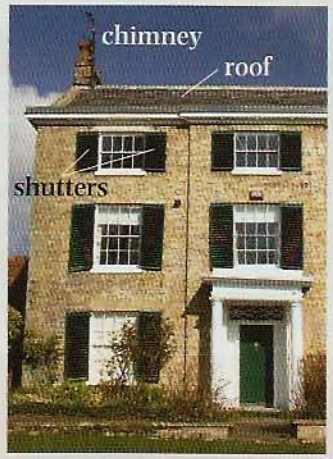
www.hellooteacher.ir

30 I can describe parts of a building

A **substantial** and **impressive semi-detached** house full of **original features**, and just a short walk from the town centre.

Inside, the **hall leads** to two **spacious** reception rooms and an **enormous** kitchen. Upstairs there are four bedrooms and two bathrooms on the first and second floors, with a narrow **staircase** to a further bedroom in the **attic**. There is also a **basement** which could be **converted** into a **separate** one-bedroom flat, and a **cellar currently** used to **store** things.

Outside, the house has pretty **shutters** either side of the front windows. There is a **lawn** at the front, and a **drive** provides plenty of parking. There is also a small **walled** garden at the back.



Glossary

substantial	large and/or strong.
impressive	(of a building) large and very good to look at.
semi-detached	joined to one other house, forming a pair of houses.
original	existing from the time when sth was first made or done.
feature	an important part of sth, and often a part that you notice.
lead	If sth **leads** to a place, you can go along it to that place.
spacious	large, and having a lot of space.
enormous	very large. SYN **huge**. OPP **tiny**.
staircase	a set of stairs.
attic	the space or room under the roof of a house.
basement	a room or part of a building that is partly or completely below ground level.
convert sth into sth	change sth from one form or use to another.
separate	not connected or together.
cellar	an underground room without windows, where things are often kept.
currently	at the moment (NOT ~~actually~~).
store sth	keep sth in a place for future use. **storage** N.
lawn	an area of grass in a park or garden.
drive	a wide path for cars that leads to the front door of a house.
walled	If a garden or other area is **walled**, it has a **wall** around it (a wall is usually made of **brick**[1] or **stone**[2]).

spotlight ***passage, corridor, hall***

A **passage** is a long, narrow way with walls on both sides that leads somewhere, e.g. *an underground* ***passage***.
A **corridor** is a passage in a large building or on a train. A **hall** is a room or small passage just inside the entrance to a house.

1 Correct the spelling mistakes.

▶ starcase staircase	3 seperate _____	6 spaceious _____
1 impresive _____	4 attick _____	7 currantly _____
2 kellar _____	5 basemant _____	8 featur _____

www.hellooteacher.ir

2 *Circle the correct word.*

► The flat is substantial/impressive, but not very attractive.
1 I'm on the ground floor and my sister lives downstairs in the cellar/basement.
2 There were no seats on the train, so I had to stand in the hall/corridor.
3 There's a very wide hall/corridor in our flat.
4 He parked his car in the attic/drive.
5 Just after the newsagent's, there's a little passage/hall that leads to the High Street.
6 We've got a small field/lawn in the garden where we sit in the summer.

3 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase that has the same *meaning.*

► There's a large living room. spacious
1 The living room is absolutely huge. _____
2 Where do you keep your garden furniture in the winter? _____
3 They've got a very small garden. _____
4 There's a very elegant set of stairs up to the first floor. _____
5 The back door goes into the garden. _____
6 We could change that room into a bathroom. _____

4 Complete the words in the text.

My brother has just bought a very ► substantial six-bedroom house. It's a 1930s semi-(1) d_____ house, and (2) c_____ it is in terrible condition, but it will be very nice when he has done some work on it. As you approach it, there's a long (3) d_____ up to the front door, with enough space for about three cars. Inside, the hall (4) l_____ to the living room, dining room, and kitchen, and from the kitchen there are stairs down to a (5) c_____ where they plan to (6) s_____ wine and other things. At the back there's a (7) h_____ garden, big enough for a football pitch, and around the garden there's a high stone (8) w_____. There are two garages, and they might (9)_____ one into a study.

5 Complete the sentences.

► At the back, there's a garden with a huge lawn .
1 One of the main _____ of the building is the beautiful windows.
2 Can you see the smoke coming out of the _____ ?
3 It's an old house and it still has the _____ windows and fireplaces.
4 There's a big cupboard in the hall which is useful for _____ .
5 I need about 100 _____ to finish the low wall at the front.
6 I'll have to go up on the _____ to repair the chimney.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

1 Have you got shutters at your windows? If so, are they on the outside or inside? _____
2 Have you got a garden with a lawn? If so, what do you use it for? _____
3 Is there an attic in your building? If so, what's in it? _____
4 Have you got a basement or cellar? If so, what are they used for? _____
5 Is there a drive outside your building? _____
6 Would you describe any rooms in your home as spacious or tiny? _____

7 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

31 I can describe objects

A What's it made of?

a **rubber tyre**

a **woollen blanket** / a blanket made of **wool**

plastic toys

a **metal ladder**

a **wax candle**

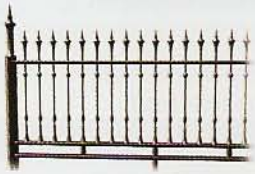
a **silver candlestick**

a **gold medal**

a **cardboard box**

a **steel pipe**

a **concrete bridge**


iron railings

a **wooden fence** / a fence made of **wood**

1 Circle the most logical word.

- ▶ a table made of wood/wool
- 1 a rubber boot/book
- 2 a concrete/cardboard wall
- 3 a rubber ladder/tyre
- 4 a wooden/woollen sweater
- 5 a wooden/silver fence
- 6 a silver/woollen medal
- 7 a wax/wooden candlestick
- 8 a plastic/concrete toy
- 9 wax/gold earrings
- 10 a plastic blanket/pipe
- 11 concrete/metal railings

spotlight **Noun + noun**

Sometimes we use a noun with another noun to say what things are made of, what they are for, etc. A **rubber tyre** is a tyre made of rubber; a **letter box** is a box for letters.

2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ A sweater is often made of wool.
- 1 Jewellery is usually made of s_____ or g_____.
- 2 Toys are usually made of w_____ or p_____.
- 3 Bathroom and kitchen pipes are usually made of p_____ or m_____.
- 4 A ladder is usually made of w_____ or m_____.
- 5 A box can be made of p_____, w_____, or c_____.
- 6 A bridge can be made of i_____, s_____, or c_____.

3 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the words?

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Shapes and lines

Shapes	Noun	Adjective	Lines	Adjective
	circle	round, circular		straight
	square	square		curved
	rectangle	rectangular		parallel
	triangle	triangular		vertical
	oval	oval		horizontal
	point	pointed		diagonal

4 Complete the words.

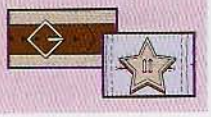
▶ strai g h t

1 poin _ _ _
2 L-sha _ _ _
3 cur _ _ _
4 rectan _ _ _
5 verti _ _ _
6 circu _ _ _
7 ro _ _ _
8 cir _ _ _
9 trian _ _ _
10 horizon _ _ _
11 squ _ _ _
12 paral _ _ _
13 diam _ _ _
14 s _ _ _ -shaped

spotlight *shape, -shaped*

You can describe the shape of things using **shape** or **-shaped**:

a card ***in the shape of*** *a heart*
a swimming pool ***in the shape of*** *a leaf*
an ***L-shaped*** *room* = a room **in the shape of** the letter L
a ***diamond-shaped*** *buckle*
a ***star-shaped*** *button*



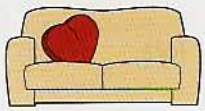
5 Complete the sentences below with words from the box.

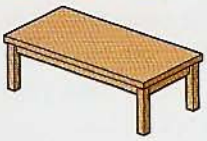
square round oval triangular curved diagonal✓ rectangular straight pointed

▶ A diagonal line connects opposite corners in a square.
1 An egg is _____.
2 A computer screen is usually _____.
3 A DVD is _____.
4 The box your CD comes in is _____.
5 A shape with three sides is _____.
6 A knife is _____ at the end.
7 A ball has a _____ surface.
8 A ruler is _____, not curved.

6 What can you see in the pictures?

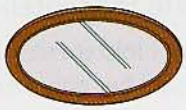
▶ a heart-shaped cushion / a cushion in the shape of a heart





1 _____

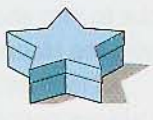
3 _____



5 _____

2 _____

4 _____



6 _____

7 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and lines in the table and cover the words. Say the words.

www.hellooteacher.ir

32 I can describe the senses

A Seeing and hearing

Example	Meaning
Look[1] carefully, and you **can see** the bridge over the river. From here it **looks**[2] very small.	**look**[1] turn your eyes to sth and pay attention to it. **see** know or notice sth using your eyes. **look**[2] seem from what you can see.
We **watched** TV for an hour.	**watch sth** look at sth for some time to see what happens.
He **appears**[1] to be very happy. A dog **appeared**[2] from behind a tree.	**appear**[1] seem. **appear**[2] If sth **appears**, you suddenly begin to see it. OPP **disappear**.
The children **stared at** the man with the long red hair.	**stare at sb/sth** look at sb/sth for a long time without moving your eyes.
Jay always **notices** what I'm wearing. He's very **observant**.	**notice sth** see sth and be aware of it. **observant** good at noticing things.
He **glanced at** me and smiled.	**glance at sb/sth** look quickly at sb/sth.
A **I can hear** something. B It **sounds like** a child crying.	**hear sth** receive sounds with your ears without trying. **sound like sth** make a noise that is like sth.
She **listens** to the radio a lot.	**listen** pay attention to sth you hear, often for a long time.
I **overheard** them in the bank.	**overhear sb** hear other people's conversation by accident.
I'm sorry, I didn't quite **catch** what you said.	**catch sth** hear or understand what sb is saying; usually used when you *don't* hear or understand sth.

spotlight ***can*** **+ sense verbs**

We don't use **see, hear, smell,** or **taste** in the continuous tenses; we often use **can** (as in the examples above).
*I **can see** two boats in this photo.* (NOT ~~*I see*~~ or ~~*I'm seeing*~~ *two boats.*)

1 Circle the correct answer.

▶ Can you hear/listen to that noise?
1 Did you notice/watch the colour of her eyes?
2 I can't see/look at anything from here.
3 Don't look/watch behind you.
4 How long did you see/watch TV for?
5 I glanced at/stared Julia.
6 I see/can see something in your eye.
7 I overheard/caught a funny story on the bus.
8 What can you listen/hear?

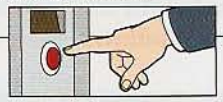
2 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

▶ When I told them, I noticed that they both looked very surprised.
1 She said her name but I'm afraid I didn't _____ what it was.
2 I _____ hear a bird singing. It _____ like a blackbird.
3 Why is that man _____ at me? Have I done something wrong?
4 I spoke to him about the exam. He doesn't _____ to be nervous.
5 Did you see Nadia last night? I thought she _____ ill.
6 I _____ at my watch and realized it was time to go.
7 Sally always notices if I change my hairstyle. She's very _____.
8 A minute ago she was here, then she _____. I don't know where she is now.

3 Test yourself. Look at the examples and cover the meanings. What do the words in bold mean?

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Smelling, tasting, and touching

Word	Example	Meaning
smell sth	I can **smell** lunch ...	notice or recognize sth using your nose.
smell like sth	... it **smells like** fish.	have a smell like the smell of sth / sth else.
stink INF	This towel **stinks**. I must wash it.	have a horrible smell.
flavour	They sell 30 **flavours** of ice cream.	the sensation of sth in your mouth (e.g. *a chocolate/strawberry **flavour***).
taste	Try this wine. It **tastes** very strange.	have a particular flavour.
salty	The soup is very **salty**.	having the taste of or containing a lot of salt.
bland	This cheese is quite **bland**.	without much flavour.
touch sth	When I **touched** the back wall . . .	put your fingers on sth.
feel **feel like sth**	... it **felt** a bit **damp** (= a little wet).	give a sensation of or like sth when touched (e.g. *it **feels** hot, it **feels like** wood*).
press sth	If you **press** that button, you get a ticket.	put your hand or finger on sth firmly. 
grab sth	He **grabbed** my mobile and ran off.	take sth with a sudden movement.
tap sb/sth	Someone **tapped** me on the arm.	touch sb/sth quickly with your hands or feet.
rub sth	I **rubbed** the book with a soft cloth to get the dirt off.	move your hand firmly backwards and forwards over the surface of sth.

4 Replace the underlined phrase with a single word that has the same meaning.

▶ Most cities <u>such as</u> London have a traffic problem. like

1 This blanket <u>has a horrible smell</u>. .....
2 My towel still feels <u>a little wet</u>. .....
3 The soup is <u>without much flavour</u>. .....
4 The film was <u>similar to</u> his others. .....
5 I <u>put my hand on</u> the radiator and it felt cold. .....
6 She <u>moved her hand firmly over</u> her leg. .....

spotlight *like*

Like can mean 'similar to' and it can mean 'such as':
*This flower smells **like** honey.* (The flower has a smell similar to that of honey.)
*Some people **like** Maggie live alone.* (Maggie is one example.)

5 Complete the sentences.

▶ You don't need salt. It's already very salty.

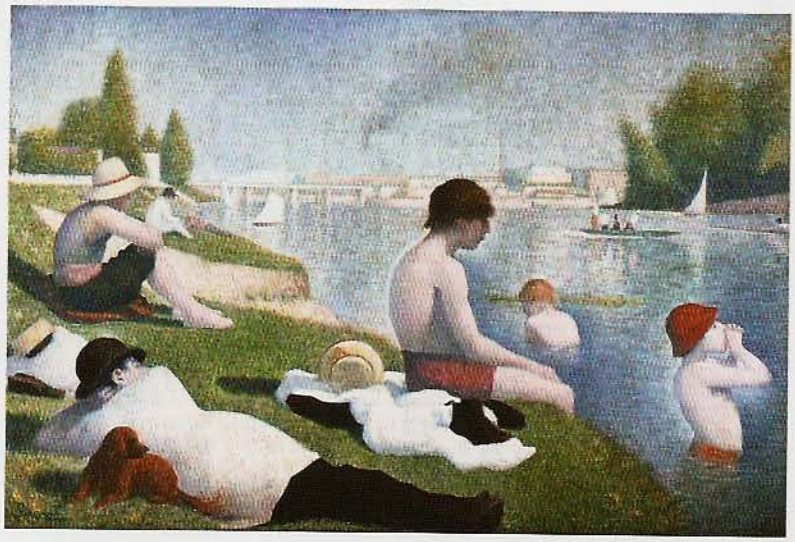
1 The persimmon is a strange fruit. It looks ..... a tomato but doesn't taste ..... one.
2 They were both ..... their feet to the music.
3 ..... the button if you want the receptionist to come.
4 Be careful – don't ..... the door. The paint is still wet.
5 He ..... me on the shoulder and asked me to move my head.
6 The policeman ..... the thief's arm and pushed him to the ground.
7 When I came downstairs, I could ..... the steak frying; it was wonderful.
8 You had ice cream, didn't you? What ..... did you have? ~ Strawberry, but it didn't ..... like strawberry.

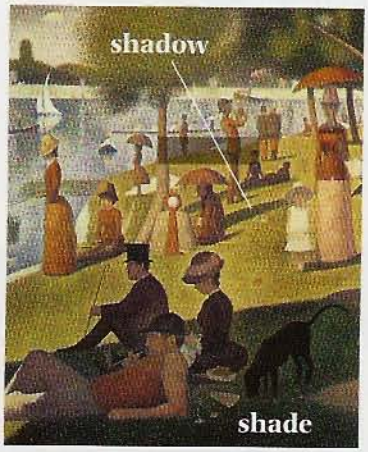
6 Test yourself. Cover the examples and meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

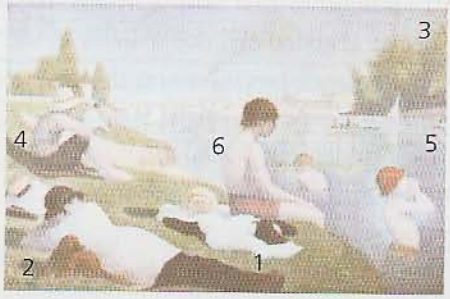
www.hellooteacher.ir

33 I can describe a painting

This **painting**, *Bathers at Asnières* by Georges Seurat, **illustrates** a typical **scene** of 19th-century **leisure** and the developing **industry** in this suburb of Paris. **In the foreground**[1] a group of workmen are relaxing by the river; **in the distance** you can **just** see the factory where they probably work. Everyone is looking out at the river and **ignoring** each other, **even** the little dog in the **bottom left-hand corner**[2]. We can **sense** the **warmth** of the summer's day in the **bright** sunlight, light colours, and **shadows**.







1 **(in) the foreground** OPP **background**
2 **(in) the bottom left-hand corner**
3 **(in) the top right-hand corner**
4 **(on) the left-hand side**
5 **(on) the right-hand side**
6 **(in) the centre/middle (of) the picture**

Glossary

illustrate sth	explain sth in a picture or diagram. **illustration** N.
scene	a view you can see in a picture or from the place where you are.
leisure	time when you do not have to work.
industry	the production of goods in factories. **industrial** ADJ.
in the distance	far away from you.
just	If you can **just** see sth, you can only see it with difficulty.
ignore sb/sth	pay no attention to sb/sth.
even	used for emphasizing sth that is surprising.
sense sth	get a feeling about sth that you can't directly see or hear.
warmth	a pleasant heat.
bright	having a lot of light. OPP **dark. brightness** N.

spotlight *painting and drawing*

Bathers at Asnières is a **painting**. Seurat was a **painter** or **artist** (**artist** is a more general word). **paint** V.

A **drawing** is a picture made with a pencil or pen, but not paint. **draw** V.

*I **paint** a lot of portraits.*
*I can't **draw** faces very well.*

www.hellooteacher.ir

1 Look at the big picture on page 90. Write your answers to the questions.

▶ Where is the man in the red swimming costume sitting? In the middle of the picture.
1 How many people are there in the foreground? _____
2 Are the boats in the foreground or the background? _____
3 Are the men sitting in the shade? _____
4 Is the dog in the bottom left-hand corner? _____
5 Can you see the dog's shadow? _____
6 Is the picture a drawing or a painting? _____
7 Where are the factories? _____
8 On which side of the picture is the boy in the river? _____
9 Are the colours dark or bright? _____
10 On which side is the man wearing the light-coloured hat? _____

2 Cover the glossary on page 90. Complete the definitions.

▶ even = used to emphasize something that is surprising
1 ignore = pay _____ attention to someone or something
2 leisure = time when you don't have to _____
3 sense = have a _____ about something that you can't see or hear
4 shade = a place which is _____ and cool because the sun doesn't shine there
5 scene = a view you can _____ in a picture or from the place where you are
6 bright = having a lot of _____

3 Put the words in order. Use contractions, e.g. it's, they're.

▶ dog / foreground / the / in / is / the The dog's in the foreground.
1 the / it / you / see / in / can / distance _____
2 bottom / the / corner / he / is / in / lying / left-hand _____
3 of / right-hand / is / on / the / it / side / the/ painting? _____
4 they / the / centre / drawing / of / are / in / sitting / the _____
5 in / left-hand / some / there / corner / are / trees / top / the _____

4 Complete the sentences with one word from each pair.

warm/warmth bright/brightness ✓ just/even illustrate/illustration
industry/industrial painter/painting shade/shadow

▶ This painter often uses dark colours, not bright ones.
1 He painted many _____ scenes of factories and factory workers.
2 The paintings _____ the friendship between the three women.
3 You can feel the _____ of the sun shining down on you.
4 You can see the _____ on the wall in the art gallery.
5 People go swimming in the river, _____ in winter when it is cold.
6 *It's so hot! Shall we go and sit in the* _____ ?

5 ABOUT YOU Think about a painting you know and like. Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 What's the name of the artist who painted it? _____
2 Do you know when it was painted? _____
3 What does the painting illustrate? _____
4 What do you like about the painting? _____
5 Do you do any painting or drawing yourself? If so, what do you do? _____

www.hellooteacher.ir

34 I can describe actions

A Using your hands

Don't **squeeze** the **tube** in the middle!

She's **tearing** the letter **up**.

He **dragged** the **cabinet** across the floor.

He **knocked** on the door.

He **scratched** the **lid** of the box.

Shake the bottle before opening it.

The thief **smashed** the window.

She **folded** the paper **in half / in two**.

She **sprayed** the **leaves** with water.

1 Can you do these things? Write Yes or No.

▶ smash a tube of toothpaste No
1 fold a sheet in half .....
2 scratch coffee .....
3 drag a suitcase along a path .....
4 spray perfume on yourself .....
5 squeeze a wet jumper to get water out .....
6 knock on water .....
7 tear up a cabinet .....
8 shake a tin of paint .....

2 Complete the sentences with verbs from the box in the correct form.

spray | knock ✓ | scratch | drag | smash | fold | tear up | shake | squeeze

▶ I was woken up by someone knocking on my window.
1 The boat was incredibly heavy so we had to ..... it down the beach to the sea.
2 I ..... all my old bank documents and threw them away.
3 He ..... his scarf and put it on the table.
4 Don't ..... that bottle of sparkling water before you open it.
5 He kicked the ball hard and unfortunately ..... the neighbour's window.
6 You'll need to ..... about six oranges to make a glass of juice.
7 My little brother took a nail and ..... the side of the car. My dad was furious.
8 She put on her make-up and ..... perfume behind her ears.

3 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the sentences?

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Making noises

Word	Example	Meaning
shout	Don't **shout!** I can hear you.	speak in a loud voice.
whisper	He **whispered** 'I love you' in her ear.	speak very quietly so that other people can't hear you.
cry	The baby next door **cried** all night.	**tears** drops of liquid that come out from your eyes when you cry.
scream	The plane dropped suddenly and we **screamed.**	cry out in a high voice because you are in pain, upset, frightened, etc.
burst into tears	He sat down and **burst into tears.**	start crying suddenly.
burst out laughing	I walked into the room and they all **burst out laughing.**	start laughing suddenly.
breathe (in/out)	**Breathe in,** count to ten, and then **breathe out.**	take air into your lungs and let it out again. **breath** N.
sigh	He sat down and **sighed:** it had been a hard decision.	let out a long deep breath that shows you are sad, bored, relieved, etc.
sneeze	I've got a terrible cold; I've been **sneezing** all day.	**sneezing**

spotlight ***loud, out loud / aloud, silent, silence***

Loud means 'making a lot of noise'. OPP **silent. silence** N.
The radio's too ***loud.*** *We worked* ***in silence.***
If you speak **out loud** (SYN **aloud**) you speak so that people can hear you.
I read the letter ***out loud / aloud*** *to my father.*

4 Complete the sentences with a suitable word or phrase.

► If you shout angrily at a child, they might cry .
1 When you have a cold, you might _____ a lot.
2 If you eat onions, your _____ might smell.
3 If something is incredibly funny, you might _____ .
4 If your nose is blocked, you have to _____ and out through your mouth.
5 If you don't want to be heard when you're speaking to someone, you should _____ .
6 If you are very relieved that something has gone well, you might _____ .
7 If you suddenly get some very sad news, you might _____ .
8 If your friend isn't looking and a car is coming, you would _____ to him.
9 If all the class wanted to hear a short story you've written, you could read it _____ .
10 The room was completely _____ ; no one said a word.
11 If you upset her, she will burst into _____ .
12 You can't speak in an exam; you must work in _____ .

5 ABOUT YOU **Write your answers, or ask another student.** When did you last . . .

1 hear someone screaming? Who was it, and why? _____
2 burst out laughing? Why? _____
3 whisper to someone? Why? _____
4 read something out loud? What was it? _____

www.hellooteacher.ir

Review: Describing things

Unit 29

1 True or false? Write T or F.

▶ You have to pay to go through a subway. F

1 The suburbs of a city are the areas where people with very little money live. ____

2 It's depressing if your home is surrounded by litter. ____

3 A multi-storey car park has only one floor. ____

4 The pavement is where people walk. ____

5 The inner city is often quite built-up. ____

6 Having local shops near your home isn't very convenient. ____

2 Complete the text.

▶ The district where I live now is very clean – not like the area I used to live in, which was (1) f____. It's also quite (2) l____ because there are several cafés and restaurants round the corner, but there isn't a supermarket nearby, which is a (3) p____. Not far away, there's plenty of open (4) s____ to go for walks, and it's also very (5) h____ because I'm close to the station, so I can get to work easily. Where I lived before, you used to see lots of (6) g____ on the subway walls, and people sitting on the pavement (7) b____ for money. But there is one (8) d____ to where I live now: my friends live in the older part of town, so I see them less often.

Unit 30

1 Write a sentence linking a word on the left with a word on the right.

windows ✓	front door
semi-detached	storage
chimney	house
cellar	garden
lawn	shutters ✓
drive	roof

▶ Windows may have shutters on the inside or outside.

Unit 31

1 Complete the phrases with words from the box.

iron	woollen	wax	rubber	wooden	gold	steel ✓	concrete	cardboard

▶ a steel pipe

1 a ____ fence

2 a ____ tyre

3 a ____ candle

4 a ____ medal

5 a ____ blanket

6 a ____ box

7 ____ railings

8 a ____ bridge

www.hellooteacher.ir

2 Answer the questions.

▶ What shape is a triangle? triangular
1 What shape is a tyre? .....
2 How many sides does a rectangle have? .....
3 When people sleep are they vertical or horizontal? .....
4 What shape has four equal sides? a .....
5 What kinds of lines always have the same distance between them? ..... lines
6 What kind of line doesn't have curves? a ..... line

Unit 32

1 Match 1–8 with a–i.

▶ pay attention to something you hear c
1 look at something or someone quickly .....
2 notice something using your nose .....
3 put your hands or fingers on something .....
4 touch something quickly with your hands or feet .....
5 have a particular flavour .....
6 look at something or someone for a long time .....
7 become impossible to see or find .....
8 hear someone's conversation by accident .....

a touch
b stare at
c listen to ✓
d tap
e overhear
f smell
g taste
h glance at
i disappear

Unit 33

1 Complete the text with the words from the box in the correct form.

distance scene painting ✓ shade artist ignore hand foreground just

The ▶ painting by a French (1) ..... illustrates a (2) ..... of peace and happiness. There is a mother playing with her small daughter in the (3) ....., and in the background an older woman is watching them. Behind her, you can (4) ..... see one side of a garden gate, and in the (5) ..... an old house, perhaps where they all live. It's obviously a warm day, but they are playing in the (6) ....., to protect the small child from the hot sun. Finally, in the bottom (7) right-..... corner of the painting, there is a man. He's (8) ..... the mother and daughter, and seems much more interested in what is happening on his right – but that is outside the picture, so we'll never know what fascinates him.

Unit 34

1 One word is wrong in each line. Cross it out and write the correct one at the end.

▶ Did you hear someone ~~stream~~? scream
1 The police had to stash the door open. .....
2 Don't bear up that paper – we can use it again. .....
3 If you sold that in two, you can put it in this envelope. .....
4 He strayed us with water. .....
5 The little girl was frying because her dog had disappeared. .....
6 He burnt into tears for no reason at all. .....
7 She signed noisily and left the room. .....
8 Don't snake that – it might explode! .....
9 I saw her bragging an enormous box along the street. .....

www.hellooteacher.ir

35 I can talk about crime

A What is crime?

Crime is activity which is **against the law**: for example, if you **steal** someone's **property**, you are **committing a crime** and **breaking the law**. Some **offences** are only **minor**, e.g. **illegal** parking; but for more **serious** and especially **violent** crimes, e.g. **killing** or **attacking** someone, a person could **go to prison** for a long time.

spotlight *crime*

The noun **crime** can be countable and uncountable.

There are many victims of violent ***crime*** (U).

It is a ***crime*** (C) *to avoid paying tax.*

Glossary

against the law	against the rules of a country. SYN **illegal**. OPP **legal**.
steal sth PT **stole** PP **stolen**	take sth belonging to sb else without permission.
property	sth that belongs to you (e.g. a computer, jewellery).
commit a crime	do sth illegal.
break the law	do sth illegal/against the law. OPP **obey the law**.
offence	an illegal activity. SYN **crime**. (The person is **an offender** / **a criminal**.)
minor	not important. OPP **serious**.
violent	using force to hurt sb physically. **violence** N.
kill sb	make sb die.
attack sb	start fighting or hurting sb.
go to prison	go to a place where criminals have to stay after committing a crime. SYN **go to jail**.

1 Circle the verbs below. Don't circle the other words.

offenceminor**kill**violentlawstealcrimeprisoncommitillegal
seriousattackcriminaloffendobey

2 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

► steal | take something belonging to someone without permission S

1 illegal | against the law ____
2 an offence | a crime ____
3 legal | illegal ____
4 kill someone | attack someone ____
5 criminal | offender ____
6 commit a crime | break the law ____
7 prison | jail ____
8 minor crime | serious crime ____

3 Complete the sentences using a word from the box. Put the verbs in the correct form.

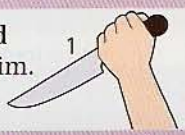
violent serious against break property steal jail minor violence go ✓ attack

► She did something terrible, and I heard that she went to prison.
1 There is a lot of ____ in the centre of town at night.
2 A group of boys ____ the man, but fortunately he wasn't badly hurt.
3 The young man ____ my bike and sold it in the market.
4 ____ was stolen from several houses in the street last night.
5 It was a very ____ crime; several people had to go to hospital.
6 He committed a ____ crime, and he'll probably go to ____ for a long time.
7 I've never ____ the law.
8 He parked in the wrong place; it was only a ____ offence, but it's still ____ the law.

4 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Types of crime

Crime	The crime of ...	Verb	Criminal
theft	... taking something which belongs to someone else without permission.	He **steals** cars and sells them.	**thief**
robbery	... stealing from a person or place, often using violence.	They were planning to **rob** the bank.	**robber**
burglary	... entering a building illegally and stealing things from it.	They **broke into** the house and stole some jewellery.	**burglar**
shoplifting	... stealing things from a shop.	She **stole** a skirt from the supermarket.	**shoplifter**
mugging	... attacking someone in a public place in order to steal from them.	He **mugged** people for their money late at night.	**mugger**
assault	... hurting someone physically.	He **assaulted/attacked** a man. He **stabbed**[1] him. 	**attacker**
murder	... killing someone **deliberately** (= you wanted or planned to do it)	He **murdered** his neighbour. Why did he **shoot**[2] him?	**murderer**

spotlight ***steal* and *rob***

You **steal** money or things, but you **rob** a person or place.

*Someone has **stolen** my bike. Thieves **stole** €2000 from the shop.*
*I was **robbed** at the football match. They **robbed** the museum last night.*

5 One word in each sentence is wrong. Cross it out.

► *Thieves, robbers, ~~murderers~~,* and *burglars* all steal property.

1 *Rob, steal, murder,* and *attacker* are all verbs.

2 *Theft, mug, robbery,* and *assault* are all crimes.

3 *Shooting, assaulting, stabbing,* and *breaking into* are all ways of attacking people physically.

4 *Mugging, assault, shoplifting,* and *murder* are all acts of violence.

5 *Mugger, shoplifter, thief,* and *burglary* are all criminals.

6 Complete the sentences.

► The thief stole $1000.

1 Two robbers _____ into the museum and _____ three paintings. A guard tried to stop them, but one robber had a knife and _____ him in the chest.

2 The driver killed a man, but it wasn't murder, because he didn't do it _____.

3 Someone _____ me on the way home last night. He had a gun and said he would _____ me if I didn't give him money and my mobile phone. It was horrible.

4 He will be in prison for the rest of his life for _____ his wife. He bought a gun and _____ her while she was asleep.

5 A _____ broke into our house and took our jewellery and cameras.

6 The three men _____ that bank because it was in a very quiet area.

7 Test yourself. Look at the crimes, and cover the other three columns. Can you remember the meanings and the verbs?

www.hellooteacher.ir

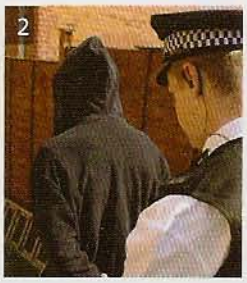
36 I can **describe the justice system** Do unit 35 first

A A police investigation

A crime is **reported** to the police, usually by the **victim**.

The police **investigate** it. The victim and **witnesses** tell the police what they know.

The police **may** take **fingerprints**[1], or take photos where the crime **took place**.



If possible, they **catch** the **suspect** and **arrest**[2] him.

If there is enough **evidence**, they will **charge** the suspect and he will **go to court**[3].

Glossary

report sth	give information that sth has happened.
victim	a person who has been robbed, injured, etc.
investigate sth	try to find out about sth.
witness	a person who sees sth happen (e.g. a crime or an accident).
may	we use **may** to say that sth is possible. SYN **might**.
take place	happen.
catch sb PT **caught** PP **caught**	find and hold sb.
suspect	a person who the police think has committed a crime.
evidence	facts, signs, or objects that make you believe sth is true.
charge sb	(of the police) say officially that they believe sb has done sth illegal.

1 Circle the correct word.

When a robbery has ▶ taken place/reported, someone will (1) investigate/report it to the police. (2) Victims/Suspects and witnesses will tell the police what they saw. After that, the police will begin to (3) investigate/charge the crime. They may take photos and take (4) fingerprints/suspects where the robbery (5) took place/caught. They (6) will/may catch the (7) suspect/victim; if they do, they will (8) report/arrest him. If they have enough (9) evidence/victims, they will (10) catch/charge the suspect, and he will have to go to (11) court/the police station .

2 Answer the questions. One question has more than one answer.

▶ Who has to find the evidence? The police
1 Who takes fingerprints? .....
2 Who is charged? .....
3 Who investigates the crime? .....
4 Who is hurt by the crime? .....
5 Who is caught? .....
6 Who usually reports the crime? .....
7 Who is arrested? .....
8 Who sees the crime take place? .....

3 Test yourself. Cover the words in the glossary and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?

www.hellooteacher.ir

B In court

In Britain, serious crimes such as robbery and murder are **tried** by a **judge**[1] and **jury**[2]. At the **trial**, **the prosecution** aims to **prove** that **the accused**[3] (or **defendant**) has committed the crime; **the defence** aims to prove he is **innocent**. At the end, the jury decides whether the defendant is **guilty** or not guilty. If he is guilty, he is **sentenced** by the judge. He may **get a fine** or a **prison sentence**.

Glossary

try sb	ask questions and listen to evidence in court to decide if sb has done sth illegal.
trial	an examination of evidence in court to decide if sb has done sth illegal.
the prosecution	the lawyers who try to prove that the accused person has committed a crime. **prosecute sb** v.
prove sth	give evidence to show that sth is true. **proof** N.
the defence	the lawyers who try to prove that the accused person has not commited the crime. **defend sb** v.
innocent	If you are **innocent**, you have done nothing wrong. OPP **guilty**.
sentence sb	tell sb who is guilty what they will have to do, e.g. go to prison. **sentence** N.
fine	a sum of money you have to pay if you break a law. **fine sb** v.

4 True or false? Write T or F.

▶ In serious crimes, the judge decides whether the accused is guilty or not. F

1 The prosecution defends the accused. ____

2 The defendant is sentenced by the judge. ____

3 If the jury decides the defendant is innocent, he may go to prison. ____

4 With serious crimes, the jury decides what the sentence will be. ____

5 The defence aims to prove that the accused did not commit the crime. ____

6 If the accused is guilty, he may get a fine. ____

7 The judge has to prove whether the defendant is guilty or not. ____

8 Trials take place in a court. ____

5 Complete the sentences using the words on the right in the correct form.

▶	He may get a prison sentence .	SENTENCE
1	The accused is ____ by the judge and jury.	TRY
2	The defence must ____ that the accused is innocent.	PROOF
3	The ____ has to show that the accused committed the crime.	PROSECUTE
4	If the ____ is guilty, he may go to prison.	DEFEND
5	The guilty person is ____ by the judge.	SENTENCE
6	A ____ takes place in court.	TRY
7	A person who is guilty may be ____ a sum of money.	FINE

6 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Can you remember the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

37 I can discuss health issues

A Diseases common among younger people

Nowadays fewer children **suffer from infectious diseases**, but the number of children around the world with **asthma** has **increased**. Doctors believe that the **breathing** difficulties of asthma sufferers are often caused by **allergies** to smoke, food, or pollution. There has also been a **dramatic** increase in **obesity** in young people in the last 20 years. Amongst other things, it can **lead to heart attacks**, **diabetes**, and **depression**.

Glossary

suffer from sth have the experience of sth bad.

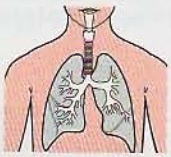
infectious An **infectious** disease passes easily from person to person. **infection** N.

disease an illness (e.g. skin disease, kidney disease).

asthma a medical condition which makes it difficult to breathe.

increase get larger in number or amount. **increase** N. OPP **decrease** V, N.

breathe (in/out) take air into your **lungs** (*see picture*) and let it out again.



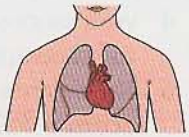
allergy a medical condition that makes you ill when you touch, eat, or breathe sth that doesn't normally make other people ill. **allergic** ADJ.

dramatic sudden and surprising.

obesity the state of being so fat that you are unhealthy. **obese** ADJ.

lead to sth cause or have sth as a result, often sth bad.

heart attack When sb has a **heart attack**, their **heart** (*see picture*) suddenly stops working normally.



diabetes a disease in which your body can't control the level of sugar in the blood. **diabetic** ADJ.

depression a feeling of being very unhappy (this can also be an illness). **depressed** ADJ.

1 Write the related adjective.

- ▶ infection infectious
- 1 allergy _____
- 2 obesity _____
- 3 depression _____
- 4 diabetes _____

2 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ Breathing problems can be caused by asthma/depression.
- 1 Diabetes/Asthma is related to sugar in the blood.
- 2 She has a food allergy/asthma.
- 3 Diseases/Asthma can be infectious.
- 4 Instances of asthma have increased/decreased.
- 5 The increase is dramatic/infectious.
- 6 He had a heart/lung attack.

3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ If you have breathing difficulties, you may be suffering from asthma.
- 1 I can eat most things, but I'm _____ to seafood. It makes me really ill.
- 2 So many children eat junk food; we have a big problem with _____ in our country.
- 3 My uncle had a heart _____ last year, but he's fine now.
- 4 He lost his job and became very _____, but he's happier now.
- 5 More people _____ from asthma than in the past.
- 6 He's _____, so he has to test his blood sugar levels regularly.
- 7 When you _____ in, your _____ fill with air.
- 8 Obesity can _____ to a number of serious _____.
- 9 Fortunately there has been a small _____ in numbers of children suffering from infectious diseases.

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Diseases common among older people

Word	Example	Meaning
disabled **disability** N	*My sister is **disabled**; she can't walk.*	*not able to use a part of your body properly.*
blind **go** or **be blind** SYN **lose your sight**	My uncle is **going blind.**	not able to see.
deaf **go** or **be deaf**	*I'm a bit **deaf**, so please speak up.*	*not able to hear.*
(have a) stroke	She **had a stroke**, but she's able to walk again now.	a sudden illness which affects the **brain** (*see picture*) and can stop you walking, talking, etc.
heart disease	*He suffers from **heart disease**.*	*a serious long-term condition causing problems for your heart.*
cancer e.g. skin cancer	He got lung **cancer** from smoking.	a very serious illness in which tumours often grow in the body.
arthritis **arthritic** ADJ	I can't walk very far because of my **arthritis.**	a disease which causes pain when you bend your arms, fingers, etc.
memory loss	She suffers from **memory loss**; *she forgets things easily.*	a condition in which you lose your ability to *remember things.*

4 Complete the words.

▶ l u n g c a n c e r
1 m _ _ m _ r _ l _ s s
2 a r _ _ r _ t i c
3 b r _ _ n
4 b l _ _ _ _
5 s t r _ _ e
6 h _ _ r t d _ s _ _ s e
7 d _ s _ b _ l _ t y

spotlight ***go* + adjective**

Go + adjective means 'become', e.g. **go blind**, **go deaf**. You can also use it to describe a change of colour:
*His hair **went white.***
*She stopped breathing and her face **went blue.***

5 True or false? Write T or F.

▶ If someone has heart disease, the problems started some time ago. T
1 Arthritis means your fingers, feet, etc. may be painful. _____
2 If you are going deaf, you can't see very well. _____
3 If you lose your sight completely, you go blind. _____
4 People with cancer often have a tumour in their body. _____
5 Heart disease is the same as a heart attack. _____
6 If you suffer from memory loss, you can remember things. _____
7 A stroke attacks the lungs. _____
8 Being deaf and blind are disabilities. _____

6 Complete the text.

Elderly people usually become more ▶ disabled as time goes by. My grandmother, for example, suffers from (1) a_____, and she can't walk very easily. Last year she started to go a bit (2) d_____, but fortunately she hasn't lost her (3) s_____, so she can still enjoy the TV. Sadly, she suffers from (4) m_____ loss, but that's very common with people of her age. No one in our family has suffered from either (5) c_____ or (6) h_____ disease, however.

7 Test yourself. Cover the words and examples, and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?

www.hellooteacher.ir

38 I can talk about politics

A The British political system

In the United Kingdom (the UK), **elections** are **held** about every five years. The UK is divided into 646 political areas, called **constituencies**, and in each constituency people **vote for** one person **representing** the **political party** they want to see **in power**. The **politician** with the most votes becomes the **Member of Parliament** (known as an **MP**) for that area. Parliament, therefore, **consists of** 646 MPs, and the party with the **majority** of MPs forms the **government**. The leader of that party also becomes **prime minister**.

Glossary

election the time when people choose individuals to speak for them and act for them. **elect** v.
hold sth organize an event such as an election.
constituency one of the areas into which the country is divided for voting in political elections.
vote for sb/sth choose sb/sth in an election. **vote** N.
represent sb/sth act officially for people or an organization.
political party a group of people with the same ideas who want to win an election (e.g. the Labour Party, the Conservative Party).
in power in political control of the country.
politician a person with a job in politics.
parliament the group of people elected to make the laws in a country.
consist of sth be formed or made up of sth.
majority the largest number or part of sth. OPP **minority**.
government the group of people in control of a country. **govern** v.
prime minister (or **PM**) the leader of the government in some countries.

1 True or false in Britain? Write T or F.

▶ The British parliament consists of 646 elected representatives. T
1 Elections must be held every four years. ____
2 People can only vote for one person in this election. ____
3 Two or three people may be elected in each constituency. ____
4 If you are a Member of Parliament, you are in the government. ____
5 The leader of the largest political party in parliament becomes prime minister. ____
6 The party with the minority of elected MPs forms the government. ____

2 Complete the sentences.

▶ PM is an abbreviation of prime minister.
1 How often do you hold ____ for parliament?
2 Parliament ____ of people from a number of different political ____.
3 In the UK, the Conservative Party was in ____ from 1979 to 1997.
4 Who did you ____ for in the last election?
5 Politicians ____ the people who elect them.
6 She had over 50 per cent of the votes, so a ____ of the people voted for her.

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 How often does your country usually hold elections? ____
2 Which political party is in power at the moment? ____
3 How long have they been in power? ____
4 What is the title of the leader of the party? ____
5 How many people are in parliament? ____

www.hellooteacher.ir

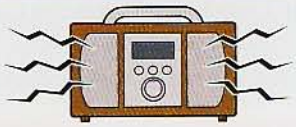
B Political objectives

The government has **announced** that its first **priority** will be education, and today the prime minister will **focus** on the **need for** more young people to go to university.

A new transport **policy** will be announced today, which aims to **persuade** motorists to leave their cars at home.

The government will **face** strong **opposition** to their new **immigration** policy.

An Olympic athlete has been chosen to **launch** the government's new fitness **campaign**.



spotlight *oppose, opposition*

To **oppose sth** means to disagree with something and try to change it. **opposition** N. The main political party in parliament, but not forming the government, is called **the Opposition** (used with a singular or plural verb).

Glossary

objective	a thing you are trying to do. SYNS **aim, goal.**
announce sth	say sth officially and in public. **announcement** N.
priority	a thing that is important or that you must do before anything else.
focus on sth	give all your attention to sth. **focus** N.
need for sth	a situation in which you must have or do sth.
policy	a plan to do sth, agreed by a government, company, etc.
persuade sb (to do sth)	give reasons to make sb agree (to do sth).
face sth	have to deal with a difficult situation.
immigration	the process of coming to live in a country that is not your own (the people are called **immigrants**).
launch sth	start sth new, especially a campaign or product.
campaign	(often used in politics or business) a plan to do a number of things with a specific aim.

4 Circle the correct answer.

▶ If you persuade somebody to do something, they (do)/don't do it.
1 If you announce something, you say it in public/private.
2 A priority is important/not important.
3 If you face a problem, you avoid it/deal with it.
4 If you launch something, you start it/finish it.
5 Immigration is the process of coming/going to live in a foreign country.
6 If you oppose something, you agree/disagree with it.

5 Complete the sentences.

▶ Helping poor people is a major priority for the government.
1 Do you agree with the government's economic _____ ?
2 They've launched a _____ to educate people about the tax system.
3 Some MPs already agree with the prime minister, but he still has to _____ others.
4 The USA received a lot of European _____ in the early twentieth century.
5 The main _____ of the education policy is to give parents more choice.
6 It's clear that the _____ disagree strongly with the government's policy.
7 In his speech, the prime minister will _____ on health issues.
8 The government has expressed the _____ for change in their education policy.

6 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

39 I can talk about war and peace

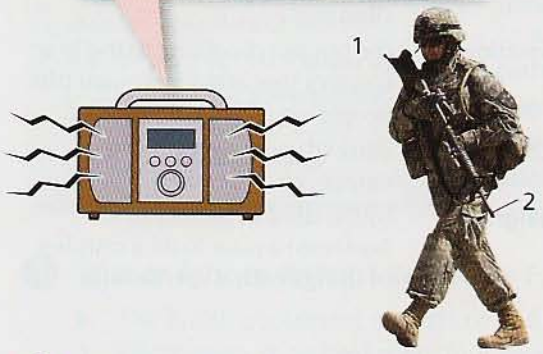
A Conflict

…The **bomb exploded** in the city centre killing at least a **dozen** people …

… **Soldiers**[1] **fought** a two-hour **gun**[2] **battle** and **captured** a number of **enemy** fighters …

…The **army** have captured the airport and **are** now **in control of** the situation. Most enemy soldiers have now **surrendered**.

…If the current **crisis** gets worse, **civil war** could **break out** at any time …



Glossary

conflict an angry argument or state of fighting between people or countries. (**War** is fighting between countries or groups using guns, etc.)

bomb a container packed with materials that can burst out with force.

explode burst with force and a loud noise. SYN **go off**. **explosion** N.

dozen twelve or a group of twelve (**half a dozen** = 6).

soldier (*see picture*) a person who is a member of an **army**.

fight PT **fought** When people **fight**, they try to hurt or kill each other (sb who fights is a **fighter**). **fight** N.

battle a fight between armies in a war.

capture sb/sth 1 catch and keep sb so they can't leave. 2 take control of sth.

enemy the people your army or country is fighting against.

be in control of sth have the power or ability to deal with sth.

surrender stop fighting and admit you have lost. SYN **give up**.

crisis a time of great danger or difficulty. **critical** ADJ.

civil war a war between groups of people who live in the same country.

break out (used about fighting, wars, fires, etc.) start suddenly.

1 Match 1–6 with a–g.

▶	They're in control	d	
1	The conflict		a surrendered.
2	Soldiers fought		b the main port.
3	Two bombs		c guns were found.
4	Soldiers captured		d of the city. ✓
5	The soldiers		e a long battle.
6	A dozen		f exploded.
			g lasted many years.

2 Replace the underlined phrases with a single word that has the same meaning.

▶ They were physically trying to hurt each other. fighting

1 They were the men we fought against. _____

2 It's a dangerous and difficult period. _____

3 Many fighters have given up. _____

4 They took control of the city. _____

5 There were a dozen soldiers. _____

6 When did the bomb go off? _____

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ It has become a serious crisis and could end in war.

1 Why did war break _____?

2 The _____ exploded at 10.15.

3 Fifty people died in the first _____ of the war.

4 There are 50,000 _____ in the army.

5 Are they in _____ of the situation?

6 The conflict could result in civil _____.

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Compromise

Example	Word and meaning
The US and its European **allies** are both **determined** to find a solution.	**ally** a country that agrees to support another country. **determined** having a strong desire to do sth and be successful.
The two countries **involved** are hoping they can **reach an agreement.**	**involved** taking part in sth or connected to sth. **reach an agreement** arrive at a decision that both sides agree on.
Leaders from the two main parties are now **negotiating**, and there is some hope of a **peace settlement.**	**leader** a person who is in charge or control of sth. **negotiate** talk to sb in order to decide or agree on sth. **peace settlement** an official agreement that ends a war (**peace** is a time when there is no war).
The two **sides** have finally agreed a **ceasefire.**	**side** either of two or more groups who are arguing or fighting with each other. **ceasefire** an agreement between two sides to stop fighting.
If both sides are **willing** to **compromise**, there could be a settlement fairly soon.	**willing to do sth** happy and prepared to do sth. OPP **unwilling.** **compromise** accept less than you want in order to reach an agreement. **compromise** N.

4 Cover the table above. Match 1–7 with a–h.

▶	settlement ___c___	a	taking part in something
1	ceasefire ___	b	having a strong desire to do something
2	ally ___	c	an agreement to end a war or argument ✓
3	determined ___	d	happy and prepared to do something
4	willing ___	e	accept less than you want
5	negotiate ___	f	an agreement to stop fighting
6	compromise ___	g	talk to somebody in order to agree something
7	involved ___	h	a country that has agreed to support you

5 Complete the texts.

The civil war has now lasted almost ten years. ▶ Allies of the two (1) ___ in the conflict have managed to get them to agree to a temporary (2) ___ on several occasions, but they have never been able to get the two (3) ___ of the sides to negotiate a peace (4) ___ . It seems they are both (5) ___ to carry on fighting to the bitter end and are completely (6) ___ to compromise.

The two countries (7) ___ in the conflict have finally agreed to come to the negotiating table. Neither will be willing to (8) ___ very much, but there is now at least the possibility that the two leaders could (9) ___ an agreement that will lead to a more lasting (10) ___ settlement.

6 Test yourself. Look at the examples in the table and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

40 I can talk about events in history

Date	Event	Meaning
1066	William of Normandy **invaded** England and then **defeated** King Harold in a battle.	**invade** enter a country with an army to attack and take control of it. **invasion** N. **defeat sb** win a battle, vote, game, etc. against sb.
1781	William Herschel **discovered** the planet Uranus.	**discover sth** find sth that nobody has found before. **discovery** N.
1917	The Russian **Revolution**	**revolution** action taken by a large group of people to change the government, often using violence.
1923	Turkey became a **republic**.	**republic** a country with no king or queen.
1947	India **gained independence** / became **independent**.	**gain independence** become free from control by another country. **independent** ADJ.
1957	The European Common Market was **established**.	**establish sth** start or create an organization or system. **establishment** N.
1975	**Prince** Juan Carlos became king of Spain.	**prince** the son or grandson of a king or queen (a daughter is a **princess**).
1981	**President** Sadat of Egypt was **assassinated**.	**president** the leader of a country with no king or queen. **assassinate sb** kill a famous person, often for political reasons. **assassination** N.
1981	**Attempt** to assassinate President Ronald Reagan.	**attempt** the act of trying to do sth difficult (often without success). **attempt to do sth** V.
1990	Nelson Mandela was **released** from prison.	**release sb** allow sb to be free. **release** N.

1 Cover the table above. Match 1–5 with a–f. Then write the nouns formed from each verb in the third column.

Verb	Meaning	Noun
▶ discover c	a kill a famous person	▶ discovery
1 release ____	b enter another country with an army and attack it	____
2 assassinate ____	c find something that nobody has found before ✓	____
3 establish ____	d try to do something, often without success	____
4 invade ____	e start or create an organization	____
5 attempt ____	f allow somebody to be free	____

2 Can you complete these sentences about other events in world history?

1 President Kennedy was _____ in 1963.
2 Bill Gates and Paul Allen _____ the Microsoft Corporation in 1975.
3 The 'Velvet _____' took place in Czechoslovakia in 1989.
4 American forces _____ the British at the Battle of New Orleans in 1815.
5 In 1981 there was an _____ to assassinate Pope John Paul II.
6 Argentina gained _____ in 1816 and Brazil became _____ in 1822.

www.hellooteacher.ir

Review: Social and political issues

Unit 35

1 **Complete the sentences.** Someone who …

▶ attacks someone physically is an attacker .
1 commits a crime is a _____ .
2 kills someone deliberately is a _____ .
3 attacks someone in the street for money is a _____ .
4 breaks into a house and steals things from it is a _____ .
5 steals your car is a _____ .
6 steals things from shops is a _____ .
7 steals from a bank is a bank _____ .

2 **Circle the correct word.**

▶ The man robbed/mugged the post office.
1 She shot/stabbed him with a kitchen knife.
2 You don't go to prison if you obey/break the law.
3 People who commit/break an offence may end up in prison.
4 The two men broke into jail/the museum and stole/robbed some paintings.
5 It was a terrible accident. Don crashed into another car and murdered/killed the driver.
6 You don't see much violence/violent on the streets.
7 Murder is a very serious/minor crime.
8 They attacked/killed the guard, and he's still in hospital.

Unit 36

1 **Put the sequence in the correct order.**

a The jury decided that the defendant was guilty. _____
b The police charged the suspect. _____
c A crime was committed. 1
d The suspect went to court. _____
e The police caught the suspect. _____
f The jury listened to the evidence. _____
g The police investigated the crime. _____
h The victim reported the crime. _____
i The judge sentenced the defendant to two years in prison. _____

2 **Complete the sentences.**

▶ The suspect may be guilty or innocent .
1 The trial takes _____ in a court.
2 The prosecution try to _____ that the defendant committed the crime.
3 The defendant is also called the _____ .
4 Often a _____ has to tell the court what they saw or know about the crime.
5 If he is guilty, the defendant may get a _____ or a prison _____ .
6 The defendant might be guilty, or he _____ be innocent.
7 When the police investigate a crime, they are looking for _____ , for example, fingerprints.
8 If the police find a suspect, they will _____ them and question them at the police station.

www.hellooteacher.ir

Unit 37

1 What medical problem is being defined?

▶ A feeling of being very unhappy. depression

1 The condition of being too fat. _____

2 A condition that makes you ill when you touch, breathe, or eat something that doesn't affect other people. _____

3 A sudden illness affecting the brain; you may not be able to talk afterwards. _____

4 A medical condition which makes breathing difficult. _____

5 A condition in which the heart stops working suddenly. _____

6 A serious illness in which tumours often grow in the body. _____

7 A disease which causes pain when you bend your arms, fingers, etc. _____

8 A disease in which the body can't control the level of sugar in the blood. _____

2 One word is missing in each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end.

▶ He is ∧ and has been in a wheelchair for years. disabled

1 She has suffered asthma for years. _____

2 He had a heart and died last week. _____

3 My grandfather is going so I have to shout to him. _____

4 It's an infectious so he can't mix with other people. _____

5 The doctor told me to in deeply through my nose. _____

6 She is allergic some medicines. _____

7 Obesity can lead heart disease. _____

8 He suffers from loss and can't remember where he puts things. _____

Unit 38

1 Match 1–10 with a–k.

▶ I don't belong to any political ___j___

1 The announcement was made by _____

2 They hold _____

3 The government will face _____

4 We need to launch _____

5 They want to persuade _____

6 I don't know which party _____

7 I wouldn't vote _____

8 She's the Member _____

9 I don't agree with their immigration _____

10 The government needs to focus _____

a Ben Jones represents.

b a campaign.

c for that party.

d on better health care.

e elections every four years.

f policy.

g the prime minister.

h of Parliament for Hampstead.

i strong opposition to their plan.

j party. ✓

k people to accept the scheme.

2 Which words are being defined?

▶ the time when people choose politicians to speak and act for them elections

1 something that you are trying to achieve o_____

2 disagree strongly with something o_____ something

3 something that is very important or that you must do before anything else p_____

4 the group of people elected to make and change laws in a country p_____

5 a person whose job is in politics p_____

6 in political control of a country in p_____

7 be formed or made up of something c_____ of something

www.hellooteacher.ir

Unit 39

1 Answer the questions. Tick (✓) Yes or No.

	Yes	No
▶ Is a dozen less than ten?		✓
1 Is a soldier a member of the army?		
2 Is a ceasefire at the beginning of a conflict?		
3 When a bomb goes off, is there an explosion?		
4 When two sides reach an agreement, do they usually compromise?		
5 If an army surrenders, does it stop fighting?		
6 Are your enemies on the same side as you?		
7 Are your allies on the same side as you?		
8 Is a civil war between people from different countries?		

2 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

▶ He's one of our allies. | He's one of our enemies. D

1 The two leaders are negotiating. | The two leaders are fighting. .....

2 They arrived at a settlement. | They reached a settlement. .....

3 There are two sides. | There are two leaders. .....

4 There's a crisis in the country. | The situation is critical in the country. .....

5 He wanted to do it. | He was unwilling to do it. .....

6 They captured the enemy leader. | They fought the enemy leader. .....

7 It was a long battle. | It was a long war. .....

8 The war broke out in 1993. | The war started in 1993. .....

Unit 40

1 Complete the sentences.

▶ Napoleon Bonaparte was defeated at the Battle of Waterloo in 1815.

1 In 1969, Sirhan Bishara Sirhan was sent to prison for the ..... of Robert Kennedy in June 1968. He is still there and will never be ..... .

2 Seventy days after Ronald Reagan became ..... of the United States in 1981, John Hinckley ..... to ..... him. Reagan survived the attack and lived for another 23 years.

3 The French ..... started in 1789 and lasted for ten years.

4 Fidel Castro ..... a new Communist government in Cuba in 1959.

5 Marie Curie, a Polish–French scientist, ... radium in the early part of the twentieth century. She died from exposure to radiation in 1934.

6 Diana, ... of Wales, the first wife of Prince Charles, was killed in a car crash in Paris in 1997.

7 China became a ..... in 1912 after two thousand years of imperial rule.

8 Zimbabwe ..... independence in 1980.

www.hellooteacher.ir

41 I can understand newspapers

A Newspaper publishing

LIFE AS AN EDITOR

Meet Cyrus Davis, who has spent his **whole** working life in **journalism**. He's now the **editor** of *The Evening Star*, a local **daily** paper **published** in Birmingham. He's been a news reporter on **several national** papers, a sports editor, and a **headline** writer. 'The *Star* covers **current affairs**, sports, crime, and so on, but one **section** of our paper is about **culture**. It's a good paper, but newspaper sales generally are **declining** because of TV and the internet. It's a bad time for **the press**.'

Glossary

whole	complete; with no parts missing. SYN **entire**.
journalism	the profession of collecting and writing about news in newspapers, on TV, etc. (a person who does this is a **journalist**).
editor	the person in charge of a newspaper, magazine, etc. **edit** V.
daily	You can get a **daily** (newspaper) every day, except Sunday.
publish sth	prepare and print a book, newspaper, etc. **publishing** N.
several	more than two, but not many.
national	connected with all of a country (**international** = involving two or more countries).
headline	the title of a newspaper article (*see next page*).
current affairs	important political or social events happening now.
section	one of the parts into which sth is divided.
culture	activities involving art, literature, music, etc. **cultural** ADJ.
decline	become weaker or smaller. **decline** N.
the press	newspapers and the journalists who work for them.

1 Circle the adjectives. Don't circle the verbs and nouns.

▶ (international)wholeeditpressdeclinedailyjournalismentireculturesectionnationalcultural

2 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

▶ She edits the newspaper. | She's the editor. S

1 I didn't understand the article. | I didn't understand the headline. ____

2 Which section do you read first? | Which part of the paper do you read first? ____

3 I'm interested in current affairs. | I'm interested in cultural events. ____

4 The number of journalists has declined. | The number of journalists has gone up. ____

5 She read the entire paper. | She read the whole paper. ____

6 She's worked there for several years. | She's worked there for many years. ____

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ The article is in the sports section on page 34.

1 I always turn to the section on c____ first to read about the latest films and books.

2 My son reads all the papers and is fascinated by the p____. He wants to be a j____.

3 *The paper is p____ in Denton and sold everywhere in the region.*

4 I spent the w____ morning reading the news about the i____ situation.

5 Newspaper sales are going up in China, but they're d____ in Europe.

6 Do you buy a d____ newspaper?

4 *Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?*

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Headlines

FOOTBALL FANS **CLASH** WITH POLICE

clash with sb fight or disagree seriously with sb about sth. **clash** N.

200 **AXED** CAR WORKERS **PROTEST** IN CITY CENTRE

axe sb/sth cut numbers of people, jobs, etc. by a large amount (an **axe** is a large tool used for cutting wood).
protest say or show that you don't agree with sth, especially in public. **protest** N.

Bomb **scare** in city centre

scare a situation in which many people are afraid or worried (e.g. **bomb scare**, **health scare**, **food scare**).

NURSES **DEMONSTRATE** OVER TAX CHANGES

demonstrate take part in a public protest for or against sth. SYN **protest**. **demonstration/protest** N.

THREAT to Hollywood Star

threat a statement that sb may kill, hurt, or punish you if you don't do what they want. **threaten** V.

MAN **CLAIMS** DOG CAN TALK

claim sth OR **claim that** say that sth is true without having proof. **claim** N.

GOVERNMENT **PROMISES** HIGHER **PENSIONS**

promise (to do) sth say definitely that you will do sth, or that sth will happen. SYN **make a promise**. **promise** N.
pension money paid regularly by the government or a company to sb who has stopped working because of old age (sb who receives a pension is a **pensioner**).

GOVERNMENT **PLEDGES AID** FOR ETHIOPIA

pledge sth make a formal promise to do or give sth. **pledge** N.
aid money, food, etc. that is sent to a country or to people to help them (**aid** V FML means 'give help').

5 Circle the correct word.

▶ She claimed/promised to work hard.
1 There was a health scare/aid last week.
2 Twenty workers were protested/axed.
3 Police clashed/aided with protesters.
4 They took part in a demonstration/pledge.
5 She claimed/promised she was French.
6 I receive a company pension/pensioner.
7 There was a threat/clash to kill him.

spotlight **Verbs and nouns with the same form**

There are many words in English in which the base form of the verb and the noun are the same, e.g. *clash*, *protest*, *claim*, *promise*, *pledge*, and *aid*.
There was a ***clash*** *between the protesters and the police.*
The police and the protesters ***clashed****.*
(See the Vocabulary Building tables on page 202.)

6 Replace the underlined phrase with a single word with the same meaning.

▶ She went to the public protest. demonstration
1 The company made a formal promise to improve services. _____
2 He says that he is the tallest man in the country. _____
3 We're sending money and food to the earthquake zone. _____
4 I had a frightening situation last night – I saw a snake in the garden. _____
5 You should act with others to say that you disagree about price rises. _____
6 My brothers disagreed seriously with the organizers over the arrangements. _____
7 The man said he would hurt me. _____
8 I made a spoken agreement and I won't break it. _____

7 Test yourself. Look at the headlines and cover the meanings. Can you explain the headlines?

www.hellooteacher.ir

42 I can talk about films

A Film awards

The BAFTAs are the British **equivalent** of the Oscars. The highest **award**, the Academy Fellowship, is a **prize** given for an **individual**'s work and **achievements** during their career; previous **winners** include Hitchcock and Fellini. There are awards for the **outstanding** film of the year, and for special achievement by a British **director**, writer, or **producer** in their first film. There are also awards for best actor and actress in a **leading role** and in a **supporting** role. Achievements are also recognized in **editing**, lighting, and so on.

Glossary

the equivalent of sth	sth that has the same value, amount, meaning, or importance as sth else. **equivalent** ADJ.
award	You **get** or **win** an **award** when you do very well in a competition.
prize	sth of value that you get when you are successful in a competition, race, etc.
individual	one person who is seen separately from others or a group.
achievement	sth you have done successfully that was difficult. **achieve** v.
winner	a person who wins a competition, game, etc.
outstanding	extremely good; excellent.
director	the person who tells actors what to do in a film, play, etc. **direct** v.
producer	the person who is responsible for the business side of a film, play, etc. **produce** v.
leading role	the most important role (or part) in a film or play (a **supporting role** is the next most important role).
role	the part an actor plays (e.g. the **role** of Julius Caesar).
editing	the process of deciding which parts of a film to show and in which order. **edit** v.

1 Complete the words.

▶ o u t s t a n d i n g
1 e _ _ _ _ v a l e n t
2 _ _ _ d u c e
3 _ _ _ p o r t i n g r o _ _
4 _ _ _ i v i d u a l
5 a _ _ r d
6 a c _ _ _ e v e
7 w _ _ n _ r
8 p _ _ z e

2 True or false? Write T or F.

▶ A producer plays the leading role in the film. F
1 An actor directs the film. _____
2 An outstanding film is very bad. _____
3 A BAFTA winner gets an award. _____
4 A leading role is always a man's role. _____
5 An individual is one person. _____
6 A producer edits films. _____
7 It's an achievement to win an award. _____
8 A role is what an actor wears. _____
9 A producer organizes the film's finances. _____
10 A director tells actors how to act. _____

3 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a single word with the same meaning.

▶ Who was the business manager of the film? producer
1 Was she the person who won? _____
2 Did they get the success they wanted? _____
3 Who played the most important role? _____
4 Who organized the business side of the film? _____
5 Which part did Leonardo di Caprio play? _____
6 Who won the prize for supporting actress? _____
7 Is an Oscar equal in importance to a BAFTA award? _____
8 Was he the first single person to win three awards? _____

4 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Opinions

Love it or hate it?

An **extraordinary** and **moving performance** by a great leading actor.

A **gripping** and **entertaining** thriller, and full of **drama** – I loved it.

I'm usually a **fan** of Jan Loos, but this **movie** had such a weak **plot**. Very **disappointing indeed**.

Very violent and too much **swearing** – totally **unsuitable** for children. **Disgusting**!

spotlight ***indeed***

*Use **indeed** after very and an adjective or adverb to emphasize a statement.*
*The film was very boring **indeed**.*
*I liked it very much **indeed**.*

Glossary

extraordinary very unusual or much better than usual. SYN **incredible**. OPP **ordinary**.
moving causing strong feelings, especially of sadness.
performance the act of playing a role in a film or play.
gripping very exciting; holding your attention.
entertaining interesting and fun.
drama exciting things that happen; an exciting event. **dramatic** ADJ.
fan sb who really likes and is enthusiastic about a person or an activity.
movie (especially in US English) a film.
plot the series of events that form the story of a film, novel, etc.
disappointing not as good as you had hoped.
swearing rude language that may upset people. **swear** v.
unsuitable (**for sth/sb**) not right or appropriate for sth/sb. OPP **suitable**.
disgusting very unpleasant.

5 Are the adjectives positive or negative? Write P or N.

▶ extraordinary P
1 gripping ____
2 ordinary ____
3 incredible ____
4 unsuitable ____
5 disappointing ____
6 moving ____
7 disgusting ____

6 *Circle the correct word.*

▶ There's a lot of swear(swearing) in the film.
1 It's very funny extremely/indeed.
2 The plot/performance is about three men who have to look after a baby.
3 The drama/movie is on at the Odeon cinema.
4 It was an ordinary/extraordinary film – I really loved it.
5 That film won't be suitable/disgusting for you – it's much too violent.
6 Her performance/fan was really gripping – you must see it.

7 Complete the words in these sentences.

ABOUT YOU

1 'Casino Royale' is a really enter _____ film. _____
2 Forest Whitaker gave an extra _____ - _____ _____
perf _____ in 'The Last King of Scotland'. _____
3 I thought 'Snakes on a Plane' was very _____
disapp _____ ind _____ . _____
4 I'm a f _____ of Cate Blanchett. _____
5 'The Pianist' was very mov _____ . _____

8 ABOUT YOU Replace the underlined names and titles with your own examples of films and actors in the 'About you' column. *Compare with another student if you can.*

www.hellooteacher.ir

43 I can talk about art and photography

A Painting and drawing

1

2

3

4

5

6

At an art **exhibition**, a **variety** of paintings and **drawings** may be **on display**: for example, **portraits**[1], **landscapes**[2], and **still lifes**[3] (note the plural here is *lifes*, not *lives*). Some artists work in **oils** (**oil paints**)[4], while others use **watercolours**[5].

Styles vary too: some **works of art** are **realistic**, others are **abstract**[6]. **Skilled** artists use a range of **techniques** to **create** different **sorts** of effects.

Glossary

exhibition a collection of paintings, objects, etc. that are shown in public.

variety a number of different types of the same thing. **vary** v.

drawing a picture made with a pencil, pen, etc., but not paint.

on display being shown in a place where people will see it. SYN **on show**.

style the way that sth is painted, drawn, built, etc.

work of art a very good painting, drawing, book, etc. (a really great work of art, e.g. *Mona Lisa* by Leonardo da Vinci, is a **masterpiece**).

realistic showing things as they are. **realism** N.

skilled having the ability and experience to do sth well. SYN **expert**.

technique a particular way of doing sth, often needing special skills.

create sth cause sth new to happen; produce sth new.

sort a type or kind.

1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

▶ watercolours | oil paints D
1 a drawing | a painting ____
2 on display | on show ____
3 realistic | abstract ____
4 create | make something new ____
5 a sort | a type ____
6 a portrait | a painting ____
7 a still life | a landscape ____
8 skilled | expert ____
9 a work of art | a painting ____

2 Complete the text.

Picasso is a great artist who worked in a ▶ variety of different (1) s____, some realistic and others (2) a____. He developed a wide range of painting (3) t____. He usually painted using (4) o____, but he liked to (5) v____ things and sometimes used (6) w____. He loved to paint people, and produced a beautiful (7) p____ of his mother. Many people believe that his real (8) m____ was *Guernica*, which he painted during the Spanish Civil War. In the past, the painting was on (9) d____ in (10) e____ all over the world, but it is now permanently in Madrid.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Can you remember the words?

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Photography

Word	Example	Meaning
out of focus	The photos are **out of focus**.	not showing things clearly. OPP **in focus**.
focus on sth	I **focused** on the girl's face.	change the camera until the image is clear.
transfer sth (**from . . . to . . .**)	I **transferred** the photos **from** the camera **to** a laptop.	move sth from one place to another.
develop a film	Could I have this **film developed**, please?	make pictures from a piece of film using chemicals.
automatic	With an **automatic** camera, photos are usually in focus.	able to work by itself without direct human control.
studio	She has a **studio** where she does fashion photography.	a room where a photographer or artist works.

4 Complete the phrases with words from the box.

photographer	camera	flash	a film	
focus ✓	album	of film	focus	lens

▶ in focus
1 digital _____
2 zoom _____
3 amateur _____
4 out of _____
5 develop _____
6 roll _____
7 built-in _____
8 photo _____

spotlight *photography, photograph, etc.*

Photography is the act of **taking pictures** or **photos/photographs**. Someone who does this as a job is a **photographer**; someone who does it as a hobby is an **amateur photographer**.

5 Write the words in the correct order to form sentences.

▶ I / film / please / roll / have / a / could / of Could I have a roll of film, please?
1 can / studio / in / films / develop / she / her _____
2 frame / the / put / photo / I / the / in _____
3 negative / two / please / of / can / prints / have / I / this? _____
4 the / focused / the / in / he / girl / foreground / on _____
5 photographers / automatic / often / cameras / amateur / buy _____
6 you / computer / to / can / the / transfer / pictures / the _____

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Are you interested in photography? If so, why? _____
2 What kind of camera have you got? _____
3 What features does it have? _____
4 What kinds of problems do you have when you take pictures? _____

www.hellooteacher.ir

44 I can talk about music

A Musical instruments and musicians

1 **trumpet**

2 **saxophone**

3 **flute**

4 **organ**

5 **keyboard**

6 **piano**

7 **violin**

8 **cello**

9 **guitar**

Franz Lizst was a **composer** but also a great **pianist**.
Chris Martin is the **lead singer** and main **songwriter** in the rock **band** Coldplay.
Mark Elder is the **conductor** of the Hallé **Orchestra**.

spotlight **The suffix *-ist***

We often use this suffix for the person who plays a particular instrument, e.g. **guitarist, violinist, pianist, saxophonist, cellist, organist.** But we say **trumpeter, drummer,** and usually **keyboard player**. The word for a flute player is **flautist**: note the change in spelling.

Glossary

musical instrument a thing that is used for playing music.
musician a person who plays a musical instrument.
composer a person who writes music. **compose** v.
lead singer the main singer in a band.
songwriter a person who writes the words and music for a song.
band a number of people who play music together. SYN **group.**
conductor the person in an orchestra who directs the musicians.
orchestra a large group of musicians who play music together.

1 Complete the words for the musical instruments, then write the person who plays them.

▶ piano / pianist
1 vi _____ / _____
2 or _____ / _____
3 tr _____ / _____
4 gu _____ / _____
5 sax _____ / _____
6 ce _____ / _____
7 fl _____ / _____

2 Complete the words in the sentences.

▶ They both play in a rock band .
1 My brother plays the violin in an o_____ .
2 Noel Gallagher plays the g_____ in the rock b_____ 'Oasis', and his brother Liam is the l_____ singer.
3 Do you play a musical i_____ ?
4 I don't like modern c_____ such as Bartók and Stockhausen.
5 Paul Simon sings and plays the guitar but is most famous as a s_____ .
6 Mike's playing guitar, but who is the keyboard p_____ ?
7 There are five in the band and they're all good m_____ .
8 Sir Georg Solti was the c_____ of several wonderful orchestras.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. What are the instruments?

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Who do you admire?

Music questionnaire

1 Write the name of a modern band or **solo artist** that you **admire**. _____
2 Has their music been **influenced** by anyone/anything? _____
3 Do they write and **record** their own music or play other people's? _____
4 Do they often do **live** concerts? Have you seen them play **live**? _____
5 What was the last **album** they **released**? _____
6 Why does their music **appeal** to you? Is it because of:
a great **voice** / **talented** musicians / lovely **melodies** / good **lyrics**? _____

Glossary

solo artist a singer or musician who is not part of a band.
admire sb like sb and think they have achieved a lot. **admiration** N.
influence sb/sth make a change to the way sb thinks. **influence** N.
record sth put music, a film, etc. onto a CD or tape. **recording** N.
album a collection of songs (often eight or ten).
release sth put an album onto the market so people can buy it. **release** N.
appeal to sb be attractive or interesting to sb. **appeal** N.
voice the sound a person makes when they talk or sing.
talented having a lot of ability. **talent** N.
melody a series of musical notes in a particular order. SYN **tune** INF.
lyrics the words of a song.

spotlight *living, alive, live*

Living and **alive** mean 'not dead', but **alive** is not used before a noun.
*He's one of the greatest **living** composers.* *Mozart isn't **alive** today.*
Live ADJ, ADV (sounds like *five*) means 'seen or heard as it is happening'.
*We saw the band play **live**, then watched a recording of the concert on TV.*

4 Circle the correct answer.

▶ James Brown isn't live/alive any longer.
1 I like the tune but not the lyrics/melody.
2 Is he a solo/single artist?
3 I've never seen the band live/alive.
4 Katie Melua has a great tune/voice.
5 He's one of the best living/alive songwriters.
6 The song has a beautiful melody/voice.
7 His music appeals/influences to me.

5 Complete the text with words from the box.

albums influenced talented ✓ release appeals solo recorded admire recording

Gilberto Gil is a Brazilian singer and guitarist, and one of his country's most ▶ talented songwriters. As a young musician in the 1950s, he was (1) _____ by the bossa nova style of João Gilberto, but he didn't (2) _____ his first album, *Louvação*, until 1967. He travelled in the 1970s, (3) _____ an album in English, and, in 1980, introduced reggae to Brazil with his (4) _____ of the Bob Marley song, 'No woman, no cry'. He has played with many musicians, while continuing his career as a (5) _____ artist. In all he has produced over 40 (6) _____. His music (7) _____ to people because of the rhythm and melodies, but people also (8) _____ him for his work in politics and for social causes.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questionnaire, or ask another student.

www.hellooteacher.ir

45 I can talk about people and places in sport

A People

Word	Example	Meaning
referee **ref** INF (*see picture*)	The **referee** gave out five yellow cards.	the official person in control in some sports (in tennis this is an **umpire**).
linesman (*see picture*)	The **linesman** put his **flag**[1] up for offside, but I think he was wrong.	a person who helps the referee in some sports. SYN **referee's assistant**.
manager	José Mourinho has been **manager** of Porto and Chelsea.	the person in control of a football team (also **coach** in some countries).
coach	Andy Murray has a new tennis **coach**.	a person who gives practical teaching to make sb better in a sport.
captain	Fabio Cannavaro was the Italian **captain** in the 2006 World Cup.	the player who is leader of the team.
spectators	**Spectators** ran onto the **pitch** (= the area where the game is played).	people who watch a game (also **the crowd**).
supporters	Many football **supporters** travel all over Europe to see their team.	people who regularly watch a team play. SYN **fans**. **support** v.
commentator	I thought the **commentator** was talking rubbish.	a person who describes a game on TV or the radio.

spotlight Suffix *-er* and *player*

We usually add **-er** or **player** to a noun or verb for the person who does a sport: **golfer, swimmer, skier, racing driver, boxer, tennis player, rugby player.** But: **athletics/athlete, gymnastics/gymnast.**

1 Cover the spotlight box and complete the list of people.

▶ football footballer
1 golf _____
2 athletics _____
3 boxing _____
4 motor racing _____
5 rugby _____
6 skiing _____
7 gymnastics _____

2 Circle the correct answer.

▶ They have a special manage/coach to improve their fitness.
1 The captain/manager wears an armband during the game.
2 The referee/umpire gave him a red card.
3 I lead/support Real Madrid, and go to most of their home games.
4 In the men's singles final at Wimbledon, they had a Portuguese referee/umpire.
5 There were 40,000 in the ground, of which about 5,000 were Arsenal spectators/supporters.

3 Complete the words in the text.

'There was trouble at last week's game. Our ▶ captain got a red card in the second half for arguing with the (1) r_____, and then the other team scored a goal in the last minute, although the (2) l_____ had his (3) f_____ up for offside. Even the (4) c_____ on the radio thought it was offside, but the ref gave the goal. At the end of the match, some (5) f_____ who were in the (6) c_____ then ran onto the (7) p_____, and the referee had to have a police escort. In the press conference after the game, our (8) m_____ was still very angry.'

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Places

The Camp Nou **Stadium**, the **ground** of Barcelona football **club**, is the largest stadium in Europe with a **capacity** of 98,800 spectators.

Hochenheim is a motor-racing **circuit** where the German Grand Prix sometimes takes place. One **lap** of the **track** is 4.574 kms.

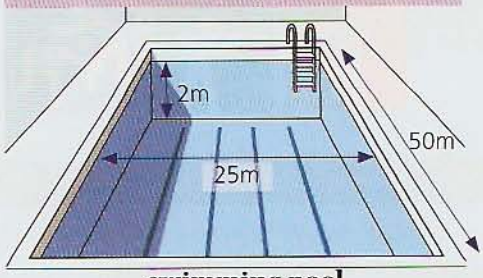
The Centre **Court** at Wimbledon is famous **worldwide**. Now they have **constructed** the new roof, the All England **Championship** won't be **interrupted** because of rain.

A **standard** Olympic **swimming pool** is **50 metres long**, **25 metres wide**, and has a **minimum depth** of two metres.

spotlight *long, wide, deep*

Long, **wide**, and **deep** can describe measurements.

*The pool is **50 metres long**.*
*= The **length** of the pool is 50 metres.*
*The pool is **25 metres wide**.*
*= The **width** of the pool is 25 metres.*
*The pool is **2 metres deep**.*
*= The **depth** of the pool is 2 metres.*



swimming pool

Glossary

stadium a large structure where people sit and watch sport.
ground an area of land where a game is played and people watch.
club A football **club** is the team, the management, and the ground.
capacity the amount or number that a space or container will hold.
circuit an area of land, often in a circle, where a race takes place. SYN **track**.
lap one journey around a track.
court a place where tennis, basketball, or badminton are played.
worldwide everywhere in the world. SYN **all over the world**.
construct sth build or make sth. **construction** N.
championship a competition to find the best player or team in a sport.
interrupt sth stop the progress of sth for a short period of time.
standard normal; average.
minimum smallest possible or smallest allowed. OPP **maximum**.

4 Complete the sentences.

▶ *Worldwide* means all over the world.
1 The noun from *long* is _____.
2 A synonym for *circuit* is _____.
3 The noun from *wide* is _____.
4 The opposite of *minimum* is _____.
5 The noun from *deep* is _____.
6 The noun from *construct* is _____.
7 One journey round a track is a _____.

5 Complete the words in each text.

1 Liverpool Football ▶ Club is planning to c_____ a new football s_____, with a c_____ of over 60,000.
2 The Chinese Grand Prix is raced over 56 l_____ of the Shanghai International C_____. It's the most expensive t_____ ever c_____, costing $240m.
3 The French Open Tennis C_____ at Roland Garros is famous w_____ as the only one of the four major tournaments that is played on clay c_____s.
4 Unfortunately we don't have a s_____ Olympic swimming p_____. The one we use for competitions is only 25 metres l_____ and 15 metres w_____. The m_____ d_____ is one metre, and the m_____ is two metres.

www.hellooteacher.ir

46 I can describe sporting events Do Unit 45 first

A The Olympics

- The first games **took place** in 776 BC, with one **competition**, a **race** of about 192 metres.
- The first modern Olympics took place in 1896 with 241 **competitors taking part** in nine sports: **athletics**[1], **cycling**[2], **fencing**[3], **gymnastics**[4], **weightlifting**[5], **shooting**[6], swimming, tennis, and ***wrestling***[7]. *By 2004, there were over 11,000* people **competing** *in 28 sports.*
- Gymnast Larissa Latynina **holds the record** for *the most Olympic* ***medals*** *(18).*
- Boxing is now the only Olympic sport where ***professionals*** *are not allowed to compete.*

Glossary

take place (used about a meeting or an event) happen.

competition a situation in which two or more people are trying to win sth or be better than sb (a person trying to win is a **competitor**). **compete** v. **competitive** ADJ.

race a competition to see who is fastest or best, or who wins.

take part in sth join with other people in an activity. SYN **participate**.

medal a piece of metal given to an athlete who comes 1st, 2nd, or 3rd.

professional a person who plays a sport for money as their job. OPP **amateur**.

spotlight ***record***

A ***record*** *is the best performance in* something, especially sport.
She ***holds the record*** *for the long jump.*
(She has the record.)
He ***broke the record*** *in the 100 metres.*
(He set a new record.)

1 Complete the words for sports.

► shooting
1 gym
2 weight
3 fen
4 cyc
5 ath
6 wre

2 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

► It's a long race/medal.
► It was a hard race/competition.
1 How many people took place/took part?
2 Anyone can take part/participate.
3 He broke the record/competition.
4 The race takes place/takes part on Tuesday.
5 Did she win a race/medal?
6 Does she hold/carry the record?

3 *Complete the sentences.*

► How many sportsmen and women took part in the last Olympics?
1 The 2012 Olympics will ..... place in London.
2 It's hard for poor countries to ..... against rich countries in certain events.
3 A Russian gymnast holds the ..... for the most Olympic medals won.
4 There are a few Olympic amateurs, but now most of the ..... are ..... .
5 The marathon (just over 42 kms) is the longest ..... on foot at the Olympics.
6 My uncle won a silver ..... in the shooting ..... at the 1984 Olympics.

4 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. What are the sports?

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Winners and losers

In a very **one-sided contest**, Roger Federer **defeated** Andy Roddick 6–4, 6–0, 6–2 in the **semi-final** of the Australian Open to go through to his tenth grand slam **final**. Federer won the first set quite easily, then broke Roddick's **resistance** in the second with some **brilliant** tennis. Afterwards, Roddick was very **critical of** his own **performance**, but **praised** his **opponent** for some **outstanding** tennis. Federer is now clearly the **favourite** to take his third Australian Open, and tenth grand slam **overall**. This would put him just one behind Rod Laver, a tremendous **achievement** for someone who is still only 25.

spotlight *defeat*

As a verb, to **defeat sb** means to be stronger or better than somebody in a game, fight, etc. SYN **beat sb.**
*Italy **defeated** Wales 2–0 in the last match they played.*
As a noun, **a defeat** is an occasion when you don't win something.
*We won our first match, then followed it with three **defeats**.*

Glossary

one-sided	If a game is **one-sided**, one person or team is much better than the other.
contest	an activity between two players or teams to see who is best.
semi-final	one of two games to decide who plays in the **final**.
final	the last game or match in a competition.
resistance	the action of trying to stop sth happening or stop sb doing sth. **resist** v.
brilliant	very good, clever, or skilful. SYN **outstanding**.
critical of sth/sb	saying what is wrong with sth/sb. **criticize sth/sb** v.
performance	the way in which sb plays or does sth. **perform** v.
praise sb/sth	say that sb/sth is very good. **praise** N.
opponent	a person who plays against you in a sport or competition.
favourite	the person or team who is expected to win. OPP **outsider**.
overall	including everything; in total.
achievement	a thing that you have done successfully through hard work or skill. **achieve sth** v.

5 Complete the sentences.

▶ The noun related to **perform** is performance.
1 The noun related to **achieve** is _____.
2 The verb related to **critical** is _____.
3 The noun related to **resist** is _____.
4 The noun related to **praise** is _____.
5 **Outstanding** is a synonym for _____.
6 An **outsider** is the opposite of a _____.
7 **Beat sb** is the same as _____.

6 Complete the sentences.

▶ We were defeated in the semi-final, which was very disappointing.
1 Nadal won the match in the end, but it was a great _____ between them.
2 He was the winner in 1998, 2003, and again in 2008, so that's three titles _____.
3 Bjorn Borg won Wimbledon five times, which is a fantastic _____.
4 He was the _____, so we expected him to win, but it was a very one-_____ contest.
5 Tiger Woods aims for perfection and is always very _____ of his own performance.
6 Who will her _____ be in the final? ~ I don't know. It depends on the other _____-final.

7 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

47 I can talk about books

A Types of book

I read a huge amount. As an editor, I'm always using **reference books** such as dictionaries, **encyclopedias**, **manuals**, catalogues, and so on. But I read a lot for **pleasure** too, and I particularly like **poetry**. At home all my books are arranged in **alphabetical** order (I know that's a bit strange!). I've got loads of **novels**, **murder mysteries**, **science fiction**, etc. But there is **non-fiction** as well; I read quite a lot of **biographies**. My husband says I'm book-crazy.

Glossary

reference book	a book you use to find a piece of information.
encyclopedia	a book or set of books that gives information about many different subjects, arranged in alphabetical order.
manual	a book that tells you how to do or use sth such as a car or a computer.
catalogue	a complete list of things you can buy or see somewhere.
pleasure	a feeling of enjoyment.
poetry	poems in general (a **poem** is a piece of writing arranged in short lines which express thoughts and feelings through sound and rhythm).
alphabetical	listed in the same way as the **alphabet**: A, B, C, etc.
novel	a book that tells a story about people or events that are not real.
mystery	a story in which the events are only explained at the end (e.g. a **murder mystery**).
science fiction	books about events that take place in the future, often involving travel in space. SYN **sci-fi** INF.
non-fiction	books about real facts, people, events, etc. OPP **fiction**.
biography	the story of sb's life written by someone different (an **autobiography** is the story of sb's life written by that person).

1 Complete the table with words from the box.

catalogue ✓ murder mystery autobiography manual
reference book encyclopedia novel biography sci-fi

Fiction	Non-fiction	
_____	catalogue	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

2 Complete the sentences.

▶ A dictionary is arranged in alphabetical order.
1 If you don't know the date of the French Revolution, look it up in an _____.
2 Shakespeare is famous for his plays, but he also wrote beautiful _____.
3 Dictionaries are a kind of _____ book.
4 What kind of books do you read for _____ in the evenings?
5 Do you read crime stories? ~ Yes, I'm reading a murder _____ at the moment.
6 What's the tenth letter of the _____? ~ It's 'J'.
7 Did David Beckham write his life story himself? ~ Yes, it's his _____.
8 If you don't know how your camera works, you should look in the _____.

3 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Choosing a book

Booksellers' survey: how did you choose the last book you read?

The **title** and front **cover** just **attracted my attention**.

I was **browsing** in a bookshop. I just picked up a **paperback** that looked interesting.

A recommendation by a friend – he said it was very **readable** and **well written**.

It was a **gift**, but I like the **author** so I was really pleased.

I **looked through** the first **chapter** – it looked **fascinating**.

Glossary

title	the name of a book, play, film, etc.
cover	the outside part of a book, magazine, etc.
attract sb's attention	If sth **attracts your attention**, it interests you so that you want to look at it.
browse	spend time pleasantly in a shop looking at things.
paperback	a book with a thick paper cover (a **hardback** has a hard cover).
readable	easy or interesting to read.
gift	a thing that you give to sb, e.g. for their birthday. SYN **present**.
author	the writer of a particular book, play, etc.
look through sth	read sth quickly. SYN **skim sth**.
chapter	one of the parts into which a book is divided.
fascinating	very interesting.

spotlight **Compound adjectives with *well***

There are many adjectives consisting of **well** + past participle, e.g. **well written** (of a book, article, etc.), **well informed** (= knowing a lot about a subject), **well known** (= famous).

4 Tick (✓) the correct sentence ending.

▶ Who is the *author* ☑ *gift* ☐ ?
1 The cover attracted my *chapter* ☐ *attention* ☐ .
2 The author was *well known* ☐ *well written* ☐ .
3 I read the second *title* ☐ *chapter* ☐ .
4 The book looked very *readable* ☐ *well informed* ☐ .
5 I wanted the cheaper one, so I bought the *hardback* ☐ *paperback* ☐ .
6 I was in a bookshop the other day, just *attracting* ☐ *browsing* ☐ .

5 Complete the text.

My cousin has just written a reference book. He's not ▶ well known, but he's a good (1) a_____ . His book might attract a lot of (2) a_____ because it's called 'How to make a lot of money by doing very little' – isn't that a great (3) t_____ ! It's being published in hardback and (4) p_____ . I read the first (5) c_____ about selling things on the internet, and it's really (6) f_____ – I couldn't put it down. On the front (7) c_____ there's a picture of my cousin in bed with his laptop; it's a bit silly. But it's a funny book and it's (8) well w_____ .

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 What kind of books do you find most fascinating? _____
2 What kind of reference books do you use most often? _____
3 Do you enjoy browsing in bookshops? _____
4 Are you ever attracted to a book just by the cover? _____
5 Do you have more paperbacks or hardbacks? Why? _____

7 Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. What are the words?

www.hellooteacher.ir

48 I can describe festivals

'LA TOMATINA': THE WORLD'S BIGGEST TOMATO FIGHT

The event takes place every August in Buñol, Spain. People come from all over the world to **participate** in this huge social **occasion**, which includes music, **parades**, dancing, and **fireworks**. The main event is a tomato fight in which 100 **tons** of over-ripe tomatoes are **thrown** in the streets. Trucks bring the tomatoes into the town, and the fight begins; it ends after exactly one hour. No one is very sure how or why this **festival** started!

CHERRY BLOSSOM FESTIVAL, JAPAN

Cherry **blossom** is the national flower of Japan. And as spring **approaches**, people make special trips to various viewing sites to see the first signs of the cherry trees in flower. The trees are sometimes **lit up** at night. The festival includes all sorts of delicious food, games, rides, **parades**, folk music, religious ceremonies, and a beauty **contest**.

THE RIO CARNIVAL ('CARNAVAL')

One of the most **spectacular entertainments** in the world, Carnival is a **wild** four-day celebration of music, dance, and food and drink, all over Rio. The event **means a lot** to the people from the poorest **neighbourhoods**, who spend months in preparation. It is an opportunity for the whole **community** to go out and **have fun** together. It ends with the Samba Parade, for which the performers **dress up** in the most **striking costumes**.

spotlight *festival, carnival, parade*

A **festival** is a day or days when people celebrate something, often a religious event. A **carnival** is like a festival with people dancing and playing music in the streets. A **parade** is an organized event in which people move (**parade** v) through the streets, often on special vehicles, wearing **costumes** (special clothes), and playing music.

Glossary

participate (in sth)	become part of an activity. SYN **take part in sth.**
occasion	a time when sth happens.
fireworks	objects that burn or explode in the sky with colours and noise.
ton	a unit for measuring weight in Britain (one **ton** = 1,016 kilograms).
throw sth	use your hand and arm to send an object through the air.
blossom	a flower or mass of flowers especially on fruit trees in spring.
approach sb/sth	come nearer to sb/sth.
light sth up	make sth bright with light. SYN **illuminate sth.**
contest	a competition to see who is the best (e.g. a **beauty contest**).
spectacular	very impressive; large, beautiful, and often with lots of colour.
entertainment	an activity that people enjoy watching and listening to, e.g. theatre, film, music (the people who entertain you are **entertainers**).
wild	exciting and enjoyable.
mean a lot to sb	be very important to sb.
neighbourhood	an area of a town and the people who live there.
community	all the people who live in an area or town.
have fun	enjoy yourself.
dress up	put on special clothes either for fun or for a formal event.
striking	very attractive in a way that causes people to notice.

www.hellooteacher.ir

1 Find one spelling mistake in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.

▶ The event is really designed to serve the local comunity. community
1 It was really amazing to see the trees iluminated at night. _____
2 Carneval takes place once a year, usually during the holiday season. _____
3 As we aproached the centre, we saw that the entertainment had started. _____
4 It was a really espectacular evening, which we will never forget. _____
5 The fastival takes place every three years. _____
6 The display of firewerks was absolutely amazing. _____
7 They picked tuns of grapes. _____
8 Spring is the time when people make special trips to see the trees in blossum. _____

2 Match 1–8 with a–i.

▶ The trees are covered in e
1 Fireworks _____
2 The crowd threw _____
3 The festival means _____
4 Everyone just wants to have _____
5 People dress up in _____
6 Lots of people want to _____
7 There is even a beauty _____
8 It was a very wild _____

a contest.
b flowers at the entertainers.
c lit up the night sky.
d fun together.
e blossom. ✓
f take part in the event.
g occasion.
h a lot to the community.
i special costumes.

3 Replace the word or phrase in italics with one which has a similar meaning.

▶ We had *a good time* watching the carnival parade. fun
1 How many people *took part* in the event? _____
2 We were going to a party so we decided to *put on special clothes* for it. _____
3 The church is usually *lit up* at night. _____
4 She was wearing a *very attractive and unusual* dress. _____
5 It's a great *time* because everyone goes onto the streets. _____
6 The festival is an important event in the *local area where I live*. _____

4 Complete the questions.

ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY

1 What is the most important f_____ or c_____ in your country? _____
2 Do people p_____ through the streets as a part of it? _____
3 Do you have other kinds of e_____ during it? _____
4 Have you ever t_____ p_____ in a parade? If so, what did you do? _____
5 Have you ever d_____ u_____ in a special costume for a festival? If so, what did you wear? _____
6 Are there any special o_____ when you have f_____ at night? _____
7 Do these different events m_____ a lot to you personally? _____
8 Would you like to p_____ in any of the festivals on page 124? Which one(s) and why? _____

5 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 4, or ask another student.

6 Test yourself. Cover the words in the glossary and look at the meanings. Say the words.

www.hellooteacher.ir

Review: Media and entertainment

Unit 41

1 One word is wrong in each line. Cross it out and write the correct word at the end.

► I spent the ~~whose~~ day waiting for the electrician to come. whole
1 The president received many death threads during his life. .....
2 Sales of newspapers have reclined over recent years. .....
3 I worry a lot about bomb stares where I live. .....
4 Are you interested in currant affairs? .....
5 I saw a huge demonstration today; people were protecting about the war. .....
6 Do you usually get a dairy paper? ~ Yes, I get *The Times*. .....

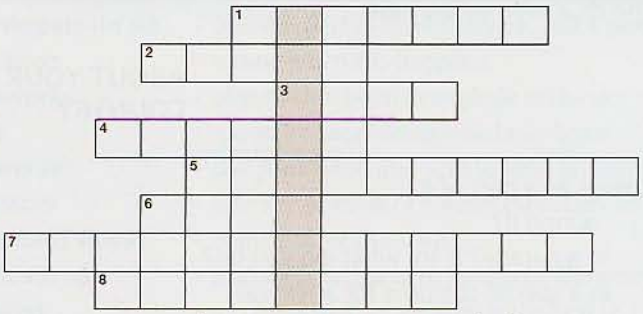
2 One word is missing from each sentence. Where from? Write a word from the box at the end. **1**

cultural editor pension made ✓ journalist claims headline

► I ✓ a promise to help her, so I will do it. made
1 I enjoy all sorts of events, such as exhibitions and concerts. .....
2 I think he must receive a because he's nearly 70. .....
3 I saw a strange newspaper the other day: 'Man bites dog'. .....
4 She's in charge of the local newspaper; I believe she's been the for three years. .....
5 The government that it can cut crime by 20 per cent this year, but I don't believe it. .....
6 My cousin's a newspaper; he writes articles about current affairs. .....

Unit 42

1 Complete the crossword. What is the word in the grey squares?



1 the process of deciding which parts of a film to show.
2 film
3 the part an actor plays
4 the person who comes first in a competition
5 extraordinary; very much better than usual
6 the series of events that form the story of a film
7 not as good or interesting as you had hoped
8 *rude language that may upset people*

The letters in the grey squares make the word .....

www.hellooteacher.ir

Unit 43

1 Which words or phrases are being defined?

▶ an exhibition of paintings: a collection of paintings which are on display to the public
1 an ..... camera: one which works by itself
2 an ..... painting: a painting that shows the artist's feelings rather than showing the exact appearance of people or things
3 a .....: a place where an artist or photographer works
4 .... focus: not able to be seen clearly
5 a ..... drawing: one that shows things as they really are
6 a .....: a painting or drawing of the countryside
7 a .....: a type or kind
8 a ..... artist: an artist who has a lot of ability and experience

Unit 44

1 Complete the words. Then write P next to those that are people.

▶ r e c o r d ▶ v i o l i n i s t P
1 c _ n d _ c t _ r _
2 l _ _ d s _ n g _ r _
3 k _ y b _ _ r d p l _ y _ r _
4 c _ m p _ s _ r _
5 f l _ t _ _
6 b _ n d _
7 t r _ m p _ t _
8 m _ l _ d _ _
9 f l _ _ t _ s t _
10 g _ _ t _ r _ s t _
11 s _ x _ p h _ n _ _
12 s _ l _ _ r t _ s t _

Unit 45

1 Tick (✓) the two correct words or phrases.

▶ five thousand *spectators* ☑ *commentators* ☐ *supporters* ☑
1 a football *ground* ☐ *stadium* ☐ *circuit* ☐
2 a tennis *lap* ☐ *court* ☐ *umpire* ☐
3 the new *spectator* ☐ *coach* ☐ *manager* ☐
4 a motor-racing *track* ☐ *ground* ☐ *circuit* ☐
5 a football *club* ☐ *referee* ☐ *umpire* ☐
6 a *worldwide* ☐ *deep* ☐ *standard* ☐ pool

2 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

▶ The other members of the team chose him as their captain .
1 They're ..... a new stadium. It will be finished next year.
2 The ground has a ..... of 50,000.
3 I watch my team every week. I've ..... them for 25 years.
4 Alonso completed the last ..... of the circuit in one minute and 37 seconds.
5 The game was ..... for 25 minutes because the lights went out.
6 A ..... of 28,000 watched the last game.
7 Who won the Drivers' World ..... last year?
8 The ..... of a football pitch is about 100 metres; the ..... is about 50.

www.hellooteacher.ir

Unit 46

1 Match 1–9 with a–j.

▶	It was an outstanding ___f___	a	overall
1	About thirty took part ___	b	of the performance.
2	It was a very one- ___	c	the record.
3	He was critical ___	d	place on Tuesday.
4	He still holds ___	e	in yesterday's race.
5	She's the favourite ___	f	to win.
6	She's in the semi- ___	g	performance. ✓
7	The game takes ___	h	sided contest.
8	He's a difficult ___	i	final
9	She won five titles ___	j	opponent

Unit 47

1 Tick the correct column.

	Yes	No
▶ If a novel is readable, it means that you have definitely read it.		✓
1 Reference books are useful when you want to get information.		
2 There is often a picture on the cover of a book.		
3 A well-known person is someone only a few people have heard of.		
4 An encyclopedia is arranged in alphabetical order.		
5 If you are browsing in a shop, you definitely won't buy anything.		
6 You'll find novels in the non-fiction section of a bookshop.		
7 An autobiography is someone's life story, written by someone else.		
8 A manual is something most people read for pleasure.		

Unit 48

1 One word or phrase is missing from each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end. Use words from the box in the correct form.

wild | festival | community ✓ | throw | mean | striking | parade | take part | neighbourhood

▶ Anyone in the whole / can participate. ___community___

1 Everyone through the main streets in the town. ___

2 The people in the where I live are very friendly. ___

3 It's a two-day, which we have every year. ___

4 It was quite a party; we had great fun. ___

5 Do you ever in parades? ___

6 I enjoy the carnival: it a lot to me. ___

7 She wore a really dress with gold flowers on it. ___

8 We all had to a ball and try to hit the moving object. ___

www.hellooteacher.ir

49 I can get through exams

A guide to exam success

- **Follow** the **invigilator's instructions.** Don't take any forbidden **items** into the room, or try to **communicate with** other **candidates.** You will be **disqualified** for **cheating.**
- Before you start, read the **paper carefully.** Don't waste time copying the questions; the **examiner** knows what they are.
- **Planning** is **essential** in successful writing. **Devote** 5–10 minutes **to** making notes.
- Have a positive **attitude.** It's your chance to show what you know. And it will be a **relief** when it's all over in a few hours.

Glossary

success	the achievement of sth you have wanted. **succeed** V.
follow instructions	do what sb tells you to do.
invigilator	the person watching students in the exam room.
item	a thing or an object.
communicate with sb	talk to or make signs to sb.
candidate	a person taking an exam.
disqualify sb	officially stop sb from taking part in sth because they have broken a rule.
cheat	do sth dishonest to get an advantage for yourself (a person is a **cheat** N).
paper	the written questions in an exam.
carefully	If you read sth **carefully**, you read slowly and pay attention.
examiner	the person who will read and mark the candidate's answer.
planning	the act or process of making plans for sth.
essential	completely necessary and important in a particular situation.
devote time to sth/sb	give proper time to sth/sb.
attitude	the way you think, feel, or behave.
relief	the feeling you have when sth unpleasant stops. **relieved** ADJ.

1 Circle the correct word.

▶ Read the planning/(paper) carefully.
1 The examiner/invigilator watches students during the exam.
2 What's the best way to achieve relief/success in the exam?
3 If you want to succeed/cheat, you should study hard.
4 A positive attitude/candidate will help you be more successful.
5 Students should communicate/follow the instructions they hear.
6 If you cheat, you will be disqualified/relieved.

2 Complete the words in the text.

My brother has very little ▶ success in exams. He gets very nervous and generally has a negative (1) a_____ to them. He's so nervous that he can't follow the (2) i_____ given by the (3) i_____. He once forgot that he had his dictionary in his pocket; he was accused of (4) c_____ and was (5) d_____ for taking a forbidden (6) i_____ into the exam room. My mother gives him lots of advice, though; she tells him not to panic and to read the (7) p_____ slowly before he writes anything, and that it's (8) e_____ that he plans his answers (9) c_____. However, he never (10) d_____ enough time to the (11) p_____, so the (12) e_____ must find his answers very difficult to understand. In our house, it's always such a (13) r_____ if he passes an exam.

3 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

50 I can describe university life

A Academic life

Word	Example	Meaning
academic	I enjoy **academic** subjects like history.	connected to education, especially school or university.
undergraduate	**Undergraduates** usually do a three-year course.	a university student studying for their first degree.
graduate	She's an Oxford **graduate**. He **graduated** last year.	a person who has finished their degree (when they finish, they **graduate** v).
tutor	You can ask your **tutor** for advice on your work.	sb who teaches and looks after a student or a small group of students.
professor	She's a **professor** of law.	the highest level of teacher in a university.
lecture	I went to an interesting **lecture** on Italian politics.	a talk given to a large group to teach them a subject (the person is a **lecturer** N).
seminar	Are you going to the **seminar** this morning?	a class at a university where a small group discuss a subject with a tutor.
debate	We **had** a great **debate**.	a formal discussion.
attend sth	You have to **attend** lectures.	go to sth, or be present at sth.
take notes	Don't forget to **take notes**.	write words quickly to help you remember sth.
read widely	Try to **read widely**.	read a lot of different kinds of books.
write a thesis	I'm **writing a thesis** on global warming.	do a long piece of writing on a particular academic subject.
do research	You **do research** for a PhD.	do a long and careful study of a subject.
continuous assessment	We don't have exams; it's all **continuous assessment**.	a way of judging students by looking at the work they do during the year.

1 Tick (✓) the words that are people.

▶ professor ✓
1 thesis ____
2 debate ____
3 lecture ____
▶ assessment ✗
4 graduate ____
5 undergraduate ____
6 tutor ____
7 seminar ____
8 research ____
9 lecturer ____

2 Complete the text.

If you are an ▶ undergraduate at university in Britain, you spend a lot of time studying alone, but you also have to (1) a____ a lot of (2) s____ and (3) l____ and take (4) n____. In seminars, the discussion is usually led by a (5) t____. You have to read (6) w____ and you may have to express your opinions on a range of (7) a____ topics. In many courses, there is continuous (8) a____: the marks you get for your essays go towards your final results, after which, if you are successful, you (9) g____.

3 Test yourself. Look at the words and cover the examples and meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Student life

Advice for new students

- In Britain, many university students live **away from home**. This means you get the **freedom** and **opportunity** to meet new people. Most students choose to live in a **hall of residence** in their first year, where you are less likely to be **homesick** or lonely.
- Student life is all about learning to **manage** your money: **tuition fees**, **loans**, bills, accommodation fees, etc. You may be able to get a **scholarship**, and many students find part-time jobs to help pay the bills.
- At university, you can be **flexible** about when you study, but be sure to get out of bed **in time** for lectures, do your work **on time**, and plan your **revision** period before exams.

Glossary

away from home • in a different place from your home. OPP **at home**.
freedom • the right or ability to say or do what you want.
opportunity • the possibility to do sth that you want to do. SYN **chance**.
hall of residence • (in universities) a building where students live.
homesick • sad because you are away from home and you miss it.
manage sth • be in control of sth.
fees • money you pay for the professional advice or service of a doctor, lawyer, etc. (**tuition fees** are the money that you pay to be taught).
loan • If you **take out a loan**, you borrow money, usually from a bank.
scholarship • money that an organization gives sb to help them study.
flexible • able to change easily. **flexibility** N.
revision • the process of studying sth again to prepare for an exam. **revise** V.

4 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

revision on time in time manage flexible✓
opportunity freedom homesick

▶ I can see you any day this week – I can be flexible.
1 I had the _____ to meet the president.
2 The train was _____, fortunately.
3 I think children have too much _____.
4 Do lots of _____ before the exam.
5 I don't know how to _____ my money.
6 I got there _____ to see Joel before he left.
7 I lived abroad for a year but I was _____ and I missed my family.

spotlight *in time, on time*

If you are **in time** for something, you arrive before or at the correct time.
If you are **on time** for something, you arrive at exactly the correct time.
*He arrived **in time** for the lesson.*
(= before the lesson started.)
*The lesson started **on time**.*
(= at the correct time.)

5 Complete the questions. Then write your answers, or ask another student.

ABOUT YOU

1 Do students usually live at home, or a_____ from home? _____
2 Do most students live in halls of r_____? _____
3 Do they have to pay t_____ fees? _____
4 Do they have to take out l_____ to pay the bills? _____
5 Can they get a s_____ to help pay for their studies? _____
6 Would you like the c_____ to study abroad? _____

6 Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?

www.hellooteacher.ir

51 I can apply for a job

Applying for a job with FamAid UK

Wherever you are **based**, you can apply for any advertised **vacancy**.

Work permits

For jobs in the UK, you will usually be expected to have a **valid** UK work permit. For jobs outside the UK, the local FamAid office will **advise** you about the permit you may need.

Closing dates

Your **application** must reach us by the advertised closing date. Online applications will be **acknowledged automatically** by email.

Selection process

If we would like you to **attend** an **interview**, we will **contact** you. At that time, and if **required**, we will also **assess** other skills you may have or need.

If you are not successful, we will contact you and, wherever possible, **give** you **feedback**.

If you are the successful **candidate**, we will offer you the position, but this is **subject to** satisfactory **references**. We shall also **request confirmation** that you are medically fit to do the job and have the necessary permit/visa.

Glossary

apply for sth • ask for sth in writing (often a job or course). **application** N.

be based somewhere • If you **are based in a place**, that place is the centre for your work.

vacancy • a job that is available for sb to do.

work permit • an official document which says you are allowed to work.

valid • If sth is **valid**, it is legally acceptable and can be used.

advise sb • tell sb the best thing to do. SYN **give sb advice** (**advice** N, U).

acknowledge sth • let sb know that you have received sth from them. **acknowledgement** N.

automatically • without any human control.

process • a series of things that are done for a particular reason.

interview • a meeting in which sb is asked questions to find out if they are suitable for a job, course, etc. (the person who asks the questions is an **interviewer**). **interview sb** V.

contact sb • phone or write to sb.

assess sth/sb • decide on the quality or ability of sth/sb. **assessment** N.

give sb feedback • give sb advice or criticism about how they have done sth.

candidate • a person who makes a formal application for a job.

reference • a statement or letter which describes sb's character and ability to do a job (a person who writes this is a **referee**).

confirmation • a statement in writing which says that sth is true or accurate. **confirm** V.

spotlight Formal language

In a written text like this, some language will be formal. For example: **attend sth** (= go to/for sth), **require sth** (= need sth), **request sth** (= ask for sth), **subject to sth** (= depending on sth), **position** (= job), and **shall** (= will). The words in bold are more formal than the words in brackets, which we would normally use in spoken English.

www.hellooteacher.ir

1 Cover the glossary and complete the table.

Verb	Noun	Verb	Noun
advise	▶ advice	confirm	
apply		acknowledge	
assess		interview	

2 There is a mistake in each sentence. Write the correct sentence at the end.

▶ My old boss said he would be my ~~reference~~. My old boss said he would be my referee.

1 They said they'd contact to me. _____

2 Is she applying a job? _____

3 Have you got a work permission? _____

4 The company is based on Tokyo. _____

5 He gave me some good advices. _____

6 She gave me foodback after the interview. _____

7 I have to confirmate it in writing. _____

8 If you apply for a job, it's quite a long processment. _____

3 Replace the underlined words with a more formal word or phrase with the same meaning.

▶ We will contact you as soon as possible. shall

1 Has the company asked for references? _____

2 They offered me the job on Thursday. _____

3 I went for an interview last week. _____

4 If you need more information, please contact me. _____

5 We're going to give him the job, depending on satisfactory references. _____

4 Complete the sentences with a single word.

▶ You can't use this visa any longer – it's not valid .

1 I work in lots of places, but I'm _____ in Bristol.

2 She was angry because they didn't _____ that they had received her letter.

3 He offered me the job on the phone, but I haven't had written _____ yet.

4 They said they would _____ me by phone when they've made a decision.

5 You don't need to ask for confirmation; they will reply _____ .

6 They interviewed four other _____ for the job as well as me.

7 Val wrote to the company for a job, but there are no _____ at the moment.

8 I hope they'll _____ me feedback after the interview.

9 He wants to _____ for the job, but he still has to fill in the _____ form.

10 You have to do tests and have several interviews; it's quite a long _____ .

5 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

1 What jobs have you applied for in the past? _____

2 How many interviews have you had? _____

3 Have any interviewers given you feedback after the interview? _____

4 How many times have you been the successful candidate? _____

5 Who were your referees? _____

6 Have you ever had to get a work permit? If so, where? _____

6 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Can you remember the meanings and other parts of speech?

www.hellooteacher.ir

52 I can describe jobs

A Careers

Careers 4 U advertises jobs across a range of market **sectors**. Register by email now and you can be first in line to apply for **jobs** as they appear. Just complete the following:

*Please select any two sectors in which you have **experience** and/or **qualifications**.*

- ☒ *engineering*
- ☒ *military*
- ☒ *training*
- ☒ *publishing*
- ☒ *manufacturing*
- ☒ *management*
- ☒ *retail*
- ☒ *finance*
- ☒ *recruitment*

Spotlight *career, job, profession*

A **career** is the series of jobs you have in a particular area, e.g. *a **career** in publishing*. A **job** is any work you do to earn money, e.g. being a waiter, teacher, etc. A **profession** is a job with a high level of training and/or education, e.g. *the medical/teaching **profession***.

Glossary

sector a part of the business activity of a country (**public sector** = controlled by the government; **private sector** = controlled by private companies).
experience the things that you have done in your life.
qualifications the exams you have passed or courses you have finished.
engineering the activity of designing roads, railways, bridges, etc.
military connected with soldiers, or the army, navy, and air force.
training the activity of teaching people the skills they need for a job. **train sb** v.
publishing the business of producing and selling books, magazines, etc. **publish sth** v.
manufacturing the business of producing goods in factories. **manufacture sth** v.
management the control of a business or organization. **manage sb/sth** v.
retail selling goods to people directly in shops, on the internet, etc.
finance the activity of managing money.
recruitment the business of finding people for job vacancies. **recruit sb** v.

1 What sector do these people work in?

▶ I produce books and then we sell them. publishing.
1 I teach people their jobs. _____
2 I'm a soldier. _____
3 I sell clothes. _____
4 I design motorways. _____
5 I produce cars. _____
6 I'm the boss of a company. _____
7 I control the money in our business. _____
8 I fill job vacancies in companies. _____

2 Complete the words in the text.

I've just left university and I'm hoping to have a ▶ career in the private (1) s_____, and eventually I'd like to be in (2) m_____ and have my own business. I had a couple of jobs in small companies in my holidays, so I have a little (3) e_____. I'm hoping to work for a large company to start with; they do a lot of (4) t_____, and I'll be able to get some extra (5) q_____ too. My father's in the legal (6) p_____, but for some reason, he wants me to have some experience in the (7) m_____ as a soldier. I've no idea why, though.

3 ABOUT YOU Look at the website again. Which sectors do you have experience or qualifications in?

_____

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Jobs

Job	What does he/she do?	Glossary
plumber	**installs** and repairs water pipes, taps, central heating, baths, etc.	**install sth** put in some equipment so that it is ready to use.
mechanic	repairs engines, especially in **vehicles**.	**vehicle** e.g. car, bus, lorry.
electrician	installs, connects, or repairs **electrical** wiring.	**electrical** of or about electricity
carpenter	makes or repairs parts of a building and other **objects** made of wood.	**object** a thing that can be seen or touched but is not alive.
nanny	**takes care of / cares for** children in their own home.	**take care of / care for sb/sth** look after sb/sth.
travel agent	**makes** travel **arrangements** for people.	**make arrangements for sb/sth** make plans or preparations for sb/sth.
estate agent	buys and sells houses or **land** for people.	**land** an area of ground; an area used for a special purpose.
importer	**imports** goods.	**import sth** buy goods from another country to sell in your own country. OPP **export sth.**
priest	performs religious ceremonies in some religions.	
civil servant	works for the **civil service**, i.e. all government departments except the military.	**i.e.** in other words; that is (used when you are explaining or defining sth).
sales rep / representative	travels to different places and sells the **products** of a particular company.	**product** a thing that people make or grow in order to sell.

4 Cover the table above. Are these sentences true or false? Write T or F.

▶ An importer exports goods to sell. F
1 An estate agent sells holidays. ____
2 A carpenter makes wooden objects. ____
3 A civil servant works for a company. ____
4 A priest conducts religious ceremonies. ____
5 A mechanic can repair vehicles. ____
6 An electrician fixes electrical wiring. ____
7 A plumber can fix your central heating. ____

5 Cross out one word which is wrong. Write the correct word at the end.

▶ I haven't got central heating; I need a plumber to ~~repair~~ a new system. install
1 Our estate agent made the arrangements, i.e. buying tickets, booking hotels. ____
2 The estate agent sold the landing which belonged to the farm. ____
3 What produces does that company make? ____
4 My sister does quite a lot of training for the civil servant. ____
5 I believe he exports silver jewellery from abroad. ____
6 A nanny takes care for children. ____
7 Sales representants have to travel a lot. ____

6 Test yourself. Look at the jobs and cover the other columns. What do the people do?

www.hellooteacher.ir

53 I can describe a career

A Career structure

Two years ago, I got a **challenging** job with good **prospects** in local radio. I worked hard and, as a **reward**, I was **promoted**. I was delighted. I was quickly **transferred** to a different **department**. Then things went wrong: one colleague **got the sack**, and another **handed in his notice**. After that, ten people were **made redundant**. I didn't want to be **out of work**, so I decided to look **elsewhere**. I applied for a job in TV and was **appointed** assistant director. Amazing!

spotlight *dismiss, sack, fire*

An employer may **dismiss** an employee if their work is not good enough or if they have done something wrong. In less formal English, you can say **sack sb**, **give sb the sack**, or **fire sb**. An employee can **get the sack** INF.

He { ***was sacked*** / ***was given the sack*** / ***got the sack*** / ***was fired / was dismissed*** } *for being rude.*

Glossary

challenging difficult to do, but interesting and enjoyable. **challenge** N.

prospects (PL) chances of being successful in the future.

reward sth you get because you have done sth helpful, worked hard, etc. **reward sb** V.

promote sb (usually passive) give sb a better job at a higher level in a company. **promotion** N.

transfer sb/sth (from ... to ...) move sb/sth from one place to another.

department a section of a business, university, etc.

hand in your notice say officially that you want to leave your job. SYNS **resign**, **quit** INF.

make sb redundant (often passive) make sb leave their job because they are not needed any more.

out of work not working and unable to find a job. SYN **unemployed**.

elsewhere in or to another place.

appoint sb choose sb for a job.

1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

▶ a challenge | a reward D
1 out of work | unemployed ____
2 be promoted | be appointed ____
3 get the sack | sack someone ____
4 fire someone | dismiss someone ____
5 prospects | chances of success ____
6 hand in your notice | resign ____
7 be sacked | be promoted ____
8 transfer sb | move sb to another office ____
9 make someone redundant | fire someone ____

2 Complete the sentences with a single word.

ABOUT YOU

▶ I was glad to be appointed to the job I have. (*chosen for the job*)
1 My job's very ____. (*difficult but interesting*)
2 I want to transfer to another ____. (*section of the business*)
3 I have good ____ in my job. (*chances of success*)
4 I'd really love to be ____. (*given a better job in the company*)
5 I'm bored at work, so I'm going to look ____. (*in another place*)
6 I've never been ____. (*out of work*)
7 I'd hate to have to ____ someone. (*dismiss*)
8 If I hated my job, I would definitely ____. (*hand in my notice*)

3 ABOUT YOU Have you got a job? If so, are the sentences in Exercise 2 true for you? Write true or false, or talk to another student who has a job.

www.hellooteacher.ir

B A job with responsibility

KATE Amy, I know you work on reception at the sports centre, but what does that **involve**?

AMY Well, I **handle** all customer bookings, and answer **enquiries** over the phone or **face-to-face**. Occasionally I also have to **deal with complaints** from **members of the public**, and if there's a problem, I'm the one who has to **solve** it.

KATE So it's not just **clerical duties**, then?

AMY Oh, no. Some weekends I'm **in charge of** the whole centre, and in an emergency it's my job to **make sure** that everyone is safe. I have a lot of **responsibility**.

Glossary

what does (your job) involve?	= what do you have to do (in your job)?
handle sth/sb	take suitable action in a situation. SYN **deal with sth/sb**.
enquiry	a question about sth (**make an enquiry**).
face-to-face	with and looking at sb.
complaint	a statement that you are not satisfied with sth (**make a complaint**). **complain** v.
members of the public	people in general (also **the public**).
solve a problem	find an answer to a problem. SYN **find a solution**.
clerical	connected with office work, especially keeping records or accounts (the person who does this is a **clerk**).
duties	the tasks you do when you are at work.
in charge of sth/sb	in a position of control over sth/sb. SYN **responsible for sb/sth**.
make sure	check sth so that you can be certain about it.
responsibility	the fact or duty of being in control of sth, so that it is your fault if sth goes wrong.

4 One word is missing in each line. Rewrite the sentences, adding the missing word.

▶ does her job involve? What does her job involve?

1 I'd like to an enquiry about the club. _____

2 I talked to her to-face. _____

3 It's very hard to deal this situation. _____

4 Who's charge of this department? _____

5 You have to sure the door is locked. _____

6 We're not responsible the cleaning. _____

7 Do you know how to the problem? _____

8 I want to a complaint about the service. _____

5 Complete the texts.

A I used to have a boring office job – I was a ▶ clerk in the civil service for five years, but I couldn't stand it and left. I've now got a job in a tourist information office in Liverpool and I really like it. My (1) d_____ include helping people to find accommodation, dealing with their (2) e_____ about places to visit, and finding (3) s_____ to their travel problems. I'm also (4) r_____ for the Beatles tour: I take people to John Lennon and Paul McCartney's childhood homes. I try to make (5) s_____ everything goes well.

B I work in a travel agent's, and my job (6) i_____ organizing trips for people. I love meeting the (7) p_____ and I really enjoy (8) h_____ the money side of things. Some of my work is just routine (9) c_____ work; other times, I have a lot of (10) r_____. For example, if a customer's holiday goes wrong, I have to (11) d_____ with their (12) c_____.

6 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

54 I can describe working conditions

Job questionnaire

1 Do you feel your job is **stressful**?

2 How much **time off** do you **get** every year?

3 Do you ever have to do **shift work**?

4 Do you often have to **work overtime**?

5 Do you normally receive an annual **bonus**?

6 **Are you entitled to sick pay**?

7 Do you **have the right to** join a **trade union**?

8 Do people in your kind of job ever **go on strike**?

spotlight *time off*

If you **have**, **get**, or **take time off**, you are not at work, school, etc. perhaps because you're ill, or on holiday.
*I **had a day off** to go to a wedding.*
*He's **taking** a month **off work**.*

Glossary

working conditions	the arrangements made at a place of work for physical comfort and safety.
stressful	making you worry a lot. **stress** N.
shift work	a pattern of work in which you sometimes work during the day and sometimes at night.
overtime	the time you spend working after your normal working hours (you can **work overtime** or **do overtime** INF).
bonus	an extra payment that is added to what you normally receive.
sick pay	money you receive when you are ill and cannot work.
be entitled to (do) sth	be allowed sth or to do sth because it is the law. SYN **have the right to (do) sth.**
union OR **trade union**	an organization of people in the same kind of work who try to get better pay and working conditions for their members.
go on strike	refuse to work for a period of time as a protest for more money, better conditions, etc.

1 Complete the words.

▶ I often do sh i f t work.
1 I belong to a t ____ union.
2 We went on st ____ last year.
3 Do you get an annual b ____ s?
4 Our w ____ ing c ____ itions are good.
5 I often have to work o ____ time.
6 She t ____ two weeks o ____ in summer.
7 Does he suffer from st ____ in his job?

2 Write the words in the correct order, and add the final word.

▶ you / working / have / good / do Do you have good working conditions?
1 is / she / trade / member / a / of / a / ? _____
2 we / sick / are / to / entitled / ? _____
3 take / like / to / I'd / week / a . _____
4 you / shift / don't / why / like / ? _____
5 I / left / today; / time / on / didn't / I / do . _____
6 go / why / the / on / did / workers / ? _____

3 ABOUT YOU If you have a job, write your answers to the questionnaire. If you haven't got a job, ask a student who has.

4 Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. Say the words.

www.hellooteacher.ir

Review: Work and study

Unit 49

1 Rewrite the sentences using the words on the right. The meaning must stay the same.

▶ I'm a careful driver. CAREFULLY I drive carefully.
1 You have to do what he tells you. INSTRUCTIONS .....
2 Don't talk to anyone. COMMUNICATE .....
3 The way you think and behave is important. ATTITUDE .....
4 It was a relief to finish the exam. RELIEVED .....
5 Spend ten minutes making notes. DEVOTE .....
6 He would never do anything dishonest in an exam. CHEAT .....
7 If you don't get what you want, try again. SUCCEED .....
8 Do we need dictionaries? ESSENTIAL .....

Unit 50

1 Tick (✓) the words or phrases that are correct.

▶ At university, students have to *attend lectures* ☑ *read widely* ☑ *teach professors* ☐.
1 A *tutor* ☐ *seminar* ☐ *lecture* ☐ is a type of class at a university.
2 Some students live and study *at home* ☐ *homesick* ☐ *away from home* ☐.
3 *Undergraduates* ☐ *Professors* ☐ *Tutors* ☐ are types of teacher.
4 In order to have enough money, students often *pay tuition fees* ☐ *take out a loan* ☐ *try to get a scholarship* ☐.
5 In seminars, students may *have a debate* ☐ *take notes* ☐ *write a thesis* ☐.

2 One word is missing in each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end.

▶ I won't have enough money to live on, so I'll have to / out a loan. take
1 Our seminar started time at 10.00. .....
2 My sister is studying away from home and she's living in a hall residence. .....
3 How much were the tuition for your summer course? .....
4 We had to hurry but we arrived just time for the beginning of the lecture. .....
5 At the moment, she's some medical research as part of her studies. .....
6 I would like to have the to study abroad, perhaps in Canada. .....
7 When I was at university, our essays were all part of the continuous. .....
8 Do you study away home? .....

Unit 51

1 There is a spelling mistake in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.

▶ Do you need a referrence? reference
1 Is there a job vacancie? .....
2 Did they give you any advise? .....
3 Did he acknowlege the application? .....
4 I haven't got a valide work permit. .....
5 They asess people differently. .....

www.hellooteacher.ir

6 Do they reqire more information? _____
7 They reply automaticly. _____
8 It's a long selection prosess. _____

2 Complete the dialogue.

A You know that job ▶ vacancy . Did you (1) _____ for it?
B Yes, and I went for an (2)_____ on Wednesday.
A Wow. How did it go?
B It seemed OK, but they didn't give me any (3)_____ afterwards, so it's hard to know. They said they'd (4)_____ me by the end of the week if they were going to offer me the job.
A What about (5) _____ ?
B They said they'd already spoken to one of my referees.
A Oh really? And were there many other (6) _____ ?
B Yes, over a hundred. I'm not sure if I want the job because it's based (7) _____ Scotland. Still, at least I don't need a work (8) _____ .

Unit 52

1 Tick (✓) the correct words.

▶ *A plumber* ☑ *A nanny* ☐ *An electrician* ☑ often installs things.
1 *A carpenter* ☐ *A travel agent* ☐ *A plumber* ☐ gets his hands dirty.
2 *A nanny* ☐ *A plumber* ☐ *An importer* ☐ looks after people.
3 *A civil servant* ☐ *A carpenter* ☐ *An estate agent* ☐ usually works in an office.
4 *An electrician* ☐ *A sales rep* ☐ *A mechanic* ☐ often has to repair things.
5 *A sales rep* ☐ *A civil servant* ☐ *A travel agent* ☐ wants to sell you something.
6 *A plumber* ☐ *An estate agent* ☐ *A carpenter* ☐ has had a lot of technical training.

2 Complete the dialogues.

▶ Miguel produces his own magazine. ~ Really? And how long has he worked in publishing ?
1 Dr Erman seems very good, but how much _____ does he have? ~ Oh, I think he's been in the medical _____ for about ten years now.
2 Who made all the travel _____ for your last holiday? ~ My wife did, but that's her job; she's a travel _____ .
3 How long has your father been a civil _____ ? ~ Thirty-five years. He's spent his whole _____ in the civil _____ .
4 Did the company give you much _____ after you started? ~ Yes, they sent me on several courses, and I took exams to get extra _____ .
5 What kind of _____ does she sell? ~ Electrical stuff mostly, but she's only been a sales _____ for six months.

Unit 53

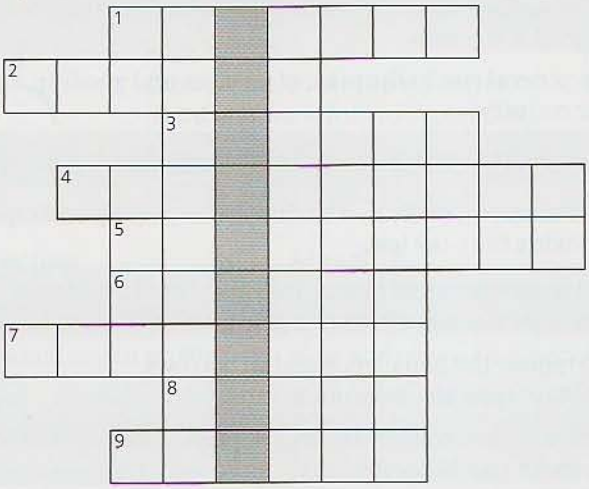
1 Complete the text using words from the box in the correct form.

clerk ✓ transfer charge responsibility involve challenging
resign complaints elsewhere promote work deal

www.hellooteacher.ir

When I left school, I got a job as a ▶ clerk with an insurance company. It mainly (1) ..... filling in forms and typing lists of names, so it wasn't very (2) ..... . After a few months, though, I was (3) ..... and they gave me a job where I was (4) ..... with the public, which was much more interesting. Eventually, I was (5) ..... to another department where I had to handle customers' (6) ..... , which wasn't much fun. I hated it so I decided to (7) ..... and look (8) ..... . In fact, that was rather stupid of me, because I was out of (9) ..... for several months. Anyway, in the end I got a fantastic job working in a zoo, and I'm still here. I'm in (10) ..... of the snakes, which is an enormous (11) ..... but I love it!

2 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares spell out another word. What is it?



1 choose someone for a job
2 something you get when you have been helpful or worked hard
3 if you resign, you hand in your .....
4 out of work
5 chances of being successful in the future
6 the tasks you do when you are at work
7 connected with office work, such as keeping records and doing accounts
8 find a solution to a problem
9 deal with something or control it

The letters in the grey squares make the word ..... .

Unit 54

1 Complete the words in the sentences.

▶ She's been very ill, but she doesn't get any sick pay .....
1 He always looks worried because he has such a s..... job.
2 Everyone has the r..... to a lunch break – it's the law.
3 I don't belong to a t..... u..... any longer.
4 Are you e..... to sick pay in your job?
5 I often have to work nights, but I don't really like s..... work.
6 Bus drivers have a basic 35-hour week, but many of them work o..... .
7 A lot of people get an annual b..... in addition to their salaries.
8 Some of the workers went on s..... last year for higher pay.

www.hellooteacher.ir

55 I can talk about finance

A Financial terms

Example	Meaning
We need to **raise capital.**	**capital** the money you need to start a business (to **raise capital** is to find the money you need).
The company has an **annual turnover** of $20 million.	**turnover** the total value of goods or services that a company sells in a particular period of time (**annual** = every year). SYN **sales revenue.**
Operating costs have gone up this year.	**operating costs** the amount of money that a business needs to spend to continue as a business.
Inflation is now at 3 per cent.	**inflation** a general rise in the price of services and goods in a particular country.
We paid £1 million **in tax.**	**tax** money you have to pay to the government.
The company **made a pre-tax profit** of £2 million.	**profit** the money you make in a business after paying costs (**pre-tax** is before paying tax). OPP **loss.**
I think the company has **cash flow problems.**	**cash flow** the movement of money into and out of a business (a **cash flow problem** means more money is going out than coming in).
I need a **bank loan.** They **took out** a loan.	**bank loan** money the bank lends and sb borrows. **take out** obtain (you also **take out** insurance).
We **pay** a lot of **interest.** The **interest rate** is 4 per cent.	**interest** extra money you pay when you borrow money (the **interest rate** is the exact cost of borrowing).

1 Match 1–8 with a–i.

▶	annual f	a	a loan
1	operating ___	b	revenue
2	pay ___	c	rate
3	raise ___	d	a profit
4	interest ___	e	costs
5	take out ___	f	turnover ✓
6	sales ___	g	capital
7	make ___	h	flow
8	cash ___	i	10% interest

spotlight *finance*

Finance can be:
1 the money somebody borrows or receives to operate a business (*They need to raise more **finance**.*). **finance** v.
OR
2 the activity of managing money in a company. **financial** ADJ. (*He's the new Director of **Finance** / **Financial** Director.*)

2 Complete the sentences.

▶ We can't start the business unless we can raise more capital.
1 If sales continue to rise, the annual _____ could reach five million euros.
2 If we spend more money this month, we'll have a cash _____ problem.
3 The current interest _____ is 5 per cent.
4 It's been a good year; we've made a pre- _____ _____ of $3.5 m.
5 _____ has gone up this year because of the increase in the price of oil.
6 They needed more money so they _____ _____ another bank _____ .
7 We usually make a profit, but if operating _____ go up, we may make a _____ this year.
8 They need the loan to _____ the new business.

3 Test yourself. Look at the examples and cover the meanings. What do the examples mean?

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Financial trends

A **trend** is the general direction in which a situation is changing.

Trend	Common verbs + examples	Common nouns + examples
↑	**go up, rise, increase, grow** *Prices have **risen** by 10 per cent.*	**rise, increase, growth** *We saw some **growth** last year.*
↓	**go down, fall, drop** *Interest rates **fell** last month.*	**fall, drop** *There's been a **drop in** sales.*
→	**remain unchanged/stable** SYN **stay the same** *Prices have **remained unchanged**.*	**stability** *There has been **stability** in the markets.*
↓ ⌒	**peak** *Sales **peaked** in the **third quarter**.* (**third quarter** = July to September)	**peak** *Sales **reached a peak** in 2007.*
~↗	**fluctuate** *Sales have **fluctuated** all year.*	**fluctuation** *There has been some **fluctuation** in prices.*

Adjective	Meaning	Adverb
a **slight** rise in costs	very small.	*Costs rose **slightly**.*
a **gradual** rise in profits	slow and over a long period of time.	*Profits have risen **gradually**.*
a **steady** increase in the interest rate	slow but regular and continuing.	*The interest rate has increased **steadily**.*
a **significant** fall in profits	noticeable and important.	*Profits fell **significantly**.*
a **sharp** fall in sales	very large and sudden.	*Sales have fallen **sharply**.*

4 Complete the sentences on the right. The meaning must stay the same.

▶	There has been a sharp fall in sales.	Sales have fallen sharply .
1	There was significant growth in sales.	Sales _____ .
2	There was a gradual rise in the price.	The price _____ _____ .
3	There was a slight fall in profits.	Profits _____ _____ .
4	There has been stability in costs.	Costs have remained _____ .
5	There has been a steady rise in sales.	Sales have _____ _____ .

5 Complete the text. Use a different word each time.

Last year started well. In the first quarter sales ▶ increased significantly. The second quarter was even better: sales increased (1) _____. They continued to (2) _____ steadily in the third quarter and reached a (3) _____ at 90,000. By the end of September, sales had (4) _____ up (5) _____ almost 50 per cent. In the last quarter there was a slight (6) _____, but it was still a good year. This year has been very different. Sales (7) _____ in the first half of the year – up one month and down the next – but in the last three months they have remained (8) _____.

6 Look at the arrows and complete the sentences.

▶	There was a →	slight fall	in 2003.
1	Sales →	_____ _____	in 2004.
2	There was a ↗	_____ _____	in 2005.
3	Sales →	_____ _____	in 2006.
4	In 2007, sales →	_____ _____	.
5	In 2008, sales ↘	_____ _____	

www.hellooteacher.ir

56 I can talk about companies Do Unit 55 first

A Setting up a business

Setting up a business is a **risk**. Twenty per cent of new businesses **fail** within twelve months; fifty per cent **go out of business** in three years. It may be because of poor **quality** services or **goods**, or one of these common mistakes:

- **inadequate market research**
- poor control over **suppliers** and customers
- being **over**-ambitious and **over**-optimistic
- poor management of **stock** and **assets**
- inadequate knowledge of **rivals**
- **employing** the wrong people

spotlight **Prefixes *over-* and *under-***

As prefixes, **over-** usually means *too much* and **under-** means *too little*.
*He **overcharged** us.* (He made us pay too much.)
*Companies often **overestimate** sales figures.* (Companies think that sales figures will be larger than they are.) OPP **underestimate**.
With adjectives, they may be followed by a hyphen, e.g. **over-ambitious**.

Glossary

set up a business start a business.
risk the possibility that sth bad may happen in the future. **risky** ADJ.
fail (about a business) be unable to continue. SYN **go out of business**.
quality the good or bad condition or character of sth compared with similar things.
goods (PL) things that are made to be sold.
inadequate not sufficient; not good enough. OPP **adequate**.
market research the study of what people want to buy and why.
supplier a company that provides sth for another company. **supply** V.
stock everything a company has for sale at any particular time.
asset a thing of value that a person or company owns (e.g. a factory).
rival a person or company that competes with another. SYN **competitor**.
employ sb give sb a job (an **employer** is sb who does this; an **employee** is sb who works for an employer). SYN **take sb on** INT.

1 Circle things in this list that you can own or sell.

competitor business employee asset market rival goods supplier stock quality

2 Complete the sentences. The meaning must be the same as in the sentences on the left.

▶	This business is risky.	This business is a risk.
1	When did she start the business?	When did she set ____ ?
2	Why did the business fail?	Why did they go out ____ ?
3	We are the main company that supplies them.	We are their main ____ .
4	Their products aren't very good.	Their products are of poor ____ .
5	Do you still employ him?	Are you still his ____ ?
6	When did you employ her?	When did you take ____ ?

3 What mistakes do businesses make? Complete the sentences using words from the box.

rivals optimistic research assets estimates employs suppliers ✓

▶ The company doesn't have effective controls over its customers or its suppliers.
1 The company doesn't carry out adequate market ____ .
2 The company is poor at managing its stock and its ____ .
3 The company doesn't have a very good knowledge of its ____ .
4 The company ____ the wrong people.
5 The company is over-____ , and it over-____ what it can achieve.

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Growth

The first years may be a **struggle**, but if a company can **survive** this difficult period, it may develop into a successful business:

- customer numbers grow and the company **gains a share** of the **market**
- turnover increases – the company **breaks even**
- the **brand** develops a **reputation**
- the company needs more capital and may sell **shares** to the public to obtain the finance
- eventually this growth may result in the company being **taken over**

spotlight ***market***

The **market** is the amount of buying and selling of a particular type of goods, e.g. *There is a large **market** for these computers.*

It also refers to an area or group of people who buy something, e.g. *the European **market**, the teenage **market**.*

The **market leader** is the company with the biggest share of a market.

Glossary

growth	the process of increasing in size or number. **grow** V.
struggle	a period of action to achieve sth difficult. SYN **effort**. **struggle** V.
survive	continue to exist in a difficult situation. **survival** N.
gain sth	obtain sth. OPP **lose sth**.
share	a part of sth that has been divided.
break even	not make a profit or a loss.
brand	the name under which one or more products are sold, e.g. 'Nike'.
reputation	the opinion that people have about sth (it can be good or bad).
shares	(USU PL) units of equal value that a company is divided into and which are then sold to raise money (the buyers then own part of the company).
take over a company	take control of another company. **takeover** N.

4 Complete the sentences. The meaning must be the same as in the sentences on the left.

▶	Will they continue to grow?	Will there be continued growth ?
1	Will they take it over?	Will there be a _____ ?
2	People say the company is very good.	The company has a very good _____ .
3	They won't make a profit or a loss.	They will _____ .
4	It's the biggest company in the market.	It's the market _____ .
5	Are you worried they may not survive?	Are you worried about their _____ ?
6	They've survived, but it's been difficult.	They've survived, but it's been a _____ .

5 Complete the sentences.

▶ It's been a struggle, but I think the business will survive .

1 The company now has a 10 per cent _____ of the market.
2 I bought 1,000 _____ in that company. They are now worth over £10,000.
3 People go on buying the same _____ of breakfast cereal because it's familiar.
4 There has been considerable _____ in the soft drinks _____ : up 25 per cent in two years.
5 I think the company may be _____ over by the end of the year.
6 It's been a good year: we've _____ another 5 per cent of the market.

6 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

57 I can describe a successful business

GECKO HEADGEAR Ltd is a designer and **manufacturer** of safety helmets for use at sea. The company was **founded** in 1993 by Jeff Sacree and it started by selling surfboards. However, surfing is a seasonal business, and Jeff realized he needed to **diversify**. Fortunately, he was able to **exploit a gap in the market**.

'As a **surfer**[1], I could see the **potential** for a light helmet that gave protection and **retained** heat.' He made one and sold a few to other surfers. He then **did** some **research** and discovered that men who worked in lifeboats might also be interested in his helmet. It would have to be **adapted** for their use, and for that he needed **investment**: he took out a bank loan and employed more staff. 'A good relationship with the bank is **crucial** if you're developing an **innovative** product. In our **case** the process took three years.'

After the **contract** to supply helmets for the lifeboats was successful, Jeff developed different types of helmet for different uses, and has always used customer **feedback** to **refine** the product.

'**Partnerships** with suppliers have also been a **key factor** in our success. We've worked closely with different manufacturers, and this has helped us to **keep ahead** of rivals.'

safety helmet

lifeboat

surfer[1]

Glossary

manufacturer • a person or company that makes things using machines. **manufacture** v. SYNS **producer**, **produce** v.

found sth • start an organization (the person is the **founder**).

diversify • introduce a wider range of products.

exploit sth • make the best possible use of sth. **exploitation** N.

a gap in the market • an opportunity to create a new product, which has not been produced by other companies.

potential • the ability to develop into sth or sth better in the future.

retain sth • keep or continue to have sth. **retention** N.

do research • do a careful study of sth to find out more information.

investment • the activity of putting money into sth, hoping that you will make more money as a result. **invest in sth** v.

crucial • very important.

innovative • introducing new ideas. **innovate** v. **innovation** N.

case • situation.

contract • a written legal agreement (a person **signs a contract**).

feedback • information and comments from people who have used sth.

partnership • a relationship between two people or organizations.

key • very important.

factor • one of the things that influences a decision or affects a situation.

keep ahead (of sb) • stay in front of sb.

spotlight Verbs of change

To alter sth means to change sth, but not completely.
*We've had to **alter** our plans.*
To adapt sth means to change sth so you can use it in a different situation.
*We've **adapted** the product for the Asian market.*
To refine sth means to change sth a little to make it better.
*They have **refined** the products over several years.*

www.hellooteacher.ir

1 Answer these questions (you may need to read the text again).

▶ What is Gecko Headgear? A company that manufactures safety helmets.
1 When was it founded? _____
2 Why did Jeff need to diversify? _____
3 What qualities did the helmet have to have?
a) it had to be light b) _____
c) _____
4 How did Jeff discover that men in lifeboats were potential users? _____
5 How did he get the money for extra staff? _____
6 What does he say about the relationship with a bank? _____
7 What information has he used to refine the products? _____
8 What was a key factor in his success? _____

2 Rearrange the letters on the left to make words. Use the definitions to help you.

▶ ROTACF factor one of the things that influences a situation
1 TOCCARNT _____ a written legal agreement
2 NATERI _____ keep or continue to have something
3 RUCCLIA _____ very important
4 EFKABEDC _____ comments from people who use something
5 VINONTEA _____ introduce new ideas
6 REDYFIVIS _____ introduce a wider range of products
7 PERITNSARPH _____ a relationship between two organizations
8 LOPENITAT _____ the ability to develop into something

3 Circle the correct answer(s). Sometimes both answers are correct.

▶ We have to keep ahead of/retain our competitors.
1 His company has the ability to exploit/alter the market more fully.
2 They are the main producers/manufacturers.
3 It's only a small business now, but it has the feedback/potential to be very successful.
4 If we can't use the product like that, we may have to exploit/adapt it.
5 It was a key/crucial factor in the decision.
6 She invested/founded the company ten years ago.
7 They don't have enough money; they need more research/investment.
8 We may have to alter/adapt the product.

4 Complete the sentences.

▶ We may have to alter a few things to get the product exactly as we want it.
1 They were lucky because they saw a _____ in the market.
2 Some people take out a loan. In my _____ I borrowed money from my parents.
3 They are one of the leading _____ of washing machines in this country.
4 If we want to find out, we'll have to do more _____ .
5 How much money did she _____ in the company?
6 Innovation helps a company to keep _____ of its competitors.
7 They can't change their minds now: they've signed the _____ .
8 We must _____ our most important customers. We can't afford to lose them.
9 Profit was not a big _____ in my decision to invest in the company.
10 It's only one product and it's very limited; the company needs to _____ .

5 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

58 I can discuss marketing

A The basis of marketing

Marketing is the activity of presenting, **advertising**, and selling a company's products. To do that, you need to understand the company's **strengths** and **weaknesses**, and be aware of possible **opportunities** and **threats**. This is called a 'SWOT analysis':

Strengths, e.g. specialist **skills** in the company

Weaknesses, e.g. **limited** financial **resources**

Opportunities, e.g. increased **demand** for a product from a particular market **sector**

Threats, e.g. a **downturn** in the economy, **reducing** overall demand

spotlight *skill*

Skill (U) is the ability to do something well, usually needing practice. **skilful** ADJ. You often need a particular **skill** (C) for a job. **skilled** ADJ. OPP **unskilled**.
*He has the right management **skills**.*
*She's a **skilful** negotiator.*
*We had a number of highly **skilled** workers.*

Glossary

advertising the activity of telling people about a product to try to make them buy it. **advertise** V.
strength a good quality or feature. OPP **weakness**.
opportunity a situation in which it is possible to achieve sth.
threat a possible danger or problem.
limited small in number or amount. OPP **unlimited**.
resources (USU PL) the supply of sth that you need, such as money or skills.
demand (for sth) the need for sth from a particular group of people.
sector a part of an economy, society, or area of activity.
downturn a time when an economy or industry is weaker than normal. OPP **upturn**.
reduce sth make sth less or smaller. OPP **increase sth. reduction** N.

1 Good news or bad news for the company? Write G or B.

▶ Limited demand B
1 A number of opportunities. ____
2 They have a lot of skilled workers. ____
3 There are a number of threats. ____
4 Unlimited financial resources. ____
5 A reduction in demand. ____
6 An upturn in the economy. ____

2 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a single word. The meaning must stay the same.

▶ We only have a <u>small</u> number of products available at the moment. limited
1 There is a lot of competition in this <u>part</u> of the market. ____
2 There isn't much <u>need</u> for beach umbrellas in the winter. ____
3 They have a number of <u>good qualities</u>. ____
4 There is another company in the market, which could be a real <u>danger</u>. ____
5 Do we have the <u>money and skills</u> to make this product? ____

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ New markets in Asia could be a great opportunity for us.
1 If you work with advanced technology, you need people with the right ____.
2 More people will know about the product if we ____ it on TV.
3 Is there still a growing ____ for mobile phones?
4 If there is more competition, we may have to ____ the price.
5 First we must analyse our strengths and ____.

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Developing a marketing strategy

Useful marketing tips

- Don't **assume** you know what your customers want
- **Target** the 20 per cent of your customers who provide 80 per cent of your profit
- Don't **ignore** the competition, and be ready to **respond to** it
- Don't try to compete on price alone: think about quality, reliability, etc.
- You need to **gather** reliable **data** to make accurate market **forecasts**
- You need to have **realistic objectives**
- Don't forget to **evaluate** your strategy; and if something isn't working, change it.

Glossary

strategy	a plan you make in order to achieve sth.
tip	a piece of advice.
assume sth	accept or believe sth is true without proof **assumption** N.
target sb	decide on the people you want to sell to (your **target market**).
ignore sb/sth	pay no attention to sb/sth.
respond to sb/sth	say or do sth as an answer to sb/sth. **response** N.
gather sth	bring many things together, e.g. information or data.
data	facts or information.
forecast	a statement saying what will happen in the future. **forecast** V.
realistic	sensible, and based on what is possible in a particular situation.
objective	sth you are trying to achieve. SYN **goal/aim.**
evaluate sth	study the facts then form an opinion of sth.

4 Cover the glossary, then match 1–5 with a–f.

▶	respond d	a	pay no attention to something
1	assume ____	b	choose somebody you want to sell to
2	evaluate ____	c	bring many things together
3	ignore ____	d	say or do something as an answer ✓
4	gather ____	e	study the facts and then form an opinion
5	target ____	f	accept or believe something without proof

5 Complete the dialogues without repeating the same words.

▶ Did she know it was true? ~ No, she just assumed it.
1 Do they have a plan for this? ~ Yes, they've got a _____
2 He doesn't have an aim. ~ No, he needs an _____ .
3 Has he replied to you? ~ No, there's been no _____ .
4 Do they have the information? ~ Yes, they've gathered all the _____ .
5 Is it a sensible forecast? ~ Yes, I think it's quite _____ .
6 Was it good advice? ~ Yes, it was a very useful _____ .

6 Complete the sentences.

▶ We contacted them, but so far they haven't responded .
1 They got into trouble because they _____ all their competitors.
2 Have they given you a sales _____ for next year?
3 We don't know if they're competing for this contract, but we _____ they are.
4 The company has decided to _____ the youth market next year.
5 We've _____ all the information together. Now we need to evaluate it.

7 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Can you remember the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

Review: Business

Unit 55

1 Find eleven more 'money' words or phrases. (You can go across and down.)

C	P	C	O	S	T	B	C
A	R	L	P	T	E	A	A
S	O	O	G	U	S	N	P
H	F	A	T	R	H	K	I
F	I	N	A	N	C	E	T
L	T	Y	L	O	S	S	A
O	T	A	X	V	D	I	L
W	R	E	V	E	N	U	E
I	N	T	E	R	E	S	T

2 Replace the underlined words with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.

▶ Sales went down quite a lot. Sales fell significantly .
1 The price went up a little. The price ..... .
2 The price went down a lot. The price ..... .
3 Last year the price stayed the same. Last year the price ..... .
4 Sales went down from $3 m to $2 m. Sales ..... $1 m.
5 Sales went up and down. Sales ..... .
6 Last year there was a very small rise. Last year there was a ..... .

Unit 56

1 Good news or bad news for the company? Write G or B.

▶ They went out of business. B
1 They're gaining a share of the market. .....
2 They're struggling. .....
3 They're taking a lot of risks. .....
4 They have valuable assets. .....
5 There are more rivals. .....
6 They're taking people on. .....
7 Their shares are going up. .....

2 Complete the list of company objectives using words from the box.

quality risks set up ✓ market shares growth rivals even reputation

▶ Set up the business by the end of the year.
1 In our first year we aim to break ..... .
2 In years 2 to 5, we want to see continued ..... in our profit.
3 We don't want to take too many ..... .
4 We have to watch our ..... very closely.
5 We want our products to be of the highest ..... .
6 Within three years we want a 10 to 15 per cent share of the ..... .
7 We want the company to develop a good ..... .
8 Within five years we would like to sell ..... to the public.

www.hellooteacher.ir

Unit 57

1 Match verbs 1–8 with definitions a–i.

▶ refine i
1 retain ____
2 manufacture ____
3 innovate ____
4 invest ____
5 alter ____
6 found ____
7 exploit ____
8 diversify ____

a change something but not completely
b put money into something
c make the best possible use of something
d start a business/organization
e keep or continue to have something
f introduce a wider range of products
g introduce new ideas
h make things using machines
i change something a little to make it better ✓

2 Replace the underlined words with a single word that has the same meaning.

▶ You have to try to keep in front of others. ahead
1 The introduction of new ideas was crucial. ____
2 It was a very important decision. ____
3 We did a careful study to find the best product. ____
4 My partners were prepared to put money in the company. ____
5 They signed a written legal agreement. ____
6 I knew the product had the possibility to become better. ____
7 We try to get information and comments on our products. ____
8 They wanted to introduce a wider range of products. ____

Unit 58

1 Find eight more pairs of words in the box that have a similar meaning.

small ✓ danger advice ability plan aim reply data need threat
information response limited ✓ strategy tip objective skill demand

▶ small / limited ____ / ____ ____ / ____
____ / ____ ____ / ____ ____ / ____
____ / ____ ____ / ____ ____ / ____

2 Complete the words in each sentence.

▶ Developing a marketing strategy .
1 Analyse the company's s____ and w____ .
2 Analyse the o____ for the company and the threats.
3 Make sure to g____ reliable market d____ .
4 Don't a____ you know what your customers want.
5 Make sure you have realistic o____ .
6 Don't i____ your competitors.
7 Try to make accurate and reliable f____ for future sales.
8 Remember to e____ your marketing strategy to see if it is working.

www.hellooteacher.ir

59 I can express probability

Next week in the life of **pessimistic** Pamela, aged 15

Sunday: I'm going to a barbecue next Saturday. I'll **definitely** see Max (the boy I **fancy**).

Monday: My best friend Sarah said she's going. She's **bound to** speak to him first, and she's prettier than me, so Max is more **likely to** fancy her.

Tuesday: I've got nothing to wear – I **doubt if** he'll even notice me.

Wednesday: If he does speak to me, I **expect** he'll think I'm stupid.

Thursday: I've heard there's another party on Saturday – Max **might** go there instead.

Friday: There's **a good chance** it'll rain tomorrow. The barbecue will be a **disaster**.

Saturday: Woke up with a **spot** on my face – I'm definitely not going.

Glossary

pessimistic always believing bad things will happen. OPP **optimistic**.

definitely certainly; for sure.

fancy sb INF be attracted to sb.

bound to do sth If sb is **bound to do sth**, they will almost certainly do it.

likely to do sth If sb is **likely to do sth**, they will probably do it. OPP **unlikely to do sth**.

doubt (**if/that ...**) If you **doubt if** or **that** sth will happen, you think it probably won't happen.

expect sth think or believe sth will happen.

might used to say that sth is possible. SYN **may**.

a chance a possibility (**a good chance** is a more than 50 per cent possibility).

disaster INF If sth is a **disaster**, it is terrible.

spot an unpleasant red or yellow mark on the skin (teenagers have them).

1 Complete the definitions.

▶ If something is a disaster, it is terrible.
1 If something is bound to happen, it will _____ certainly happen.
2 If something is likely to take place, it will _____ take place.
3 If something might happen, you can also say that it _____ happen.
4 If there's a chance that something will happen, it means it is _____ that it will happen.
5 If you expect something to happen, it means you _____ it will happen.
6 If you think that something is unlikely, it means it is _____ not going to happen.
7 If you doubt that something will happen, it means you _____ think it is going to happen.
8 If you are pessimistic, you always believe that _____ things will happen.

2 A friend is taking an exam next week. Will she pass? Look at the percentage (%) on the right and write sentences with a similar meaning. Don't use the verb ***think***.

		PASS?
▶	She'll definitely pass.	100% yes
1	_____	95% yes
2	_____	75% yes
3	_____	50% yes
4	_____	25% yes
5	_____	100% no

3 ABOUT YOU Use the vocabulary to write sentences about your life next week.

www.hellooteacher.ir

60 I can explain similarities and differences

Labradors

In looks, Boss and Sam are almost **identical except that** Sam is a bit bigger. Jake and Boss are **similar except for** their colour. The **similarity between** Sam and Jake is that they both have large ears. In character though, they're not **alike**. **Compared with** Jake and Boss, Sam is very lazy. In fact, he's **completely different** from the other two, **apart from** the fact that he's **greedy** – all labradors are greedy given the opportunity. With the other two, **the main difference** is that Boss is rather quiet in **comparison with** Jake.

Boss Sam Jake

Glossary

identical without a single difference. SYN **exactly the same.**
except not including sb/sth (**except that** + clause or **except for** + noun).
similar (**to sb/sth**) like sb/sth but not the same. **similarity** N (a **similarity between** things).
alike very similar (don't use **alike** before a noun).
completely different different in every way.
apart from sb/sth SYN **except for sb/sth.**
greedy wanting to take more than you need (usually food).
the main difference the most important difference.

spotlight *compare* V, *comparison* N

When you **compare** people or things, you say how they are different.
*If you **compare** dogs **and/with** cats, dogs are usually more greedy.*
***Compared with/to** dogs, cats are very clean.*
***In comparison with** dogs, cats are more independent.*

1 Replace the underlined words with a different word or phrase with the same meaning.

▶ Barley is <u>like</u> my other dog. similar to
1 She's very tall <u>compared</u> with Elena. _____
2 I liked all of them <u>except for</u> the blue one. _____
3 The two boys aren't <u>very similar</u>. _____
4 The <u>most important</u> difference is colour. _____
5 Poland is very big <u>in comparison</u> with Hungary. _____
6 The twins are <u>exactly the same</u>. _____

2 Complete the sentences.

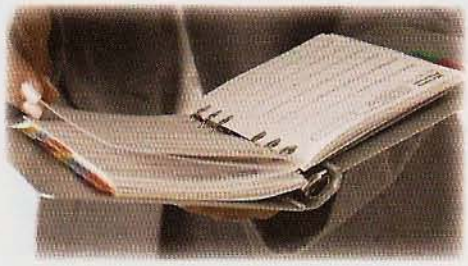
▶ If you compare the two books, it's amazing how different they are.
1 She is very _____ to her mother; they both laugh all the time.
2 _____ with his last album, the new one's a bit boring.
3 There is a _____ between the two tables: they're both made of the same wood.
4 This chair is like the one in your bedroom, _____ that this one's a bit softer.
5 Max always tries to eat his brother's food as well as his own; he's a _____ dog.
6 Some people say my brother and I are _____, but I think we're _____ different.
7 I didn't like the film, _____ from the ending, which was great.
8 The main _____ between the two students is that Carlo has better pronunciation.

3 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write sentences about the similarities and differences between two members of your family or two cities in your country.

www.hellooteacher.ir

61 I can make arrangements to meet

A Mike, we need to talk about the project.
Can we **get together** next week? = meet
B Yes, sure.
A **Can you make it** on Monday morning, **say**? = Are you able to come? = for instance / for example
B No, I'm not **available** then. = **free** to see you
How about Tuesday afternoon? = **What about** . . .?
A I'd like to, but **I'm afraid** = I'm sorry, but . . .
I'm **tied up** then. = busy
Can we make it Friday morning **instead**? = **as an alternative**
B **I'm supposed to** see Jo then, = **I'm meant to**
but I think I can **postpone** that. = **put** that **off**
I'll **confirm it with you** tonight. = tell you definitely / for sure
A Great, well, I'll wait to hear from you.



Glossary

How about ...? is ... suitable? SYN **What about ...?**
instead (**of sth**) in the place of sth (e.g. *We could take the train, or we could hire a car* ***instead.***). SYN **as an alternative.**
postpone sth decide that sth you had planned will happen at a later time. SYN **put sth off.**

1 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase with the same meaning.

▶ I'll confirm it later. tell you definitely
1 I'm supposed to meet him at six. _____
2 He's tied up tomorrow. _____
3 How about Friday? _____
4 He's not available now. _____
5 I'll potpone it. _____
6 Can you come, say, at five? _____
7 Can you make it tomorrow? _____
8 We must get together soon. _____
9 I'm sorry but I'm busy. _____

spotlight *be supposed to, be meant to + verb*

If you **are supposed to**, or **are meant to** do something, another person thinks you will do it because you have agreed to do it.

I'm supposed to *meet David later, but I don't really want to go.*
She ***'s meant to*** *finish that job today. ~ She's so slow; I don't think she will.*

2 There's a mistake in each sentence. Write the correct sentence at the end.

▶ She supposed to be here at 3.00. She 's supposed to be here at 3.00.
1 Shall we make together for a meeting? _____
2 I'll tell you definite tomorrow. _____
3 I could put the meeting out until Friday. _____
4 I'm afraid but I'm tied up then. _____
5 A Let's meet at a restaurant, saying? _____
B No, what about the station in place? _____
6 For an alternative, we could meet on Tuesday. _____

3 Test yourself. Look at the dialogue and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meaning of each word or phrase in bold?

www.hellooteacher.ir

62 I can discuss my likes and dislikes

MISCHA BARON: the food king!	Meaning
I'm mad about food. I spend a lot of time thinking about it.	**be mad about sth/sb** INF like sth/sb very much. SYN **be crazy about sth/sb** INF.
I adore cooking, though I'm not very keen on washing up afterwards.	**adore (doing) sth** INF love (doing) sth. **be keen on (doing) sth** INF (usually used in the negative) like or enjoy (doing) sth.
I'm very fond of Asian food, particularly Thai and Korean.	**be fond of (doing) sth** like or enjoy (doing) sth, especially over a long time.
I don't like takeaway food at all.	**not at all** not in any way. (If you **don't** like sth **at all**, you dislike it very much.)
As a child, I loathed cabbage (I hated the smell), but I've got to like it now.	**loathe (doing) sth** dislike (doing) sth very much (also **loathe sb**). **get to like sth/sb** start to like sth/sb.
There are only a couple of things I can't stand: one is snails. The other thing I absolutely detest is yoghurt. I'd rather die than eat yoghurt.	**can't stand (doing) sth** INF strongly dislike (doing) sth. SYN **can't bear (doing) sth.** **detest (doing) sth**, hate (doing) sth (also **detest sb**). SYN **loathe sth/sb.** **would rather . . . than** would prefer.

spotlight **Verb + *-ing***

Many verbs meaning 'like' or '**dislike**' (= not like) can be followed by an **-ing** form.

1 Complete the table using the words and phrases in the box.

can't stand ✓ detest mad about fond of adore
loathe keen on crazy about can't bear not like at all

like very much	like	dislike very much
		can't stand

2 Correct the mistakes in the sentence beginnings.

ABOUT YOU

▶ I'm not keen ~~for~~ . . . I'm not keen on
1 I fond of . . .
2 I don't stand . . .
3 I loathe to cook . . .
4 I'm mad in . . .
5 I can't bearing . . .
6 I'm detest . . .
7 I adore eat . . .
8 I've crazy about . . .
9 Recently, I've got for like . . .
10 I'm rather eat . . . than . . .

3 ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences in Exercise 2. Write about food, drinks, cooking, things you like doing, etc. If possible, tell another student.

www.hellooteacher.ir

63 I can **give my opinion**

A Asking for and giving opinions

A **Apparently**, the government wants to increase the number of young people going to university. **What do you think about** that?
B **Personally, I think** it's a good idea. People should have the chance to go to university.
A Maybe, but **it seems to me** we need more people with manual skills, not more academics. And why haven't we got those people? It's the government's **fault**.
B You think the government **is to blame for** everything. But don't you **reckon** it's a good idea, **in principle**, for more young people to have a better education?
A Yes, I think education is an incredibly important **issue**, but **the point is**, what kind of education do we want young people to have?

Glossary

apparently based on what you have heard or read.
What do you think about . . . ? is used to ask sb's opinion about a general topic (also **How do you feel about . . . ?** We usually use **think of** when asking about a person or thing, e.g. *What do you think of his new book?*)
fault responsibility for a mistake.
be to blame for sth be responsible for sth bad (e.g. *He's to blame for the accident.* = The accident **is his fault.**)
reckon (that) sth INF think or have an opinion about sth.
in principle in general, but perhaps not in all the details. SYN **in theory**.
issue a problem or subject for discussion.
the point is the most important part of what I'm saying is.

spotlight Giving opinions

I think (that) . . . , Personally I think (that) . . . , and **It seems to me . . . ,** are common ways of giving opinions. You may also hear **In my opinion . . .** FML, **As far as I'm concerned . . . ,** and **If you ask me . . . .**

1 Write the words in the correct order.

▶ issue / reckon / it's / important / I / an
I reckon it's an important issue.

1 think / this / you / idea / do / what / of ?
_____

2 I / it's / think / good / personally / a / idea
_____

3 agree / in / it / principle / I / with _____

4 choice / to / it / no / seems / we / have / me _____

5 it / disaster / if / me / ask / a / you / was _____

2 Rewrite the opinions using the words on the right. The meaning must stay the same.

▶ I think it'll be difficult. EASY I don't think it'll be easy.
1 I think we should do something. SEEMS _____
2 What do you think about that? FEEL _____
3 I think we should help them. OPINION _____
4 It's my fault. BLAME _____
5 I think it'll be a problem. RECKON _____

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ Personally , I thought the film was awful.
1 _____ , the government made the mistake, so it's their _____ .
2 As far as I'm _____ , the most important thing is to find a new manager.
3 I think climate change is one of the most important _____ of the 21st century.
4 We both think it's important, but the _____ is, what are we going to do about it?
5 In _____ , I quite like his suggestion, but I don't know if it'll work.

www.hellooteacher.ir

B For or against?

The government's **considering** a **proposal** to increase the legal age to drive a car from 17 to 21. What do you think of this idea?

FOR

- Personally, I think it's very **sensible**. Too many young people are killed on our roads.
- Yes, I'm **in favour of** it, because it would reduce the number of cars on the road.
- I would **support** it, too. I don't think 17 year-olds are **mature** enough to drive a car.

AGAINST

- I'm **not in favour of** this. I reckon more young people will just drive illegally.
- I'm **against** it, too. I **believe that** if young people are old enough to vote, then they're old enough to drive.
- I'm **opposed to** it. It'll make teenagers more **dependent on** their parents.

Glossary

consider sth think about sth carefully before making a decision.
proposal a plan that is formally suggested. **propose** v.
sensible practical and intelligent. OPP **silly**.
in favour of sth in agreement with sth. OPP **against sth**.
reduce sth make sth smaller or less in quantity or size. OPP **increase sth**.
support sth agree with sth and sometimes offer help. **support** N.
mature acting in a sensible, adult way.
believe that have the opinion that.
opposed to sth believing that sth is wrong.
dependent on sb/sth needing sb/sth to help you.

4 Replace the underlined words with a single word that has the same meaning.

▶ She is not in favour of it. against
1 I think it's a practical and intelligent idea. .....
2 They're going to think carefully about the new plan. .....
3 We can make it less. ..... it .
4 I agree with them and think they're right. ..... them.
5 Do you have the opinion that he's innocent? .....
6 What do you think of the plan that was formally suggested? .....

5 Complete the dialogues.

▶ Are you going to help them? ~ Yes, I'm going to support the plan.
1 Is he in favour of it? ~ No, he's ..... it.
2 Will it increase the problem? ~ No, it'll ..... it.
3 Do they like the idea? ~ No, they're ..... to it.
4 Are you going to support her? ~ Yes, I ..... that she's right.
5 Do you think it's sensible? ~ No, I think it's very ..... .
6 Are they against the idea? ~ No, they're in ..... of it.
7 Does she really need our help? ~ Yes, she's completely ..... on us.
8 Is he old enough to look after the shop? ~ Yes, he's a very ..... young man.

www.hellooteacher.ir

64 I can talk about rules

A Rules at school

The school I went to in the 1930s was very **strict**. We had to wear a uniform, and the headteacher **insisted that** we even wore it to church on Sundays. We **weren't allowed to** talk to the girls at the school next to ours, but of course nobody **obeyed** that **rule**. Smoking was **banned** everywhere. The teachers **made us work** very hard, and we **were forced to** stay after school some evenings to do four or five hours' homework. One day I laughed during a test, and the teacher made me write to all 40 students in the class and apologize for my bad **behaviour**. How silly! I was very **disobedient**, and always being **punished**.

Glossary

strict expecting people to do what you say.
insist that say strongly that sth must be done.
allow sb to do sth (often passive) tell sb that they can do sth.
obey sb/sth do what sb/sth tells you to do. OPP **disobey**.
rule an official statement which says what you must or must not do.
ban sth (often passive) say officially that sth is not allowed.
make sb do sth tell sb that they must do sth which they do not want to do. SYN **force sb to do sth**.
behaviour the way you do and say things. **behave** v.
disobedient A **disobedient** child doesn't obey rules. OPP **obedient**.
punish sb make sb suffer for sth they have done wrong. **punishment** N.

1 Cross out one word to make each sentence correct.

▶ Will the government ban ~~to~~ fast food?
1 Did she force to you to eat it?
2 They made us to sit there for an hour.
3 I wasn't be allowed to eat anything.
4 Did he always obey with the rules?
5 She punished to me because I was late.
6 She insisted on that she didn't do it.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words on the right.

▶	She's very bad; she always *disobeys* the rules.	OBEY
1	The children _____ very well yesterday.	BEHAVIOUR
2	You aren't _____ to walk on the grass.	ALLOW
3	My dog is very _____; he never comes when I call him.	DISOBEY
4	They have _____ alcohol at football matches.	BAN
5	What was her _____ for breaking the rules?	PUNISH
6	His _____ was terrible yesterday.	BEHAVE

3 Complete the questions with a suitable word.

When you were at school at the age of 11, ABOUT YOU

▶ were girls a*llowed* to wear make-up? _____
1 were you an o_____ child? _____
2 what happened if you d_____ the rules? _____
3 were the rules very s_____? _____
4 what did teachers f_____ you to do that you didn't like? _____
5 did children b_____ better or worse than nowadays? _____

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Can you choose?

I'm a bus driver. In my job . . .	
... wearing a uniform is {**compulsory** / **obligatory** FML}. I **have no choice/option**; I have to wear one.	= you must do it because of a rule or a law.
... smoking {**is forbidden** / **isn't permitted** FML} when I'm working. I'**m not allowed to** smoke at work.	= you mustn't do it; it's against a rule or against the law.
... working at night is {**optional** / **not compulsory**}. If I want to work at night, {**it's my choice** / **it's up to me** INF}. I have the **option of** working on Sunday twice a month.	= you can decide or choose what to do; you needn't / don't have to do it.
My boss **lets** me go home early on Fridays.	= you are allowed to go home early.

5 Are the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ He allowed me to do it. | He permitted me to do it. S
- 1 It's not compulsory. | It's up to you. _____
- 2 She has no choice. | It's optional. _____
- 3 It's his choice. | It's up to him. _____
- 4 Is it compulsory? | Is it forbidden? _____
- 5 It's obligatory. | It's allowed. _____
- 6 It's optional. | It's not compulsory. _____
- 7 He lets me do it. | He allows me to do it. _____
- 8 It's not optional. | It's obligatory. _____

6 Complete each of the dialogues with one word.

- ▶ Do you have to wear a uniform? ~ No, it's not compulsory .
- 1 Can you leave the building at lunchtime? ~ Yes, they _____ you do what you want.
- 2 Do you have to work at the weekends? ~ Yes, I have no _____ .
- 3 Are you _____ to use the phone for personal calls? ~ No, it's _____ .
- 4 Can he work at home some days? ~ Yes, he can; it's _____ to him.
- 5 Do you have to do extra training for the job? ~ No, you don't – it's _____ , but I probably will.
- 6 Is today's meeting optional or _____ ? ~ Well, it's your _____ , but I think you should go.
- 7 There's a café at work; you're not _____ to eat your own food there.
- 8 I have the _____ of working in different departments if I want to move around.

7 Test yourself. Cover the left-hand column in the table and look at the explanations. Can you remember the words and phrases in bold?

www.hellooteacher.ir

65 I can **discuss hopes and plans**

A Making plans

A Ramiro says you'**re making plans for** your grandmother's 100th birthday in July.
B Yes, we've still got a few things to **sort out**.
A So you'**re going to** have a big party, are you?
B Yes, we'**re expecting** about a hundred people, **actually**.
A Wow! And where do you **intend to** have it?
B On a river boat, and I'**m hoping to** get a jazz band too.
A That sounds great! I hope it all **goes smoothly**.
B Yeah, I don't want anything to **go wrong** because she's really **looking forward to** it.

Glossary

make plans (for sth)	prepare for sth you want to do in the future. SYN **plan sth.**
sort sth out	organize sth.
be going to do sth	plan to do sth in the future.
expect sth	think that sth will happen because it is probable or has been planned.
intend to do sth / doing sth	plan to do sth. **intention** N. OPP **have no intention of doing sth.**
hope to do sth	want to do sth and think that it is possible.
go smoothly	happen without difficulties or delays.
go wrong	If sth **goes wrong**, there is a problem and the plan might fail.
look forward to (doing) sth	feel happy about sth that is going to happen.

spotlight ***actually***

Actually is often used when adding new information or being more exact. SYN **in fact.** Be careful: **actually** does not mean 'at the moment'.
He's German, isn't he? ~ Yes, he's from Berlin, ***actually.***

1 Same or different? Write S or D.

► She's looking forward to seeing John. | She's expecting to see John. D
1 Did the wedding go smoothly? | Did the wedding go wrong? ____
2 He plans to go to Ireland. | He intends to go to Ireland. ____
3 I live in Poland at the moment. | I live in Poland, actually. ____
4 I'm hoping to get the job. | I'm going to get the job. ____
5 I don't intend to buy the car. | I've no intention of buying the car. ____
6 Have you planned anything for tonight? | Have you made any plans for tonight? ____

2 Complete the email.

We're ► going to take six months off work and go travelling this winter. At the moment we're (1) m____ plans and trying to decide exactly where to go. We (2) i____ to spend most of the time travelling round Australia and New Zealand as we both have family there. I'm (3) h____ to be able to get hotel work there, which will cover the cost of our accommodation. I'm not (4) e____ anything very smart, but at the same time, I've no (5) i____ of sleeping in a tent for the whole time. At the moment we're trying to sell our car to help pay for the adventure: I just hope nothing goes (6) w____ with the sale. In (7) f____, if everything goes (8) s____, we'll be in Sydney on Christmas Day, which will be fabulous; I'm really looking (9) f____ to it.

3 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What do the words mean?

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Spoken responses

Are you going to move house?

	Responses	Meaning
✔	**Definitely.**	= Yes, I'm sure it will happen.
✘	**Definitely not.**	= No, I'm sure it won't happen.
✔	**I think so.**	= I think it will probably happen.
✘	**I doubt it. / I don't think so.**	= I think it probably won't happen.
✔	**I hope so.**	= I want it to happen, but I don't know if it will.
✘	**I hope not.**	= I don't want it to happen, and I don't know if it will.
✔	**I'm afraid so.**	= I think it will happen and I'm unhappy about it.
✘	**I'm afraid not.**	= I don't think it'll happen and I'm unhappy about it.
✔	**I assume so.**	= I think it will happen, but I have no proof.
✔	**I expect so.** **I imagine so.** **I suppose so.** **I guess so.**	= I think it will happen.

4 Correct the mistakes. Write the correct sentence on the right.

► I'm assume so. I assume so.
1 I doubt so. .....
2 I'm not afraid. .....
3 I don't think. .....
4 I guess it. .....
5 I afraid so. .....
6 I don't hope. .....
7 Definitely no. .....

5 Complete the dialogues with the correct words or phrases.

► Is everything going smoothly with your holiday plans? ~ Yes, I hope so.
1 Are they going to have a party? ~ Yes, I i..... . It's their fortieth wedding anniversary.
2 Is Ravi going to cook for us tonight? ~ I don't t..... . Mina always seems to do the cooking.
3 Is Melissa going to get married? ~ I h..... . I really don't like the guy she's going out with.
4 Are you going on holiday this summer? ~ I'm a..... . We can't afford it.
5 Do you think Omar will get promoted? ~ I a..... . He's the best candidate and everyone likes him.
6 Do you think they'll win? ~ I d..... . They're playing very badly this season.
7 Are you going to buy that CD player? ~ D..... . It's the best one on the market.
8 Are you going to take the exam? ~ Yes, I s..... , but I'd rather wait another year.

6 Test yourself. Cover the responses and look at the meanings. What are the responses?

www.hellooteacher.ir

66 I can express dissatisfaction

A How to complain

- **Make sure** you know how you want the situation to be **resolved** after you **complain**.
- Collect as much evidence as possible, e.g. photos, **guarantees**, etc.
- Expressing **dissatisfaction in person** can be the most effective.
- Always **keep calm** when you complain. **There is no point in losing your temper**.
- **Back up** your **claim in writing**.
- **Consider** getting an **expert**'s opinion to back up your claim.

spotlight ***point***

Point can mean 'reason' or 'purpose', and is used in several expressions:

What's the point of *doing that?* (What's the reason for doing that?)

There's no point in ***doing*** *that.* (There's no reason to do that.)

1 Match 1–6 with a–g.

▶	make c	a	in person
1	a written	b	calm
2	lose	c	a claim ✓
3	make	d	guarantee
4	keep	e	the situation
5	speak to someone	f	your temper
6	resolve	g	sure

2 Complete the sentences.

▶ Make sure you keep your receipt.

1 We were very ..... with the slow service, and in the end we ..... about it.
2 You often get a two-year ..... with a new washing machine.
3 There's no ..... in complaining without a good reason.
4 It helps to have someone to ..... you up when you make a complaint.
5 If you want to make a claim, you will need to back it up in ..... .
6 I tried to ..... calm but I'm afraid I lost my ..... .
7 You sometimes need to find an ..... who really knows the subject.
8 Have you ..... seeing a lawyer to get some legal advice?

3 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

Glossary

make sure	be certain.
resolve sth FML	find an answer to a problem. SYN **settle sth.**
complain (about sth)	say you are not satisfied with sth. **make a complaint (about sth)** N.
guarantee	a written promise by a company that it will repair or replace sth that stops working within a specific period of time.
dissatisfaction	the annoyed feeling you get when sth is not as good as you expected it to be. OPP **satisfaction. dissatisfied** ADJ.
in person	speaking to sb face to face.
keep calm	stay quiet and not get excited, worried, or angry.
lose your temper	be unable to control your anger. OPP **keep your temper.**
back sth up	support sth; say or show that sth is true.
claim	a demand for sth, often money, that you think you have a right to, often from a company or the government. **make a claim** V.
in writing	in a letter, email, etc.
consider doing sth	think about doing sth. **consideration** N.
expert	a person who has a lot of knowledge of a subject.

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Having a moan

A I'm **fed up with** the painting course this term.

B I'm not **happy with** it either. The room they've given us is **dreadful** – it's too small.

A Actually, **I'm not** so **bothered** about the room. It's the man who **joined** the course last month – he really **gets on my nerves**. He's always **moaning**.

B Yes, he's **spoilt** it for the rest of us, really. And next week someone else is starting.

A Oh what a **nuisance**! I don't think they should let people join the course late. I might **mention** it to the teacher.

Glossary

fed up with sth	bored or unhappy with sth.
happy with sth	feeling that sth is good or right.
dreadful	very bad. SYNS **terrible**, **atrocious**, **appalling**.
join sth	become a member of a group such as a class or club.
get on sb's nerves	INF irritate sb or make sb angry.
moan	INF keep saying what is wrong or bad about sth. **moan** N.
spoil sth PT, PP **spoilt/spoiled**	change sth good into sth bad or unpleasant. SYN **ruin sth**.
nuisance	a person, thing, or situation that annoys you.
mention sth	talk about sth, usually quickly and without saying much.

spotlight *bother*

The verb **bother** is used in several expressions:
I'm not bothered about *what I wear.* INF = I don't care about what I wear.
(I'm) sorry to bother you. = I'm sorry to disturb you. (Used when sb is busy.)
Don't bother *to buy the milk.* = Don't trouble yourself; it's not necessary.

4 Cross out one more word in this list that does not have a negative meaning.

atrocious ▶ ~~join~~ fed up ruin moan dreadful
nuisance spoil mention appalling

5 Complete the dialogues with a suitable word.

▶ What dreadful weather. ~ Yes, absolutely atrocious .
1 What's the matter? ~ Oh, I'm _____ up with this essay.
2 Oh Brian, I'm sorry to _____ you. ~ That's OK. Come on in.
3 We can't watch TV. It's not working. ~ Oh no! What a _____ .
4 There was too much salt on the meat. ~ Yes I know. It really _____ it.
5 Shall I close the gate? ~ No, don't _____ . Leave it open.
6 I've decided to _____ a chess club. ~ I didn't know you played chess.
7 Do you want to go out? ~ No, I'm not _____ . Let's stay here.
8 Did you say anything about the course? ~ Yes, I _____ it to the director.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Is there anything you're fed up with at the moment? _____
2 Is there anything or anyone that gets on your nerves? _____
3 Do you moan about anything in particular? _____
4 Can you think of anything in your town that's dreadful? _____
5 Are you bothered about the level of your English at the moment? _____

7 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

67 I can understand warnings

Glossary

mind (**your head, leg, etc.**) used to tell sb to be careful of sth.

danger the possibility of sth happening that will injure, harm, or kill sb.

beware of sth (usually on written signs) be careful of sth.

warning a notice or statement that tells you to be careful. **warn sb** (**of/about sth**) v.

cross (**sth**) go from one side of sth to the other.

in case of sth if sth happens.

caution (used in notices) be careful.

swallow sth make food or drink go down your throat and into your stomach.

seek sth FML try to find sth or ask sb for sth.

assistance FML help or support.

premises (PL) the building and land around it belonging to a business.

1 Write the words in correct sentences.

▶ mind / is / dish / your / that / hot / fingers Mind your fingers. That dish is hot.

1 assistance / any / need / do / you / ? _____

2 help / seek / symptoms / Caution / if / continue / medical _____

3 beware / bites / the / of / it / dog _____

4 is / when / don't / the / down / Warning / cross / barrier _____

5 building / the / fire / case / in / of / leave / immediately _____

6 police / ring / of / case / in / the / emergency _____

2 Complete the sentences.

▶ Look out! There's a car coming!

1 If someone _____ the liquid, take them to hospital and take the bottle with you.

2 _____ of falling rocks. In _____ of emergency, call the police.

3 _____ the step when you leave the building.

4 Watch _____ ! There's a big spider.

5 The river was flooded, and a policeman _____ us about the _____ ahead.

6 Be _____ when you're driving there. There are often low flying _____ !

7 If you need any _____ , please ring the office.

8 There are usually guard dogs on the business _____ at night.

www.hellooteacher.ir

Review: Social English

Unit 59

1 Complete the sentences on the right, keeping the same meaning as in the sentences on the left.

▶	It's possible he'll go.	He might go .
1	He's sure to go.	He'll ____ .
2	I don't think he'll fancy her.	I ____ he'll fancy her.
3	I'm almost sure it'll be a disaster.	It's bound ____ .
4	He might go.	There's a chance ____ .
5	I expect it'll rain later.	It's ____ to rain later.
6	He always thinks the worst will happen.	He's very ____ .

Unit 60

1 Complete the text.

The twins and me

My sisters, Lucy and Ellie, are twins. To look at they are absolutely ▶ identical , (1) _____ for their hair: Lucy's is long, and Ellie's is shoulder-length. They adore being twins and they love people to know they are twins. When they go out, they make sure that their clothes are (2) _____ the same.

In character, though, they're not (3) _____ . Ellie is confident and optimistic (4) _____ with Lucy, who is much more reserved and quiet. When they are at university, their behaviour is also (5) _____ different. Ellie is friends with everyone, but Lucy doesn't spend time with anyone (6) _____ from her sister. The (7) _____ difference between the twins and me is the way we look, of course. I'm very dark in (8) _____ with them: they both have beautiful blonde hair.

Unit 61

1 Complete the conversation.

A Jun, we must get together next week. Can you (1) ____ it on Tuesday?
B I'm (2) ____ I'm busy on Tuesday. (3) ____ about Wednesday?
A No, I don't think I'm (4) ____ then. I'm supposed (5) ____ see Chris about the computer.
B Oh dear. Wednesday's the only day next week that I'm not (6) ____ up. Could you possibly (7) ____ your computer meeting until the following week?
A I'm not sure; I'll have to talk to Chris. Can I (8) ____ that with you tomorrow?
B OK, Jun, that's fine. I'll wait to hear from you.

www.hellooteacher.ir

Unit 62

1 Complete the sentences with suitable words.

Things or people that I like:	ABOUT YOU
1 I'm very _____ on physical exercise.	_____
2 I'm _____ of the people in my class.	_____
3 I'm _____ about dancing.	_____
4 I absolutely _____ chocolate.	_____
Things or people that I don't like:	
5 I don't like shellfish at _____ .	_____
6 I can't _____ waiting in queues.	_____
7 I'm not very _____ on cheese.	_____
8 I absolutely _____ cold weather.	_____

2 ABOUT YOU Do you agree with the sentences in Exercise 1? Write your own sentences or ask another student.

Unit 63

1 Which two phrases have a similar meaning? Tick (✓) them.

▶ I support it ☐ | personally, I think ☑ | if you ask me ☑
1 not in favour of ☐ | the issue ☐ | against ☐
2 is to blame ☐ | it seems to me ☐ | is his fault ☐
3 in my opinion ☐ | as far as I'm concerned ☐ | I'm considering ☐
4 in favour ☐ | in principle ☐ | in theory ☐
5 is opposed to ☐ | is against ☐ | is mature ☐
6 I believe ☐ | I reckon ☐ | I blame ☐

2 Circle the correct word or phrase.

▶ It seems/reckons to me that we need this.
1 Is he in favour/against of the proposal?
2 It's not your blame/fault.
3 Give him a key; he's quite sensible/silly.
4 What do you think about/of my new car?
5 I need to consider/reckon this issue.
6 Do you agree in favour/in principle?
7 Do you support/opposed to the idea?

Unit 64

1 Rewrite the sentence using the correct form of the word in capitals. The meaning should stay the same.

▶ Smoking isn't allowed. BAN Smoking is banned.
1 He doesn't do what I say. DISOBEY _____
2 They make us work hard. FORCE _____
3 You can't eat here. ALLOWED _____
4 You have to wear a uniform. COMPULSORY _____
5 She allowed us to sit down. LET _____
6 The boss says we have to go. INSIST _____
7 The way he acts in class is terrible. BEHAVIOUR _____
8 He makes us suffer if we're late. PUNISH _____

www.hellooteacher.ir

Unit 65

1 Complete the dialogue.

A You must be busy ▶ making plans for your wedding.
B Yes, I am, in (1) f..... , I seem to do nothing else.
A Are you (2) e..... a lot of guests?
B Oh, yes, (3) d..... – it's going to be enormous. We've both got big families.
A And is Barry (4) i..... to come?
B Goodness, I really (5) h..... not – he's the last person I want at my wedding. Anyway, I have no (6) i..... of inviting him.
A And how about Auntie June – is she coming?
B No, I'm (7) a..... not – she's not very well, (8) a..... . Her operation didn't go as (9) s..... as expected, so she won't be able to make it. She's ok, though.
A That's a relief. And what about Grandpa – is he (10) g..... to be there?
B Well, I (11) g..... so – it wouldn't be a wedding without him, would it?

Unit 66

1 Is the speaker happy or unhappy in the sentences? Write H or U.

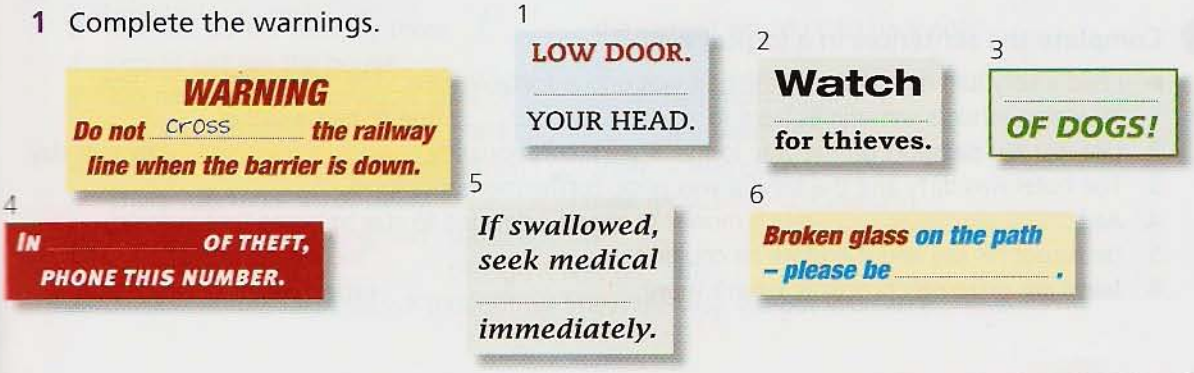
▶ The rain didn't spoil my holiday. H
1 I was really fed up with her. .....
2 The weather's atrocious, isn't it? .....
3 We've resolved the problem. .....
4 Billy's moaning again. .....
5 Judi didn't lose her temper. .....
6 I've got a complaint about the room. .....
7 The noise doesn't bother me. .....
8 That dog's a nuisance. .....
9 My day's been ruined. .....

2 Rewrite the sentence using the correct form of the word in capitals. The meaning must stay the same.

▶ Don't get angry. TEMPER Don't lose your temper.
1 There's no reason to go out. POINT There's ..... .
2 You should speak to her face-to-face. PERSON You ..... .
3 I would ask someone who knows a lot about it for advice. EXPERT I ..... .
4 Have you ever thought about going to live abroad? CONSIDER Have ..... .
5 She became a member of the tennis club. JOIN She ..... .
6 Waiting in queues really irritates me. NERVES Waiting ..... .
7 I don't think the cost of the meal is important. BOTHER I ..... .
8 Did she say anything to you about the divorce? MENTION Did ..... ?

Unit 67

1 Complete the warnings.



www.hellooteacher.ir

68 I can use link words

A Reason, result, and addition

A **link between A and B** is a connection between two or more people or things. The words in bold in this unit all **link** one idea (A) **with** another idea (B).

Glossary

as a result because of sth that happened before. SYN **so.**

due to sth because of sth.

what's more INF used when you are adding information in spoken English or informal written English. SYN **plus** INF (and see spotlight).

as used to say why sth happens, or why sb does sth. SYNS **since, because.**

consequently because of sth that happened before. SYN **therefore.** (Both words are more formal than **as a result** or **so.**)

. . . and everything went wrong. I forgot to set the alarm, and **as a result**, I overslept and had to get a taxi to the station. Of course, all the trains were delayed **due to** the snow. **What's more**, when the train arrived, it was absolutely freezing **as** the heating wasn't working. A bit later the ticket inspector came round, and I discovered I'd bought the wrong kind of ticket, **so** I had to pay again, **plus** I had to pay a fine, which was very annoying. And when I finally got off the train, I slipped on the ice and broke my ankle. **Consequently** I spent the rest of the day, not at the meeting, but in hospital having x-rays. Not my best day.

spotlight ***in addition, moreover, furthermore***

These are more formal ways of adding more information or arguments.

The business was in trouble. ***In addition****, his activities had attracted the attention of the police.*

Teacher numbers have risen by 12%. ***Moreover/ Furthermore****, extra money is being spent on books.*

1 Circle the correct word.

▶ (As)/In addition I had no money, I couldn't pay.

1 It snowed heavily, and as a result/plus, we had to stay in for two days.
2 It was an old armchair, and because/what's more, it smelled horrible.
3 He had to give up his job consequently/due to stress.
4 People are richer these days and therefore/since they spend a lot more.
5 It was a long way to the station, so/plus I had a suitcase.
6 Since/Furthermore he had no money, I ended up paying the bill.
7 Zoltan saw a man standing in the shadows. Therefore/Moreover, he was holding a knife.
8 The town has a good transport system. Furthermore/As a result, it is very cheap.

2 Write the circled link words in Exercise 1 in the table below.

reason	result	addition
As		

3 Complete the sentences in a logical way.

▶ I had a very bad night's sleep: the bed was uncomfortable, plus the room was hot.

1 In winter, schools sometimes have to _____ due to bad weather.
2 Ulla lost her passport on the way to the airport; consequently, _____ fly that day.
3 The hotel was dirty and the service was poor. Furthermore, the food _____ .
4 As I _____ much money to spend, I decided to stay at home that evening.
5 He forgot his key and therefore he couldn't _____ the flat.
6 Jeans are extremely practical; what's more _____ expensive.

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Contrasting ideas

A **contrast** is a difference between two or more people or things that are being compared. The words in bold below are used to introduce an idea which **contrasts** with something you have just said.

Contrasting two ideas in one sentence:	Notes
We got a ticket, { **although** / **even though** / **though** } it wasn't easy.	The clause with **although**, **even though**, and **though** can come at the beginning or the end, e.g. ***Although*** *it wasn't easy, we got a ticket.*
I went to work { **despite** feeling very unwell. / **in spite of** the bad weather. / **despite the fact that** I had flu.	**Despite** and SYN **in spite of** are followed by an *-ing* form or a noun.
Contrasting two ideas in two separate sentences:	
The car was old. { **Despite that**, / **In spite of that**, } I **still** bought it.	In **despite that** and **in spite of that**, the word *that* refers back to the fact that the car was old.
She didn't work hard. { **However**, / **Nevertheless**, / **All the same**, } she **still** passed	**However** and **nevertheless** are more formal; **all the same** is more informal.
He says he's rich. I don't believe him, { **though**. / **however**. }	At the end of a sentence, **however** is more formal than **though**.

spotlight ***still***

Still can be used to emphasize that the second part of a sentence is surprising, especially after what was said in the first part of the sentence.
*She felt ill, but she **still** went to work.*
*He left an hour early, but he **still** missed the train.*

4 Match 1–8 with a–i.

▶	He says nice things about you. 9	a	he got to work on time in the morning.
1	He got the job in spite of ____	b	he wasn't feeling very well.
2	I saw the film last night. ____	c	although the main course was nice.
3	He went out despite the fact that ____	d	though the weather wasn't very good.
4	The soup was disgusting, ____	e	his lack of experience.
5	We had a nice day even ____	f	the fact that the heating was on.
6	He felt really cold despite ____	g	However, you can't trust him. ✓
7	He went to bed very late. All the same, ____	h	I'd rather have a car.
8	The bike's useful. Nevertheless, ____	i	I didn't think much of it, though.

5 Complete the sentences with one word. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

▶ We had quite a nice day there. All the same, I wouldn't go back again.
1 I could just see the house _____ the fog.
2 Jun has very little money. In spite of _____, he's really generous.
3 You'll find it hard to get work there. _____, it's worth trying.
4 I wanted to see the exhibition. When I got there, it was closed, _____.
5 There was more snow today, _____ I think it's warmer this evening.
6 In _____ of leaving two hours early, we _____ missed the plane.
7 I didn't feel sleepy _____ though it was very late.
8 _____ the fact that we thought we knew the way, we got lost twice.

www.hellooteacher.ir

C Other link words

Word or phase	Example	Meaning/usage
whereas	I enjoy tennis, **whereas** my father prefers rugby.	used for comparing two people, things, etc. and saying there is a difference between them.
on the one hand . . . on the other (hand)	**On the one hand**, it's lovely here in summer, but **on the other**, the winter is terrible.	used for showing opposite points of view.
otherwise SYN **or (else)**	Put your cake on the table, **otherwise** the dog will eat it.	used to say that if sth doesn't happen or isn't true, sth else will happen, sometimes sth bad.
provided (that) SYN **as long as**	I'll go **provided** you come with me.	only if.
unless	I'll accept the job at the BBC **unless** they offer me a job at Sky.	used to say that sth will happen or be true if sth else does *not* happen or is *not* true.
in case	Take a map **in case** you need it.	because sth might happen.
so (that)	He got there early **so that** he could speak to her before the lesson.	used to talk about the **purpose** of an action.

spotlight ***purpose***

A **purpose** is a reason for doing something, or a thing that someone wants to achieve.
*What's the **purpose** of your trip?*
*The **purpose of** the meeting is to discuss the figures.*

6 Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

▶ He speaks German, whereas I don't. | I don't speak German, but he does. S
1 If you leave it here, someone will steal it. | Don't leave it here, or someone will steal it. ____
2 I won't go to the party if Chica's going. | I won't go to the party unless Chica's going. ____
3 I took some money so that I could pay. | I took some money in case I had to pay. ____
4 She'll get there provided she leaves now. | She'll get there as long as she leaves now. ____
5 I always put sugar in, otherwise it's not sweet. | I always put sugar in unless it's sweet. ____
6 What was the purpose of his letter? | What was his reason for writing the letter? ____

7 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

whereas | on the one hand | so that | otherwise | in case | unless ✓ | as long as

▶ She won't use a towel unless it's just been washed.
1 The children can go out _____ they don't cross the main road.
2 You should get there early _____ you get a good seat.
3 _____ flying can save time, but on the other, it's not good for the environment.
4 Teachers' salaries have gone up _____ nurses' salaries have fallen.
5 Take some chocolate with you _____ you're hungry on the journey.
6 Plug it in, _____ it won't work.

8 Test yourself. Look at the words in the first column and cover the examples and meanings. What are the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

69 I can use a range of adjectives

A Describing places

Hidden away in this **remote** part of **rural** France is the village of La Toque. It's a **curious**, **old-fashioned** sort of place. There's only one hotel, so it's **vital** to book in advance, but don't expect anything **grand**. The accommodation and food are very **simple**, but the prices are **reasonable** and I was **impressed with** the **overall** quality. The local people are still a bit **suspicious of** tourists, but I found them very **polite**. However, you may not meet many, as the streets are usually **deserted** by 10 p.m.!

Glossary

remote	far away from where many people live.
rural	connected with the country, not the town. OPP **urban**.
curious	unusual or strange.
old-fashioned	typical of the past but not of the present. OPP **modern**.
vital	necessary and important. SYN **essential**.
grand	impressive and large or important.
simple	including the things you need but no extra things. SYN **basic**.
reasonable	If prices are **reasonable**, they are not too high. SYN **fair**. OPP **unreasonable**.
impressed with sth/sb	feeling that sth/sb is good or of a high standard.
overall	general; considering everything.
suspicious of sth/sb	feeling that sth/sb is dishonest and cannot be trusted.
polite	behaving in a good or correct way. OPP **rude**.
deserted	empty because everyone has left. OPPS **busy**, **crowded**.

1 Find seven more pairs of synonyms or opposites in the box.

simple✓ modern curious fair polite essential busy old-fashioned
rural basic✓ urban rude deserted vital strange reasonable

▶ simple / SYN basic ____ / SYN ____ ____ / OPP ____
____ / SYN ____ ____ / OPP ____ ____ / OPP ____
____ / SYN ____ ____ / OPP ____

2 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

▶ It's a rural area. | It's an urban area. D
1 No one was there. | It was deserted. ____
2 It's expensive. | The price is reasonable. ____
3 She's good. | I'm impressed with her. ____
4 It's essential. | It isn't vital. ____
5 It wasn't grand. | It was quite basic. ____
6 I'm suspicious of him. | I don't trust him. ____
7 It was fair. | It was unreasonable. ____

3 Complete the words in the sentences.

▶ It gets very busy, so it's vital to arrive early.
1 The others found him normal, but I thought he was a c____ man.
2 It's a long way from town, so it's quite a r____ place.
3 I was s____ of the man when he refused to give his name.
4 I like the restaurant, and what's more, the prices are r____.
5 I was very i____ with the hotel: it's clean, comfortable, and very friendly.
6 There were one or two things I didn't like, but the o____ standard was good.

4 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Say the words and their synonyms and opposites.

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Describing feelings

Adjectives	Example(s)	Meaning
terrifying/ terrified	It was a **terrifying** film. I was **terrified** watching that film.	very frightening. very frightened.
disappointed/ disappointing	I was **disappointed** with my results. My results were **disappointing**.	feeling unhappy because sth is not as good as you hoped.
amazing/ amazed	Some of the dancers were **amazing**.	surprising and difficult to believe, often in a positive way.
shocking/ shocked	It was **shocking** to see so many people with nowhere to live.	upsetting and very surprising in a negative way.
alarming/ alarmed	When the police arrived, it was a bit **alarming**.	frightening or causing worry.
disgusting/ disgusted	Last night's meal was **disgusting**.	very unpleasant.
amusing/ amused	We all thought the film was quite **amusing**.	funny in a gentle way.
embarrassed/ embarrassing	I was **embarrassed** when I got his name wrong.	feeling uncomfortable because of sth silly you have done.
astonishing/ astonished	It's **astonishing** how much she has changed in the last five years.	very surprising.
satisfying/ satisfied OPP **dissatisfied**	Cooking for others is very **satisfying**.	making you feel pleased or happy.

5 Circle the correct answer.

▶ The beaches were really amazing/amazed.
1 I was shocking/shocked when I saw it.
2 He was satisfying/satisfied with the course.
3 The hotel didn't have a restaurant, which was rather disappointing/disappointed.
4 It was a terrifying/terrified experience.
5 The smell was disgusting/disgusted.
6 José felt a bit embarrassing/embarrassed.

spotlight *-ed/-ing* endings

We use adjectives that end with **-ed** to describe our feelings. We use adjectives that end with **-ing** to describe the person or thing that makes us have these feelings.
*We were **shocked** by his behaviour.*
*His behaviour was **shocking**.*

6 Complete the dialogues with adjectives from the table.

▶ Were you frightened? ~ Yes, absolutely terrified.
1 Was the film funny? ~ Yes, it was quite _____.
2 You wore jeans to a smart party! ~ Yes, it was a bit _____.
3 He steals money from old people. ~ I know. It's absolutely _____.
4 Was he pleased with his marks? ~ No, he was _____ with them.
5 Was the wine unpleasant? ~ Yes, it was absolutely _____.
6 Were you surprised? ~ Yes, absolutely _____.
7 Were you very frightened? ~ Yes, it was a bit _____.
8 Were you happy with the work? ~ No, I wasn't _____ with it.

7 Test yourself. Look at the words in the first column and cover the examples and meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

C Describing qualities

People have **mixed feelings** about the new city hotel. Here are some comments.

The rooms were **adequate** but I didn't like the **artificial** flowers.

I like the **contemporary** design – simple but **effective**.

The bed was a bit **firm** for my liking.

Most of the staff were **temporary** but they seemed very **efficient**.

I was able to take my dog. It's **rare** for a hotel to allow them.

I was **glad** we had one of their best rooms. Some looked a bit **cramped**.

They put champagne in our room, which was very **unexpected**.

Glossary

mixed feelings • both **positive** (+) and **negative** (–) feelings about sth.

adequate • just good enough but nothing more. OPP **inadequate**.

artificial • made by people and used instead of sth natural. OPPS **real**, **natural**.

contemporary • of the present time. SYN **modern**. OPP **old-fashioned**.

effective • successful and giving the result you want. OPP **ineffective**.

firm • quite hard. OPP **soft**.

temporary • employed or continuing for only a limited period of time. OPP **permanent**.

efficient • working well, quickly, and without mistakes. OPP **inefficient**.

rare • not done, seen, or happening very often. OPP **common**.

glad • pleased; quite happy. SYN **pleased**.

cramped • small, and not having enough space. OPP **spacious**.

unexpected • If sth is **unexpected**, it surprises you because you didn't know it was going to happen. OPP **expected**.

8 Replace the underlined adjective with a word that means the opposite.

▶ I had positive feelings. negative

1 The food was adequate. _____
2 We had a firm mattress. _____
3 The service was efficient. _____
4 My room was cramped. _____
5 Is that real snow? _____
6 It's a rare disease. _____
7 It was an effective method. _____
8 The visit was expected. _____
9 It's a temporary arrangement. _____

9 Complete the sentences with suitable adjectives.

▶ You couldn't move round in the bathroom; it was very cramped.

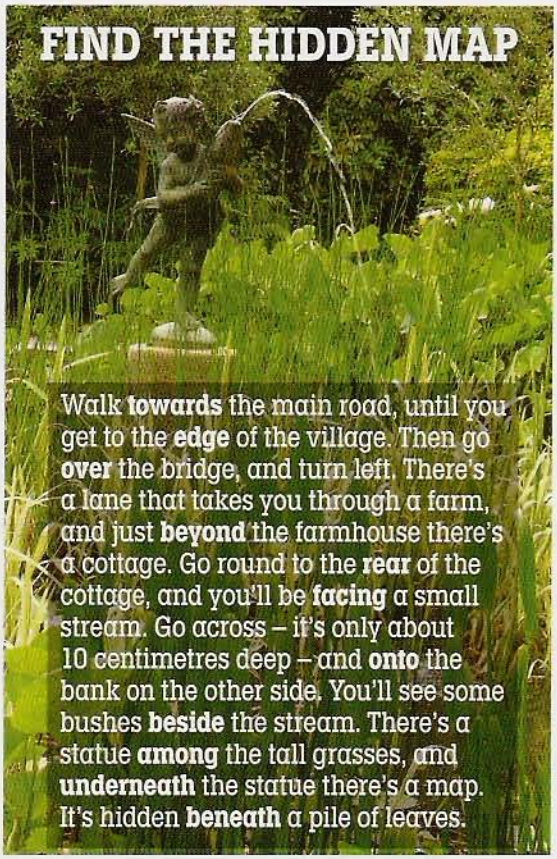
1 I have _____ feelings about working abroad: I'd like to, but I'd miss my family.
2 It's a fantastic climate here. It's very _____ to have bad weather in the summer.
3 I'm _____ your mother is feeling better now. She was quite ill last week.
4 She wears very old-_____ clothes.
5 My sister's having a baby. It was completely _____, but we're all very happy.
6 This machine does the work of ten men; it's very _____.
7 I think his work is _____, but it could be better.
8 A lot of people don't like _____ art because they don't understand it.
9 Sometimes Ava is very positive, but she can also be quite _____.
10 She's only a _____ member of staff. I think she's leaving next week.

10 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings? Can you remember the synonyms and opposites?

www.hellooteacher.ir

70 I can express place and time

A Place



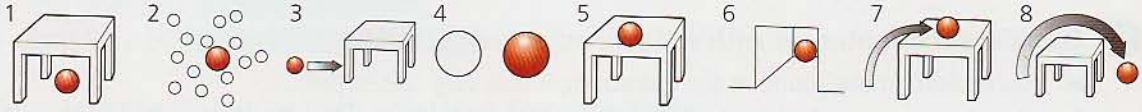
Glossary

towards in the direction of (also **toward**).
edge the place where sth, e.g. a table, a cliff, or a town, ends.
beyond past a place and further away.
rear the back of sth, especially a car or a building. OPP **front**.
face sth look towards sth. OPP **have your back to sth**.
onto moving to or on a particular place or position.
beside next to. SYN **by**.
among surrounded by things (also **amongst**).
underneath under (when sth is hidden or covered).
beneath FML under.

spotlight *over*

Over has different meanings:
1 up and across to the other side of something.
*Go **over** the bridge.*
2 used to express location at a distance from the speaker.
*Sit **over there**.*
3 **all over**: in all or most parts of sth.
*His clothes were **all over** the floor.*

1 Match the pictures with the words below.



▶ towards 3 over ____ the rear ____ beside ____ beneath ____ onto ____ the edge ____ among ____

2 Complete the sentences with words from the glossary.

▶ The front seats are great, but there isn't much room for your legs in the rear .
1 The glass fell ____ the floor and smashed.
2 I could see a few of my friends ____ the crowd.
3 Don't sit ____ there. Come and sit ____ me.
4 I'm not surprised I couldn't find my pen; it was ____ all those books.
5 We didn't stay in one town – we went all ____ the place.
6 I couldn't see what was happening because I had my ____ to the window.
7 Don't stand so close to the ____ of the road – it's dangerous.
8 There's a village in the valley, and ____ it, you can see the mountains in the distance.

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Time

We'd **already** played 85 minutes and we were losing. Bob suddenly shouted, 'Come on, there are still five minutes **to go** – it's **not over yet**.'

The children were woken **during** the night by a loud bang. It was followed by heavy rain which **lasted throughout** the night.

Guy said he'd be back at three this afternoon. **In the meantime**, I took Martha shopping. She spent all morning looking for a black dress and **eventually** found something she liked.

I used to play a bit, but **these days** I just watch football on TV. I go to a game **now and again** with my son. **Recently** we saw Arsenal play Spurs.

Glossary

already	before now or before a particular point in time.
to go	If there are five minutes **to go**, then five minutes remain before sth will happen.
over	finished.
not . . . yet	used for talking about sth that has not happened, but will probably happen in the future.
during	at some point in the period of time mentioned.
last	continue for a period of time.
throughout	from the beginning to the end of sth.
in the meantime	during the time between two events. SYN **meanwhile**.
eventually	after a long period of time (often after some difficulty).
these days	in the present time. SYN **nowadays**.
now and again	SYNS **occasionally**, **from time to time**.
recently	not long ago. **recent** ADJ.

3 Replace the underlined phrases with a single word that has the same meaning.

▶ I saw Petra <u>not long ago</u>. recently

1 Do you see your uncle much <u>these days</u>? _____

2 The play <u>continued</u> for about two hours. _____

3 I go to the theatre <u>from time to time</u>. _____

4 The train wasn't due for two hours. <u>In the meantime</u> we went for lunch. _____

5 He slept <u>from the beginning to the end of</u> the film. _____

6 We waited at the hotel and <u>after a long period of time</u> Danny arrived. _____

4 Complete the dialogues.

▶ They want us to meet them later this afternoon. ~ Well, in the meantime, let's go to the market.

1 He's writing a book, but it's not finished _____. ~ Yes I know, he showed it to me _____. It looked very interesting.

2 Is 'Love in Amsterdam' his most _____ film? ~ Yes, it came out _____ the summer. I think he's working on another film now.

3 Is the match _____ yet? ~ No, there are still ten minutes to _____.

4 How long does the film _____? ~ About two hours, but Candy doesn't want to go. She's _____ seen it.

5 I used to go to Rome _____ for work, just a couple of times a year. ~ Oh, really? I lived there _____ the 1990s – I loved it.

5 Test yourself. Look at the glossary meanings and cover the words. What are the words?

www.hellooteacher.ir

71 I can use prepositions in phrases

A Preposition + word(s)

Phrase	Example	Meaning
by chance	We met in the shop **by chance**.	without it/sth being planned.
on board	Are all the passengers **on board**?	on a plane or ship or bus.
on purpose	She broke my watch, but she didn't do it **on purpose**.	with a definite intention; not accidentally. SYN **deliberately**.
at least	It takes **at least** an hour to get home.	not less than, and probably more.
at first	I didn't understand him **at first**.	at the beginning.
in a hurry	He got up late and left **in a hurry**.	quickly, and usually because you haven't enough time. SYN **in a rush**.
in advance	Can I buy tickets **in advance**?	before a particular time or event.
in charge of sth/sb	Who's **in charge of** the office while Matt's on holiday?	in a position of control over sth/sb. SYN **responsible for sth/sb**.
in general	**In general**, I don't work on Saturdays.	usually; in most cases. SYN **generally**.
in public	I don't like it when people argue with each other **in public**.	when other people are present. OPP **in private**.

1 Make eight more phrases using *in, at, by,* or *on,* and one of the words from the box.

general	purpose	advance ✓
least	private	public
first	board	chance

▶ in advance _____ _____

_____ _____ _____

_____ _____ _____

spotlight *in the end* and *at the end*

In the end can mean 'finally', 'after a period of time', or 'in conclusion'.
All the restaurants closed early, so ***in the end*** *we went home.*
At the end can mean 'in the final part', or 'when sth finishes'.
At the end of *the film, they go to live in New York.*

2 Replace the underlined words with a prepositional phrase that has the same meaning.

▶ We'll need <u>not less than</u> two hours to get there. at least

1 <u>Generally</u>, he's very helpful. _____

2 I think he took my dictionary <u>deliberately</u>. _____

3 All the passengers are <u>on the plane</u>. _____

4 <u>In the final part</u> of the story, the old woman dies. _____

5 Who's <u>responsible for</u> these noisy children? _____

6 I had to have breakfast <u>quickly</u>. _____

3 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

▶ He made the comment in private, but the journalist still reported it.

1 All the buses were full, so _____ the end we took a taxi.

2 If you want to get seats on the train, you'll have to book _____ advance.

3 _____ first I didn't like the book, but actually it got better.

4 I found the shoes I wanted _____ chance.

5 Like many actors, he doesn't like talking about his private life _____ public.

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Word(s) + preposition

Phrase	Example	Meaning
access to sth	Do you have **access to** the internet?	the chance to use or have sth.
make the most of sth	If he lets you use the gym, you must **make the most of** it.	make the best use of sth that will help you. SYN **take advantage of sth.**
capable of (doing) sth	She's **capable of** passing the exam if she works hard.	having the ability or qualities to do sth.
involved in sth	He's become very **involved in** local politics.	connected with sth or taking an active part in it.
approve of sb/sth	My mother doesn't **approve of** men who smoke.	think that sb/sth is good or suitable. OPP **disapprove of sb/sth.**
get rid of sth/sb	We **got rid of** our old sofa. They **got rid of** two workers.	throw sth away, or make yourself free of sth/sb you don't want.
care about sth/sb	She **cares about** people. He doesn't **care about** money.	be interested in sb/sth and think it or they are important.
take care of sb/sth	After their mother died, they **took care of** their father.	help and protect sb/sth. SYN **look after sb/sth.**
insist on (doing) sth	He **insisted on** paying for dinner.	say strongly that you must have or do sth, or that someone else must.
cope with sth/sb	I'll have more work next year, but I think I can **cope with** it.	take action successfully with a difficult situation. SYN **manage.**

spotlight ***depend on sb/sth***

1 be able to trust someone or something. SYN **rely on sb/sth.**
*You can never **depend on** the trains in this country.*
2 be decided or influenced by someone or something.
*We may go out – it **depends on** the weather.*

4 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

▶ We can look after the children.
1 She approves ____ my new boyfriend.
2 Is he still involved ____ the company?
3 They can't cope ____ all this work.
4 He insisted ____ doing the cooking.
5 Don't get rid ____ that lovely dress.
6 Can you depend ____ him?
7 Mark is capable ____ doing very well.
8 I don't have access ____ email.
9 We must take advantage ____ the weather.

5 Complete the word in each sentence.

▶ Does she really care about Conrad?
1 How do you c____ with three children and a full-time job?
2 I had to get r____ of all my old records.
3 We're taking c____ of the house while they're away.
4 It's your only chance to speak English, so make the m____ of it.
5 Do you want me to l____ after the dog when you go shopping?
6 I want to go out, but it d____ on the amount of homework we have to do.
7 He wants us to get i____ in making arrangements for the conference.
8 Lucy's friends strongly d____ of her decision to marry Jack.

www.hellooteacher.ir

72 I can **use prefixes**

A Negative prefixes

Adjective/OPP	Example	Meaning	Other words
insecure OPP **secure**	She's very **insecure** about her appearance.	not confident about yourself.	informal inflexible
immoral OPP **moral**	She stole money from my children. That's **immoral**.	thought to be wrong or dishonest by most people.	impossible impatient
illegible OPP **legible**	My doctor's writing is **illegible**.	very difficult or impossible to read.	illegal
irrelevant OPP **relevant**	I need some new shoes. The colour's **irrelevant**.	not important to what you are discussing or doing.	irregular irresponsible
unfair OPP **fair**	His office is bigger than mine. It's so **unfair**!	not treating each person in the same way or equally.	unpleasant unsuccessful
unacceptable OPP **acceptable**	The player hit the ref. That's **unacceptable**.	so bad that you think it should not be allowed.	uncertain unkind
disloyal OPP **loyal**	They were very **disloyal** to the family.	not supporting your friends, family, country, etc.	dishonest disorganized
non-alcoholic OPP **alcoholic**	Is this drink **non-alcoholic**?	Juice is **non-alcoholic**, beer and wine are **alcoholic**.	non-smoking non-fiction

spotlight Prefixes

A prefix is a letter or group of letters that you put at the beginning of a word to change its meaning. The prefixes in the table above have the meaning 'not', e.g. ***in****secure* = not secure, ***il****legible* = not legible.

1 Cover the table. Write prefixes that add the meaning 'not' to the adjectives.

▶	im moral	3	___legal	6	___formal	9	___regular
1	___kind	4	___responsible	7	___smoking	10	___honest
2	___alcoholic	5	___certain	8	___secure	11	___relevant

2 Complete the dialogues with one word from the table.

▶ Did your company find a new manager? ~ No, we were unsuccessful.
1 Is stealing from the rich the right thing to do? ~ No, it's _____.
2 Has it got alcohol in it? ~ No, it's _____.
3 Is your age important for this kind of work? ~ No, it's _____.
4 Is she confident with other people? ~ No, she's quite _____.
5 Men and women don't earn the same in this job, do they? ~ No, and that's _____.
6 He didn't support his country, did he? ~ No, he was _____.

3 Complete the questions, then write your own answers, or ask another student.

ABOUT YOU

1 Do you think life is generally fair or _____? _____
2 Is teenagers' behaviour nowadays acceptable or _____? _____
3 Are your friends generally loyal or _____? _____
4 Is your handwriting legible or _____? _____
5 Do you think it should be legal or _____ to drive at 17? _____

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Reversing an action

do your jacket **up**
SYN **fasten** your jacket
OPP **undo/unfasten**

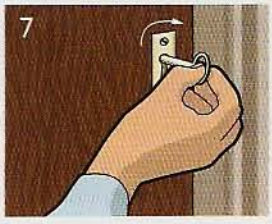
tie your **shoelace** (**up**)
SYN **fasten**
OPP **untie/unfasten**

pack your suitcase
OPP **unpack**

load the van (**up**)
OPP **unload**

plug the kettle **in**
OPP **unplug**

wrap the parcel (**up**)
OPP **unwrap**



lock the cupboard
OPP **unlock**

get dressed
OPP **get undressed**

4 Circle two correct words in each sentence.

▶ You can wrap a) (a parcel) b) (a present) c) water.
1 You can unload a) a ship b) a saucepan c) a lorry.
2 You can pack a) your luggage b) a suitcase c) a handbag.
3 You can unplug a) a room b) a printer c) a washing machine.
4 You can untie a) a dog b) a boat c) a newspaper.
5 You can do up a) a pair of trousers b) a hat c) a seat belt.
6 You can unlock a) a suitcase b) a car c) a bottle.

5 Complete the table using a synonym of the verb on the left, then write the opposite.

Sentence	Synonym	Opposite
▶ Take the bags out of the car.	Unload the car.	Load the car.
1 Take the paper off the present.		
2 Shut the suitcase with a key.		
3 Put your clothes on.		
4 Put your things in your suitcase.		
5 Fasten the buttons on your shirt.		
6 Fasten your shoelaces.		

6 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Say the words and opposites.

www.hellooteacher.ir

73 I can use suffixes

A Noun suffixes

Suffix	Verb	Noun	Verb	Noun
+ *ment*	**judge**	**judgement**	**measure**	**measurement**
+ *ion / sion* *ation / ition*	**react** **interpret**	**reaction** **interpretation**	**extend** **define**	**extension** **definition**
+ *ance / ence*	**disappear**	**disappearance**	**prefer**	**preference**
Suffix	Adjective	Noun	Adjective	Noun
+ *ty / ity*	**cruel**	**cruelty**	**real**	**reality**
+ *ness*	**gentle**	**gentleness**	**kind**	**kindness**

1 Circle the nouns.

disappeardefinitiongentlenessreactpreferkindness
disappearanceextensioncruelrealitydefine
preferenceinterpretmeasurejudgementextend

2 Look at the verbs and adjectives, which you did not circle, in Exercise 1. Write them below with the correct noun form.

▶ disappear disappearance
1 _____ _____
2 _____ _____
3 _____ _____
4 _____ _____
5 _____ _____
6 _____ _____
7 _____ _____

3 Complete the sentences using a word from the table above.

▶ She cooked for me when I was ill; I really appreciated her kindness .
1 Could I have the _____ of the room so that I can order the new carpet?
2 I get very upset when I hear about _____ towards animals.
3 He lives in a dream world and doesn't want to face the _____ of the situation.
4 The police are investigating the _____ of the young man, who was last seen in 2007.
5 I told the boss I was leaving; her _____ was very surprising. She laughed!
6 She chose the wrong person for the job. That's just poor _____ .
7 I like most types of novel, but my _____ is for crime stories and murder mysteries.
8 We're planning a new _____ for the old building; it'll be twice the size.

Glossary

judgement an opinion you form after thinking carefully about sth (in a court of law, the **judgement** is the judge's official decision).
measurement(s) the height, weight, etc. of sth.
reaction sth that you do or say as a result of sth that has happened.
extension a part that is added to sth to make it bigger or longer.
interpretation an understanding or explanation of the meaning of sth.
definition an exact statement of what a word or phrase means.
disappearance a situation in which sb or sth becomes impossible to see or find.
preference an interest in or liking of one thing more than another.
cruelty behaviour that deliberately causes a person or animal to suffer.
reality the way life really is.
gentleness kind and calm behaviour towards other people.
kindness behaviour that shows you care about others and want to help them.

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Adjective suffixes

Suffix	Examples	Meaning
-less **-ful**	Feel **powerless** in your job? Want to be **powerful**? Buy our POWERGUY video!	**powerless** not able to influence or control people or things. OPP **powerful**.
-proof	The world's only **waterproof** and **shockproof** digital camera. Great for underwater photography!	**waterproof** not allowing water to enter. **shockproof** made so that it isn't easily damaged if it is hit or dropped.
-ical	Cool, **practical**, **economical** clothing for **tropical** conditions. Go to practicalgear.com	**practical** useful and suitable. **economical** using money, goods, etc. carefully and without wasting any. **tropical** from or in the hottest parts of the world.
-able	***Fabulous fashionable shoes – and they're machine washable too!***	**fashionable** popular at the moment. **washable** able to be washed.
-ous	Get our T-shirts with **ridiculous** or **humorous** slogans	**ridiculous** very silly. **humorous** funny; amusing.
-y	Try our **spicy** curry or fish with a **creamy** sauce.	**spicy** with a strong, hot flavour. **creamy** containing cream, or smooth like cream.

4 Tick (✓) the correct form. Both forms may be correct.

▶ ridiculous ✓ ridicical ✗
1 waterproof ☐ proofwater ☐
2 careful ☐ careless ☐
3 creamful ☐ creamy ☐
4 humorful ☐ humorous ☐
5 practicy ☐ practical ☐
6 washable ☐ washless ☐
7 powerful ☐ powerless ☐

spotlight Adjectives ending in *-ful* and *-less*

There are several pairs of opposites ending in **-ful** and **-less**:
*He's a **careful** student.* = He doesn't make mistakes. OPP **careless.**
*It was a **useful**/**useless** suggestion.*
*This gas is **harmful**/**harmless**.*
*It's a **painful**/**painless** treatment.*

5 Are these things generally good or bad? Write G or B.

▶ a powerful speaker G
1 washable trousers ____
2 a shockproof watch ____
3 harmful medicine ____
4 painless medical treatment ____
5 tropical fruit ____
6 an economical car ____
7 a powerless government ____

6 Complete the sentences using adjectives formed from the nouns in the box below.

spice pain practice fashion ridicule use harm humour✓ economy

▶ The article wasn't supposed to be humorous, but it made me laugh all the same.
1 Don't leave that powder there – it could be _____ to the children.
2 The price of the meal was _____. I just couldn't afford it.
3 Throw that thing away – it's absolutely _____.
4 A bike is much more _____ than a car in the centre of town.
5 These shoes may be _____, but they're incredibly uncomfortable.
6 My car uses less petrol than my sister's, so it's a lot more _____.
7 Is your toothache very _____?
8 I couldn't eat the meal; it was much too _____ for me.

7 Test yourself. Look at the examples and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

74 I can use verb patterns

Verb + infinitive	Example	Meaning
intend to do sth	We **intend** to leave early tonight.	plan or mean to do sth.
manage to do sth	I **managed** to get a job, but it wasn't easy.	succeed with sth that is often difficult.
tend to do sth	I **tend** to get up late on Sundays.	usually do sth. **tendency** N.
pretend to do or be sth	He **pretended** to be ill because he just didn't want to go to school.	act in a particular way to make people believe sth that isn't true.
refuse to do sth	Why did she **refuse** to help you?	say that you won't do sth that sb has asked you to do.

Other common verbs used in this way: *expect, promise, offer, decide, hope, want, mean.*

Verb + -ing form		
imagine doing sth	I can't **imagine** working without a computer.	think what sth will be like.
admit doing sth **deny** doing sth	He **admitted** taking the vase. She **denied** taking his watch.	agree that you have done sth wrong. OPP **deny** doing sth.
recall doing sth	I don't **recall** meeting them.	remember sth you did in the past.
mind doing sth	Do you **mind** working late?	feel unhappy that you have to do sth.
regret doing sth	I **regret** leaving school at 16.	feel sorry that you did sth.

Other common verbs used in this way: *enjoy, avoid, keep, risk, regret, consider, suggest.*

Verb + object + infinitive		
persuade sb to do sth	He **persuaded** me to buy a new car.	make sb do sth by giving them a good reason to do it.
encourage sb to do sth	My sister **encouraged** me to have dancing lessons.	give sb help and support so that they feel confident to do sth.
warn sb not to do sth	He **warned** me not to go into that area.	tell sb not to do sth that might be unpleasant or dangerous.
remind sb to do sth	I had to **remind** her to post the letter.	help sb to remember sth that they have to do.
enable sb to do sth	His map **enabled** me to find it.	make it possible for sb to do sth.

Other common verbs used in this way: *want, ask, tell, beg, advise, expect, force, help, allow.*

Verb + object + preposition		
accuse sb **of** sth	The teacher **accused** the boy **of** cheating.	say that sb has done wrong or broken the law.
blame sb **for** sth	They **blamed** the teachers **for** the bad exam results.	think or say that sb is responsible for sth bad.
remind sb **of** sb/sth	You **remind** me **of** my dad.	cause sb to remember sb/sth.
introduce sb **to** sb	I **introduced** Miss Anderson **to** my boss.	tell sb another person's name when they meet for the first time.

Other common verbs used in this way: *ask sb for, forgive sb for, prevent sb from (doing sth), spend sth on.*

www.hellooteacher.ir

1 Cross out the verb that cannot be used in each sentence.

▶ They _____ to go.
a) wanted b) ~~enjoyed~~ c) refused d) intended

1 She _____ me to do it.
a) encouraged b) persuaded c) reminded d) pretended

2 He _____ losing the money.
a) managed b) admitted c) regretted d) denied

3 We _____ to go away in the summer.
a) hope b) enjoy c) tend d) intend

4 I don't _____ staying there.
a) recall b) mind c) tend d) regret

5 Did they _____ to spend all the money?
a) deny b) intend c) refuse d) mean

6 They _____ me not to go there.
a) reminded b) accused c) persuaded d) warned

2 Circle the correct verb.

▶ He said he was at the meeting, but denied/admitted causing the trouble.
1 The extra money I earn will warn/enable me to have a holiday this year.
2 The roads will be busy, so we intend/pretend to leave early.
3 I can't recall/imagine living in another country.
4 He said it was dangerous and warned/encouraged me not to go there.
5 The girl behind the bar accuses/reminds me of your sister.
6 Actually, I don't mind/admit going to the dentist.

3 Match 1–6 with a–g.

▶ She suggested *e*
1 She accused _____
2 She persuaded _____
3 She denied _____
4 She pretended _____
5 She introduced _____
6 She blamed _____

a making any mistakes.
b me to her sister.
c to be an actress.
d me for the mistakes.
e going out. ✓
f me of lying.
g me to go.

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

Is there anything:
1 you managed to do recently that was difficult? What? _____
2 you intended to do recently but didn't? What? _____
3 you regret doing recently? What? _____
4 you have refused to do recently? What? _____
5 someone has persuaded you to do recently? What? _____
6 someone has warned you not to do recently? What? _____
7 someone has blamed you for recently? What? _____
8 someone has reminded you to do recently? What? _____

5 Test yourself. Cover the third column of each table and look at the verbs and examples. Can you remember the meanings?

www.hellooteacher.ir

75 I can use phrasal verbs

A Grammar

Verb	Example	Meaning
give up [no object]	They **gave up** when the other team scored the second goal.	accept you cannot do sth and so stop trying.
go up	Sales **went up** last month.	increase in price, level, etc. OPP **go down**.
run out	My visa **runs out** next week.	come to an end.
take after sb [object goes after the verb and particle]	I **take after** my father in looks but my mother in character.	look or behave like an older member of your family.
get over sth	She's been very ill, but she's **getting over** it now.	recover from an illness or bad experience.
give sth away [object can go between or after the verb and particle]	I had a bike but I **gave** it **away**. He's **given away** his old CDs.	give sth to sb without wanting money for it.
make sth up	I couldn't remember the story, so I **made** something **up**.	invent sth, often sth that you pretend is true.
switch sth on	Could you **switch** the light **on**? Could you **switch on** the light?	press sth to start electric power. OPP **switch sth off**.
put sth out	They **put out** the fire quickly. They **put** it **out** quickly.	make sth stop burning. SYN **extinguish** FML.
get on with sb [verb with 3 parts, object at the end]	Do you **get on with** your brother?	have a good relationship with sb.
run out of sth	We've **run out of** bread.	finish your supply of sth.

1 *Is the grammar in these sentences right* or wrong? Write R or W.

▶ She gave away it. W
1 The numbers have gone up. ____
2 Did he make the story up? ____
3 Does he take his father after? ____
4 Don't put out it. ____
5 He'll get over it. ____
6 You can't switch off it. ____
7 She couldn't do it, so she gave up. ____

2 Circle the correct answer.

▶ Prices have gone up/given up.
1 He definitely takes after/gets over his dad.
2 It's not true: he made it up/took after it.
3 Do you get on with/run out of his cousin?
4 My passport runs out/gets over soon.
5 I switched on/got over the cooker.
6 Did he give away/take after any food?

spotlight **Separable phrasal verbs**

With separable phrasal verbs, the object can go after the verb and particle (see 1 below) or between the verb and the particle (2), but a pronoun must go in the middle (3).

1 *He gave away* ***the bike.*** ✓
2 *He gave* ***the bike*** *away.* ✓
3 *He gave* ***it*** *away.* ✓ (NOT *He ~~gave away~~* ***it.***)

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ He didn't want his bike, so he gave it away.
1 The price went ____ from €5 to €6.
2 You can't smoke in here – you'll have to put that cigarette ____.
3 Let's watch TV. Will you switch it ____?
4 She was disappointed not to get the job, but she'll get ____ it.
5 She gets ____ well ____ my parents.
6 Oh no! We've run ____ ____ rice.

4 Test yourself. Look at the meanings and cover the examples and verbs. What are the verbs?

www.hellooteacher.ir

B In the classroom

STUDENT I can't **work out** number seven.

TEACHER OK. **Leave** it **out** and **go on** with the next one.

S I can't see the board, Miss.

T Well, **put** your glasses **on**.

T How are you **getting on**, Suki?

S Fine, thank you.

T Could you **pick up** those bits of paper and put them in the bin?

T I'll **give out** the dictionaries, but could you **put** them **back** when you've finished?

T If you **get through** the exercises today, we can **go over** them tomorrow in class.

Glossary

work sth out find an answer to sth.
leave sth out not include sth. SYN **omit sth.**
go on (with sth) continue (with sth). SYN **carry on (with sth).**
put sth on begin wearing sth. OPP **take sth off.**
get on make progress with sth you are doing.
pick sth up take hold of sth and lift it to a higher place. OPP **put sth down.** (*See spotlight.*)
give sth out give one of sth to each person in a group. SYN **hand sth out.**
put sth back return sth to its place (*see spotlight*).
get through sth complete a task or activity.
go over sth examine and check sth carefully.

spotlight Different meanings

Many phrasal verbs have more than one meaning.
Pick sth or **sb up** also means 'go and collect sth or sb':
*I have to **pick** the car **up** this morning.*
*Can you **pick** me **up** at 5.00?*
Put sth back also means 'move sth to a later time':
*We **put** the wedding **back** until the spring.*

5 Replace the underlined words with a phrasal verb with the same meaning.

▶ When are you going to collect the tickets? pick up
1 Do you want us to omit the next exercise? _____
2 Do you think we'll complete the book by the end of term? _____
3 I couldn't find an answer to the last question. _____
4 Do the exercise for homework and we'll check it on Thursday. _____
5 I asked her about her course yesterday. She's not doing very well. _____
6 Let's finish this first, then we can continue with Exercise 9. _____

6 Complete the sentences.

▶ If you don't want to do it, you can leave it out .
1 Could you give _____ the books to the students, Claude?
2 I'd like to get _____ Unit 5 by Friday, then go _____ with Unit 6 on Monday.
3 I don't know why the dictionaries aren't there. I put them _____ yesterday.
4 You had a job interview yesterday, didn't you? How did you get _____ ?
5 She took her boots _____ and left them on the steps.
6 I couldn't read it until I put my glasses _____ .
7 We're very busy this week, so I had to put the meeting _____ to next Monday.
8 The suitcase was very heavy; I had to keep picking it _____ and putting it _____ .

www.hellooteacher.ir

76 I can use a range of adverbs

A Other ways of saying *very*

Some adverbs are used with particular adjectives or verbs to mean *very*, *a lot*, or *to a large degree*.

Phrase	Meaning	Other examples
I was **bitterly disappointed** with my results.	very disappointed.	**bitterly cold**
He was **desperately unlucky** to lose his job.	very unlucky.	**desperately need**
Jack was **seriously injured** in the crash.	badly injured.	**seriously ill**
He was **terribly sorry** he couldn't come.	very sorry.	**terribly sad**
It's **vitally important** we remember.	very important.	
It's **highly unlikely** that she'll be late.	very unlikely.	**highly intelligent**
He **feels strongly** that the war is wrong.	has a strong belief.	**strongly oppose**
Prices have **risen sharply**.	risen a lot.	**fall sharply**
This expression is **widely used**.	used a lot.	**travel widely**
I love Lucy, but she's **completely mad**. I **completely forgot** about the party. Her first book was **totally different**. I'm not **totally convinced** he's innocent.	**completely** is used to emphasize an adjective or verb. SYN **totally**. **convinced** 100 per cent sure.	**completely bald** **completely ruined** **totally sure**

1 Add a suitable adverb to each sentence. Show where it should go.

▶ It's / important to go. vitally

1 They're intelligent boys. _____

2 It's cold outside. _____

3 That man is mad. _____

4 Paula's been ill. _____

5 Their profits have fallen. _____

6 We need to earn more money. _____

7 It was unnecessary to do that. _____

2 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

▶ They were all bitterly disappointed to lose the match.

1 The cost of coffee has _____ sharply since last year. It's almost double now.

2 The accident happened this morning, and several people were seriously _____.

3 I'm terribly _____. I completely _____ to bring my homework.

4 He _____ widely when he was in South America.

5 We both _____ strongly that the government should change its policy.

6 I'm not totally _____ that he knows what he's doing with that camera.

3 Replace *very* with a different adverb in each sentence.

▶ She's ~~very~~ sorry about the mistake. terribly

1 A good dictionary is *very* important. _____

2 It's *very* unlikely that he'll come. _____

3 We were *very* unlucky to lose the match. _____

4 It used to be quiet but it's *very* different now. _____

5 He was *very* disappointed he didn't win. _____

6 That story of the missing girl is *very* sad. _____

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Frequency and degree

AXEL Do you and Mac still go to concerts together **regularly**?
HARRY No, we **rarely** see each other these days. The last time was **roughly** a year ago.
AXEL Oh. Why's that?
HARRY Well, he lives in Watford now, which is miles away. That's **mainly** the reason.
AXEL But you still go to concerts, don't you?
HARRY No, **actually** I don't. I think I'm getting a bit old for rock concerts. **Generally** I just listen to music at home.
AXEL *Don't you miss the excitement of live concerts?*
HARRY That's **partly** why I don't go. I find the noise and hysteria **rather** annoying, actually.

spotlight ***rather, fairly, quite, pretty***

These words are all used to say that something is true to some extent. **Rather** and **pretty** INF are usually stronger, **quite** and **fairly** are usually weaker.

*He's **fairly/quite** lazy.*
*The film was **pretty** good.*

With positive words, **rather** suggests a positive opinion is unexpected.

*It was a very cheap restaurant, but surprisingly the food was **rather** good.*

Glossary

regularly • happening quite often.
rarely • not happening often. SYN **seldom**.
roughly • about; not exactly. SYN **approximately**.
mainly • mostly. SYN **largely**.
actually • really (often used when you are saying the opposite of what sb expects). SYN **in (actual) fact**.
generally • usually; most of the time. SYN **on the whole**.
partly • to some degree but not completely. SYN **to some / a certain extent** (***To some extent** I agree.* OR *I agree **to a certain extent**.*).

4 Same or different? Write S or D.

▶ The town is largely industrial. | The town is mainly industrial. S
1 It's quite good. | It's fairly good. ____
2 Generally it's very quiet here. | On the whole it's very quiet here. ____
3 The house is actually very nice. | The house is very nice at the moment. ____
4 It's approximately ten kilometres. | It's roughly ten kilometres. ____
5 We go there regularly. | We rarely go there. ____
6 I partly agreed with him. | I agreed with him to some extent. ____
7 The book was rather good. | The book was pretty good. ____
8 They seldom work late. | They rarely work late. ____

5 Replace the underlined word with a different word or phrase with the same meaning.

▶ I go to the gym regularly. quite often
1 Generally I enjoyed the play. ____
2 The students were largely Italian. ____
3 There were roughly 30 at the party. ____
4 We go there mainly for the skiing. ____
5 It's a nice flat but it's pretty small. ____
6 I wasn't sure about Leo at first, but in fact he's very nice. ____
7 We seldom go out during the week. ____
8 Your sister is quite tall, isn't she? ____

6 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings and synonyms?

www.hellooteacher.ir

Review: Language

Unit 68

1 Circle the word or phrase that is different.

► as / since / (due to)

1 despite / because / in spite of
2 as a result / all the same / consequently
3 what's more / still / plus
4 although / despite the fact that / furthermore
5 though / so / therefore
6 in addition / moreover / however
7 so / nevertheless / however
8 provided that / whereas / as long as

2 Complete the texts with appropriate link words.

1 I stayed with a delightful family last summer when I was studying German in Heidelberg. ► Despite the fact that my German was quite basic to start with, they helped me with conversation, and as a (1) _____, I made a lot of progress. And what's (2) _____, by the end of my stay I felt I had made new friends. I'll go back and stay with them next summer (3) _____ that they don't have other guests.

2 The first day of the holiday was a disaster. There was a huge storm and we couldn't leave the hotel (4) _____ to the bad weather. In (5) _____, there was no electricity in the evening (6) _____ the storm had brought down the power lines. (7) _____, the following morning the sun came out, and things started to improve.

Unit 69

1 Complete the table.

Definition	Word	Opposite
► working well and quickly, and without mistakes	efficient	inefficient
1 not done or seen or happening very often	r	
2 just good enough, but nothing more	a	
3 *typical of the past, but not now*	o	
4 connected with the town, not the country	u	
5 full of people	c	
6 made by people and used instead of something natural	a	natural or
7 behaving in a bad and offensive way	r	
8 feeling pleasure from what you have achieved	s	
9 quite hard	f	
10 successful and giving the result you want	e	

Unit 70

1 Tick (✓) the correct words. Be careful: one or both may be correct.

► We live on *the edge* ☑ *the rear* ☐ of the village.

1 The cat was sitting *underneath* ☐ *over* ☐ the chair.

www.hellooteacher.ir

2 We don't play cards very often *nowadays* ☐ *these days* ☐.
3 The man behind us coughed *during* ☐ *throughout* ☐ the film. It was so annoying.
4 We knocked on nearly every door, and *now and again* ☐ *eventually* ☐ found Lisa's house.
5 She jumped down from the window *beneath* ☐ *onto* ☐ the grass.
6 I go there *occasionally* ☐ *recently* ☐ to get some peace and quiet.
7 I could see her in the distance as she was running *beside* ☐ *towards* ☐ me.
8 We were working hard in the lesson. *Meanwhile* ☐ *In the meantime* ☐, Darren was sitting outside, chatting to his girlfriend.

Unit 71

1 Complete the table with words from the box and their prepositions.

a hurry ✓ get rid involved ✓ capable insist general rely favour of
take care purpose public approve depend a rush board

in	on	of
in a hurry		
involved in		

Unit 72

1 Cross out the wrong word, and write the correct word at the end.

▶ We ~~outloaded~~ the car and put the shopping away. unloaded
1 Margo's behaviour is completely non-acceptable. _____
2 His opinion is unrelevant; I'm going to leave anyway. _____
3 I think she's feeling a bit dissecure – let's look after her. _____
4 Could I have an unalcoholic drink, please? _____
5 You can disfasten your seat belt now. _____
6 My boss is very unhonest; I just don't trust him. _____
7 I hate it when people are inpatient. _____

Unit 73

1 Complete the dialogues.

▶ Is it OK to put this jacket in the washing machine? ~ No, it isn't washable .
1 He judges situations well, doesn't he? ~ Yes, he has very good _____ .
2 Do you know what this word means? ~ No, I can't give you a _____ .
3 How would you react if you saw a tiger? ~ I don't know what my _____ would be.
4 That's a woman with a lot of power. ~ Yes, she's extremely _____ .
5 This mobile comes in grey, silver, and black. ~ Any colour's OK for me; I don't have a _____ .
6 That's cruel to animals. ~ Yes, I hate that kind of _____ .
7 Why are you building an _____ ? ~ We need a bigger kitchen.
8 Will this stuff do me any harm? ~ No, it's completely _____ .

www.hellooteacher.ir

Unit 74

1 Rewrite the sentences using verbs from the box and the correct construction.

deny ✓ accuse remind tend recall persuade pretend regret admit refuse blame

▶ She said she didn't take the ring. She denied taking the ring.
1 I don't remember meeting your parents. I don't _____.
2 He wouldn't leave. He _____.
3 Carrie said she stole the necklace. Carrie _____.
4 Mario said I took all the food. Mario _____.
5 She's sorry she moved to London. She _____.
6 When I see Boris I think of your brother. Boris _____.
7 He said the mistake was my fault. He _____.
8 I usually work in the evening. I _____.
9 Cal said he was a doctor, but he wasn't. Cal _____.
10 She gave me good reasons to leave. She _____.

Unit 75

1 One word is missing in each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end.

▶ I'd like to try and / through this chapter today. get
1 My brother is very like my dad, but I take my mother. _____
2 If you don't need the money, why don't you give it? _____
3 I don't get very well with my boss. _____
4 If you can't answer one of the questions, just it out. _____
5 He put his coat and ran out of the house. _____
6 I can't work how to use this camera. _____
7 Could you the TV on? I'd like to see the news. _____
8 I've done my essay, but I need to go it again. _____

Unit 76

1 Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

seriously widely sharply totally roughly highly ✓ rather rarely strongly

▶ He's got a PhD from Harvard; he's highly intelligent – and he's charming too.
1 Salaries have risen _____ in the last three years.
2 I feel very _____ about the need to improve public transport.
3 The garden is _____ thirty metres long.
4 I didn't enjoy the food very much, and the place was _____ expensive.
5 I'm always saying I'm going to do more exercise, but I _____ go to the gym.
6 This kind of tool was _____ used by farmers in the nineteenth century.
7 I fell off a wall and hurt myself, but I wasn't _____ injured.
8 I'm _____ convinced that better communication can change the world.

www.hellooteacher.ir

77 I can recognize informal English

A Formal and informal English

Most words and expressions are **neutral**, and can be used in most situations. Occasionally we use formal language in spoken English, e.g. announcements (*The play will **commence** in three minutes.*), but more commonly in written English, e.g. business letters or official documents (*Keep your receipt as proof of **purchase**.*). Informal language is very common in spoken English, especially in conversation. Certain types of language are often informal:

- many phrasal verbs, e.g. ***turn sb/sth down***
- uses of **get**, e.g. *Could you **get** me a pen?*
- many **idioms**, e.g. ***keep an eye on sth***, ***out of the blue***
- many examples of **vague** language, e.g. *thing(s)*, ***stuff***, ***sort of***.

Glossary

neutral not having any strong qualities (so in this context, neither formal nor informal).

commence FML begin.

purchase FML the act of buying sth. **purchase** V.

turn sb/sth down INF refuse an offer.

get sth INF go to a place and bring sth back. SYN **fetch sth.**

idiom an expression in which the meaning is different from the meanings of the individual words in it. **idiomatic** ADJ.

keep an eye on sth INF look after sth and make sure it is safe.

out of the blue INF suddenly and unexpectedly.

vague not clear or definite.

sort of INF not exactly, but partly (e.g. *Are you busy? Yes, sort of.*)

spotlight ***stuff***

Stuff INF is used to refer to something without using its name. We usually use **stuff** to replace uncountable nouns or plural countable nouns.
*Do you need much of this **stuff**?* (e.g. washing powder, soy sauce)
*Put that **stuff** over there.* (e.g. books, papers, files)

1 Formal, informal, or neutral? Write F, I, or N.

▶ get I
1 sort of ____
2 purchase ____
3 stuff ____
4 commence ____
5 vague ____
6 out of the blue ____
7 neutral ____

2 Replace the underlined word with a suitable word or phrase that has the same meaning in the context.

▶ I made him a good offer but he refused it. turned it down
1 Do you want me to get your coat for you? ____
2 [announcement] The film will start in five minutes. ____
3 Where can I leave my clothes? ____
4 [business letter] There is a discount if you buy a certain quantity. ____
5 Then my parents arrived unexpectedly. ____
6 Could you look after my suitcase for a minute while I get a coffee? ____

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ My brother arrived out of the blue .
1 Do you understand? ~ Yes, sort ____ .
2 I don't know exactly where she lives, but I have a ____ idea.
3 Could you get some of that organic ____ the children like to drink?
4 'Keep an eye on something' is quite a common ____ in English.
5 I offered him a lot of money but he still ____ it down.
6 The walls are ____ of green, but it's not a strong colour; it's quite ____ .

www.hellooteacher.ir

B Common exchanges

A **Hi. How's it going?**

B Not bad. And you?

A Could you **give me a hand?**

B **Yeah** sure, **no problem.**

A **What's up with** Mark?

B **I haven't a clue.**

A **What've you been up to lately?**

B **Nothing much.**

A **Take care.** See you soon.

B Yeah. **Cheers.**

A **Hang on.** I'll be with you in a minute.

B OK, but **hurry up.**

4 Same or different? Write S or D.

▶ Yeah | Yes S

1 no problem | nothing much .....

2 cheers | goodbye .....

3 recently | lately .....

4 late | lately .....

5 I don't know | I haven't a clue .....

6 How's it going? | How are things? .....

7 What've you been up to? | What's up? .....

5 Put these words and expressions in more informal English.

▶ Hello. Hi

1 Yes. .....

2 Wait a moment. .....

3 What's the matter? .....

4 I don't know. .....

5 How are you? .....

6 What've you been doing? .....

7 Thank you. .....

6 Complete the dialogues.

▶ What's up ? ~ Nothing. Why?

1 See you soon. ~ Yeah. Take ..... .

2 Hi. How's it ..... ? ~ Fine, thanks. And you?

3 Could you ..... me a hand? ~ Sure. No ..... .

4 We have to go. Hurry ..... . ~ OK. Just ..... on a minute.

5 What've you been up ..... ? ~ Nothing much.

7 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

Glossary

Hi	INF hello.
How's it going?	INF = How are you? SYN **How are things?**
give sb a hand	help sb. SYN **lend sb a hand.**
yeah	INF yes.
no problem	INF used to say that you are happy to do sth.
What's up (with sb)?	INF = What's the matter (with sb)?
I haven't a clue	INF = I don't know.
What've you been up to?	INF = What've you been doing?
lately	recently.
nothing much	INF nothing of importance.
take care	INF used when saying goodbye.
hang on	INF wait a moment. SYN **hold on.**
hurry up	INF move or do sth quickly.

spotlight *cheers*

We use **cheers** to express good wishes when we have an alcoholic drink. It is also used in informal situations to mean either 'thank you' or 'goodbye'.

www.hellooteacher.ir

C An everyday conversation

A Do you **fancy** a drink?

B No, **I'd better be off** in a minute.

A Really? I thought you had **loads of** time.

B No, I've got to get to Mark's to **pick up** a **tent**[1].

A **What for?**

B It's for a **mate** of mine. He wants to take his **kids** camping this weekend.

A At this time of the year? **You're joking!**

B I'm not. He **reckons** the weather's going to be fine.

A That's **nonsense**. The forecast is awful.

B Oh well. If it's a **disaster**, they'll just have to come back home.

Glossary

fancy sth	INF want sth. SYN **feel like (doing) sth.**
I'd better be off	INF I have to leave now.
loads (of sth)	INF a lot of sth. SYN **masses (of sth)** INF.
pick sth/sb up	go and collect sth/sb.
What for?	INF Why are you doing sth? OR What do you need sth for?
mate	INF a friend.
kid	INF a child.
reckon	INF think.
nonsense	ideas or statements that you think are stupid or not true. SYN **rubbish** INF.
disaster	INF a complete failure.

spotlight *joke*

A **joke** is something said or done to make you laugh, especially a funny short story.
We use the expression **you're joking** or **you must be joking** to express surprise, when we don't believe what someone is saying.

8 Match 1–6 with a–g.

▶	disaster e	a	child
1	mate ___	b	want
2	loads ___	c	a lot
3	rubbish ___	d	think
4	fancy ___	e	failure ✓
5	kid ___	f	nonsense
6	reckon ___	g	friend

9 Complete the dialogues with a single word.

▶ Do you fancy going out tonight? ~ Yes. Where shall we go?
1 Sam's going to get a snake. ~ What! You must be ___
2 What was the party like? ~ Terrible. An absolute ___.
3 Are you going camping? ~ Yes, but I've got to buy a new ___.
4 He said he had ___ of money. ~ Don't believe him. He talks ___.
5 I'd ___ be off now. ~ Why? What time's your train?
6 I'm going to Sweden tomorrow. ~ Really? What ___?
7 Where's Leyla? ~ She's ___ up the kids from school.
8 Do you feel ___ going out? ~ Yes, good idea.

10 Test yourself. Look at the glossary meanings and cover the words. What are the words?

www.hellooteacher.ir

78 I can write a formal letter

Notes	Beginnings	Endings
If you are writing to a **stranger** or you don't know the person's name, use the phrases on the right.	**Dear Sir** **Dear Madam** **Dear Sir or Madam**	**Yours faithfully** *your name*
If you know the person, use *Mr, Mrs, Miss, Ms, Dr,* etc. and their surname.	Dear Mr Wu Dear Miss Gilberto	**Yours sincerely**
If you know them quite well, you can use their first name.	Dear Rosa Dear Conrad	**(With) best wishes** **Kind regards**
For an informal letter to a good friend or family member, use the first name. Note: *Love (from)* is not normally used by a man writing to another man.	Dear Min Ho Hi, Pavel	**Love (from)** **All the best / Take care**

45 Muswell Rd
London NW4

15 April 2008

Sunshine Holiday Cottages
Fore St
Truro

Dear Mr Ellison

Further to our telephone conversation of last Friday, I **enclose** a cheque for £50 as a **deposit** for the rental of Rainbow Cottage for one week, **commencing** 21 August. **I would be grateful if you could** send me **further** information about the property, **in particular**, **whether** there is parking **nearby**.

We are planning to bring our dog. If this is a problem, please **don't hesitate to** contact me.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours sincerely
Louise Robertson

Louise Robertson

Glossary

stranger	a person that you do not know.
enclose sth	put sth in an envelope or packet with sth else.
deposit	a sum of money which is your first payment for sth (you will pay the rest later). (You pay a **deposit on** or **for** sth.)
commence	FML begin.
I would be grateful if you could ...	used when you request sth. SYN **I would appreciate it if you could ...**
in particular	SYNS **especially, particularly.**
whether	if.
nearby	not far away. SYN **close by.**
don't hesitate to do sth	don't feel worried about doing sth.
look forward to sth	think with pleasure about sth that is going to happen.
hearing from you	receiving your letter.

spotlight *further, further to*

Further ADJ has several meanings:
1) comparative of *far*: *The station is **further** than the bank.*
2) (only before a noun) more: *Have you any **further** questions?*

Further to . . . FML is used in letters to mention a previous letter or conversation about the same subject:
***Further to** my letter of 5 July, I am happy to . . .*

www.hellooteacher.ir

1 Cover the letter and answer these questions.

▶ Is Louise Robertson going to rent a cottage? Yes, she is.

1 Is this the first time she has contacted Mr Ellison? _____

2 Why is she sending him £50? _____

3 Will she be leaving or arriving on 21 August? _____

4 Are there any other things she needs to know? If so, what? _____

5 Whose address did she write on the right-hand side? _____

6 Whose address did she write on the left-hand side? _____

7 Did she write the date? If so, where? _____

8 Which beginning did she use? _____

9 Which ending did she use? _____

10 Could she end it 'Take care, Louise'? Why/Why not? _____

2 Tick (✓) the sentences that are correct and add a cross (X) to the sentences that are wrong.

▶ If you're writing to a family member, you can end it with 'Love' and your signature. ✓

1 If you begin 'Dear Maria', you can end it with 'Kind regards'. _____

2 If you begin your letter 'Dear Sir', you can end it with 'With best wishes'. _____

3 If you don't know the name of the person you are writing to, you begin 'Dear Sir or Madam'. _____

4 If you write 'All the best' at the end, you could also write 'Take care'. _____

5 If you begin 'Dear Miss Periskic', you should end 'Yours faithfully'. _____

6 'Yours faithfully' is a common ending when you are writing to a stranger. _____

3 Which words are missing where the slashes (/) are? Write them at the end.

▶ Could you send me / details of the accommodation? further

1 I look forward / hearing / you. _____

2 If there's a problem, please / hesitate / ring me. _____

3 I / a photocopy / my identity card with the application form. _____

4 I would be / if you / phone me about the meeting. _____

5 Further / your letter / 7 April, I wish to confirm my booking. _____

6 I would / it if / could help me. _____

7 Please let me know / particular / there is a beach nearby. _____

8 I enclose a cheque for €30 as a / for the rental of the room. _____

4 Complete the letter.

40 Lincoln Rise, Churchfield, Yorkshire
14 January 2008

Hot Property Rentals
Barton St
Weatherfield

▶ Dear Mrs Stephens

(1) _____ to your letter of 12 January, I (2) _____ a cheque for £500 as a (3) _____ on Flat 7, Walsingham Buildings. As we agreed, my rental contract will (4) _____ on 1 February and run for one year. I would be (5) _____ if you could send me a receipt for the amount enclosed.

I would also (6) _____ it if you could let me know (7) _____ I will be able to park in the basement of the building. If not, will I be able to find parking (8) _____ ?

If you need any (9) _____ information from me, please don't (10) _____ to call me.

Yours (11) _____ ,

Jurek Gorzy

5 Test yourself. Look at the glossary meanings and cover the words. What are the words?

www.hellooteacher.ir

79 I can understand abbreviations and short forms

A Numbers and measurements

metric weight 1 **g / gm** (gram) = 1000 **mg** (milligrams) 1000 g = 1 **kg** (kilo/kilogram) 1000 kg = 1 **t** (**tonne**)	**metric length** 1 **cm** (centimetre) = 10 **mm** (millimetres) 100 cm = 1 **m** (metre) 1000 m = 1 **km** (kilometre)
metric capacity 1 **cl** (centilitre) = 10 **ml** (millilitres) 100 cl = 1 **l** (litre)	**money** UK £1 (**pound**) = 100 **p** (**pence**) (a sum of money); **penny** PL **pennies** (coins) USA $1 (**dollar**) = 100 **c/ct** (**cents**)
speed **metric**: 80 **kph** (kilometres per hour) = **non-metric**: 50 **mph** (miles per hour)	

1 Write the correct abbreviation or symbol for each word.

▶ litre l

1 metre ____
2 pence ____
3 kilometre ____
4 millilitre ____
5 tonne ____
6 miles per hour ____
7 centilitre ____
8 kilogram ____
9 centimetre ____
10 milligram ____
11 cents ____
12 kilometres per hour ____
13 gram ____
14 millimetre ____
15 pound ____
16 dollar ____

2 Complete the sentences with an appropriate measurement or amount of money.

▶ For sale: 20 l petrol cans at reduced prices.
1 In Italy you can do a maximum speed of 130 ____ on the motorway, or 81 ____ .
2 You need a piece of card 20 ____ thick.
3 To make pasta for one, cook about 70–80 ____ of spaghetti.
4 The cheapest thing you can buy in the café is a coffee for 85 ____ .

B Shortened forms

The shortened forms in the table are used commonly in spoken English.

Short form	Full form / Meaning	Short form	Full form / Meaning
ad, advert	advertisement	**paper**	newspaper
pub	**public house** FML a place where you can buy and drink alcohol and meet friends.	**deli**	**delicatessen** a shop or part of a supermarket that sells special or unusual foreign food.
flu	**influenza** FML	**TV, telly** INF	**television**
gym	gymnasium	**board**	blackboard; notice board.
lab INF	**laboratory** a place used for scientific research, testing, etc.	**vet**	veterinary surgeon, a doctor for animals.
pop (music)	popular music	**bike** **motorbike**	bicycle or motorbicycle motorbicycle
fridge	refrigerator	**plane**	aeroplane

www.hellooteacher.ir

3 Write the short form of these words.

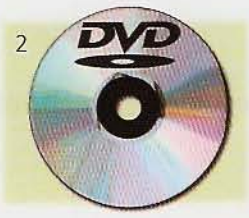
▶ television TV, telly
1 veterinary surgeon .....
2 popular music .....
3 refrigerator .....
4 bicycle .....
5 gymnasium .....
6 aeroplane .....
7 blackboard .....
8 newspaper .....
9 public house .....
10 delicatessen .....
11 laboratory .....

4 Complete the dialogues with shortened words from the table.

▶ Have you taken the cat to the vet yet? ~ Yes, I'm waiting for test results from the .....
1 Could you buy some cheese from the ..... ? ~ I got some earlier – it's in the .....
2 Are you still looking for a job? ~ Yes, I'm just looking at some ..... in the .....
3 Do you fancy a drink at the ..... tonight? ~ Well, I was planning to watch the .....
4 How are you? ~ I feel awful; I think I've got .....

C Abbreviations

The abbreviations marked * are pronounced like words, e.g. **AIDS** is pronounced 'aids'. Other abbreviations are pronounced as individual letters, e.g. **BBC** is pronounced 'b-b-c'. It **stands for** British Broadcasting Corporation.



NATO*	North Atlantic Treaty Organization	**UFO**[1]	unidentified flying object
AIDS*	acquired immune deficiency syndrome (often called 'SIDA' in other languages)	**PIN***	personal identification number (you use this with a credit card, for instance)
UEFA*	Union of European Football Association	**VAT**	value added tax (a tax added to goods and services)
ATM	automatic teller machine (a cash machine)	**ISP**	internet service provider, e.g. AOL
EU	the European Union	**DVD**[2]	digital versatile disc
UN	the United Nations	**IT**	information technology
CV	**curriculum vitae** (a formal list of your education or work experience that you need when you apply for a job)	**ID card**	**identity card** (a card with your name and photo which is proof of who you are)

5 Complete the abbreviations.

▶ NATO is a European and North American organization.
1 If you use an AT..... , you'll need your .....IN.
2 If you apply for a job, send in a C..... .
3 I showed my I..... card to the police.
4 You have to pay VA..... on those goods.
5 Who won the U..... .....A Cup last year?
6 He's good with computers: he's in I..... .
7 Millions are suffering from .....IDS in Africa.
8 We watched a DV_ about UF.....s last night.
9 There are over 25 countries in the .....U.
10 The .....N is an international organization.
11 An .....SP provides access to the internet and email.

6 Test yourself. Cover the full forms and meanings in the tables in sections B and C, and look at the short forms and abbreviations. What are the full forms?

www.hellooteacher.ir

80 I can **understand American English**

US English	British English	
candy	**sweets**	
cellphone	mobile (phone)	
closet	cupboard	
cookies	biscuits	

US English	British English	
elevator	lift	
faucet	tap	
French fries	chips	
truck	lorry	
billfold	**wallet**	

US English	British English	Meaning
apartment	flat	a set of rooms that is used as a home (**apartment** is sometimes used in British English for a smart holiday flat).
attorney	lawyer or **barrister**	a lawyer, especially one who represents people in court (**barrister** in British English).
datebook	**diary**	a book in which you write what you have to do in the future.
drugstore	chemist	a shop that sells medicines and other goods.
garbage/trash **garbage/trash can**	rubbish **dustbin**	waste food, paper, etc. that you throw away. a container outside your home, in which you put the waste.
gasoline/gas	**petrol**	fuel used in a car (e.g. *We stopped for more **gas** on the way.*).
high school	secondary school	a school for children aged 14 to 18 (a British secondary school is for children aged 11 to 16 or 18).
mall	**shopping mall** / shopping centre	shops, cinemas, etc. in a large covered area.
movie theater	cinema	a place where you see a **movie** (**film** in British English).
purse	handbag	a bag for money, keys, etc., used especially by women (in British English, a **purse** is mainly used for carrying coins).
railroad	railway	a system of trains and the tracks on which they run.
round trip	return (ticket)	a journey to a place and back.
sidewalk	pavement	the part of the road where people walk.
store	shop	a shop (large or small).
subway	underground	an underground railway system.
vacation	holiday	a period of time away from work or school, often spent travelling for pleasure.

www.hellooteacher.ir

1 Combine words from the box to form five more American English words.

free ✓	side	cell	date	drug	rail
phone	way ✓	walk	store	road	book

▶ freeway
1 _____
2 _____
3 _____
4 _____
5 _____

spotlight *highway, freeway, expressway*

The American English words **highway**, **freeway**, and **expressway** all refer to **main roads** (British English) used for travelling long distances. A **motorway** (British English) is sometimes called an **interstate (highway)** in American English.

2 Complete the missing letters.

▶ m o v i e
1 g _ _ b _ g _
2 s _ b _ _ y
3 c _ _ s _ t
4 c _ _ d y
5 a t _ _ _ n _ y
6 g _ s _ l _ _ e
7 t r _ _ _ p _ _ t _ t _ _ n
8 b _ l l _ _ _ d

3 Complete the American English words.

▶ What age do you start high school in America?
1 Put that stuff in the trash _____ .
2 We went to the movie _____ last night.
3 You can buy these things at the drug _____ .
4 Do you want French _____ with your steak?
5 I go on Tuesday and come back on Thursday, so I'll need a round _____ .
6 We drove over 200 miles on the interstate _____ .

4 Replace the British English words with American English words.

▶ When does the ~~shop~~ open? store
1 Where are you going for your holiday? _____
2 It's upstairs, so we'll need to take the lift. _____
3 Where shall I put this rubbish? _____
4 She keeps the note in her handbag. _____
5 I put the appointment in my diary. _____
6 Do we have any more sweets? _____
7 He drives a big lorry. _____
8 Would you like another biscuit? _____
9 Could you turn on the tap? _____
10 We can't use the pavement here. _____

5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 How often do you use the subway? _____
2 How often do you use the railroad? _____
3 How often do you go to a movie theater? _____
4 What was the last movie you saw? _____
5 How often do you eat French fries? _____
6 Where did you go for your last vacation? _____
7 When was the last time you went to a mall? _____
8 When did you leave high school? _____

6 Test yourself. Cover the US and British English words and look at the pictures and meanings. Can you remember the words?

www.hellooteacher.ir

Review: Styles of English

Unit 77

1 Change the underlined words to make them informal.

► T Hello, Suki. Hi
S Hey, Tomas! How (1) are you? .....
T Oh, not bad. What've you been (2) doing lately? .....
S Oh, nothing (3) important. .....
T Listen, Suki, what's (4) the matter with Jodie? .....
S Well, she went for that job at NDC, but they (5) rejected her. .....
T (6) I don't believe you! .....
S No, it's true. She (7) thinks someone doesn't like her there. .....
T That's (8) nonsense. Everyone likes Jodie. .....
S I know. Anyway, there are (9) lots of other jobs around. .....
T (10) Yes, you're right. .....
S Sorry, Tomas, (11) I have to leave now. .....
T OK, see you later. (12) Bye! .....

2 Cross out the answer which is not correct.

►	These are idiomatic:	a) *out of the blue*	b) *I haven't a clue*	c) ~~*neutral*~~
1	These verbs are formal:	a) *commence*	b) *fancy*	c) *purchase*
2	These mean 'go and bring something back':	a) *get*	b) *fetch*	c) *reckon*
3	These can mean 'goodbye':	a) *hang on*	b) *cheers*	c) *take care*
4	These mean 'wait':	a) *hang on*	b) *hold on*	c) *hurry up*
5	These are used to express surprise:	a) *Tell me a joke*	b) *You're joking*	c) *You must be joking*
6	These are examples of vague language:	a) *stuff*	b) *keep an eye on someone*	c) *sort of*

Unit 78

1 Circle the correct word.

► (Dear)/Hi Mr Bruzzone
1 Dear Mr/Sir or Mrs/Madam
2 Kind regard/regards
3 Your/Yours faithfully
4 I'd like further/further to details.
5 I close/enclose a self-addressed envelope.
6 I'm not sure whether/weather it will be sunny.
7 I need some information, particular/in particular the size of the garage.
8 I look forward to hear/hearing from you.
9 Please hesitate/don't hesitate to contact me.
10 All the best/All best, Jamila

www.hellooteacher.ir

1 Complete the letter.

Hot Property Rentals, Barton St, Weatherfield

25 March 2008

▶ Dear Mr Buerk

(1) ..... to your letter of 23 March, I am writing to confirm that I have received your cheque for £90 as a (2) ..... on Sunnybank Villa, Southstoke, for two weeks (3) ..... 1 July.

You asked for (4) ..... details about the cottage; it has four bedrooms, two bathrooms, a kitchen, a sitting room, and a small garden. You have parking (5) ..... , about 30 m from the front door.

I would be (6) ..... if you could let me know a few days before your visit (7) ..... you will be using all four bedrooms so that I can let the cleaner know. I would also (8) ..... it if you could send me the balance of £345 at least four weeks before your arrival.

Please don't (9) ..... to contact me if you have any (10) ..... questions. I look (11) ..... to seeing you at Sunnybank Villa in July.

Yours (12) ..... ,

Judy Kelveton

Judy Kelveton

Unit 79

1 What do these abbreviations stand for?

▶ EU = European Union
1 ID = ...
2 UN = United .....
3 PIN = personal .....
4 VAT = value .....
5 CV = curriculum .....
6 ISP = internet .....
7 IT = ...

2 Can you shorten these words? If 'Yes', what is the short form?

▶ delicatessen Yes (deli)
▶ supermarket No
1 refrigerator .....
2 wardrobe .....
3 veterinary surgeon .....
4 washing machine .....
5 advertisement .....
6 influenza .....
7 laboratory .....
8 receptionist .....
9 gymnasium .....
10 scientific .....

Unit 80

1 Complete the table with nine more pairs of British and American English words from the box.

sweets ✓	*sidewalk*
garbage	drugstore
biscuit	candy ✓
lift	diary
truck	rubbish
pavement	cookie
chemist	gasoline
elevator	datebook
lorry	closet
petrol	faucet
tap	wardrobe

British English	*American English*
sweets	candy

www.hellooteacher.ir

Vocabulary building

All the words in **bold** are in the units.

1 Verbs and nouns

Verb	Noun
avoid	avoidance
approve	approval
breathe	breathing
celebrate	celebration
communicate	communication
consider	consideration
contain	container
criticize	criticism
decorate	decoration
disapprove	disapproval
divide	division
evaluate	evaluation
exhibit	**exhibition**
govern	**government**/governor
interrupt	interruption
investigate	investigation
involve	involvement
kill	killing
propose	**proposal**
recognize	recognition
refer	**reference**
remove	removal
require	requirement
shoot	shot
trade	trade, trading

Test yourself

2 Adjectives and verbs

Adjective	Verb
amusing/amused	amuse
amazing/amazed	amaze
complicated	complicate
concerned	concern
cracked	crack
delighted	delight
depressed/ depressing	depress
devoted	**devote**
frightening/ frightened	frighten
irritating/irritated	irritate
repeated	**repeat**

3 Adjectives and nouns

Adjective	Noun
accidental	**accident**
allied	**ally**
anxious	anxiety
artistic	**artist**
basic	basis
determined	determination
disgusting	disgust
electrical	**electrician**/electricity
mysterious	**mystery**
national	nation
proud	pride
regional	**region**
sexual	**sex**
suspicious	suspicion
sympathetic	sympathy
thick	thickness
traditional	tradition
valuable	**value**
wealthy	wealth
willing	willingness

4 Nouns, verbs, and adjectives

Noun	Verb	Adjective
contrast	contrast	contrasting
embarrassment	embarrass	**embarrassing**
entertainment	entertain	**entertaining**
disappointment	disappoint	**disappointed**
imagination	**imagine**	imaginary
infection	infect	**infectious**/infected
impression	impress	**impressive**
preparation	**prepare**	**prepared**
relation	relate	**related**
sailing, sailor	sail	**sailing**
separation	separate	**separate**
swelling	swell	**swollen**
variation	**vary**	varied

www.hellooteacher.ir

Answer key

Unit 1

1
1 gist
2 identify
3 construct
4 foreign
5 context
6 translate

2
1 guess
2 gist
3 recognize/know
4 foreigners
5 go
6 note, record

3
1 repetition
2 pronunciation
3 explanation
4 revision
5 chat

4
1 study it again
2 successful
3 try something
4 make
5 *a way of doing something*
6 an informal

5
1 discussion
2 opportunity
3 chat
4 works
5 chance

Unit 2

1
1 encouragement
2 improving
3 accurately
4 frustrating
5 motivation
6 enthusiastic

2
1 getting better
2 while
3 progress
4 obvious
5 accurately
6 is aware of
7 express
8 frustrating

4
1 fluently
2 everyday
3 relevant
4 expanded
5 appropriate/right
6 aim

5
1 detail
2 inappropriate
3 complicated/complex
4 contain
5 expanding
6 specialized
7 includes
8 range

6 *Answers from a Polish person*
I'm learning English at the moment. My **goal** is to speak it **fluently**. I want to **expand** my vocabulary and be able to speak **on a wide range** of topics. I would like to learn **complex** structures and **specialized** vocabulary **relevant to** my job.

Unit 3

1 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 S

2
1 instance
2 selection
3 build, provide, related
4 offending
5 symbols, syllable
6 idiom, entry
7 collocation
8 stress

3
1 error, do sth wrong, fault
2 two
3 informal
4 *no, it's informal*
5 / gaɪ /
6 a) *correct*
b) *not correct* (*it should be 'My dad earns a lot of money in his job.'*)

Unit 4

1
1 full stop
2 colon
3 hyphen
4 brackets
5 question mark
6 exclamation mark
7 semicolon
8 apostrophe

2
1 comma
2 *question mark*
3 exclamation mark
4 apostrophe
5 semicolon
6 brackets
7 hyphen, dash
8 quotation marks, apostrophe, comma

4
1 list
2 instead
3 connect/join
4 details
5 pause
6 abbreviation
7 such
8 leave
9 separate/divide
10 interrupt
11 connect/join
12 alternative

5 'Comma' and 'full stop' are both punctuation marks.
'p.m.' is an abbreviation.
'Omit' and 'leave out' mean the same thing.
'Join' and 'connect' mean the same thing.
'Information' and 'details' mean the same thing.
'Separate' and 'divide' mean the same thing.

6
1 'She' needs a capital letter (not a small letter).
2 A comma is missing after 'tall'.
3 A slash is missing between 'in' and 'on'.
4 A colon is missing after 'choices'.
5 A comma is missing after 'arrived'.
6 An apostrophe is missing after 'boyfriend' and before 's'.
7 Commas are missing before and after 'fortunately'.

www.hellooteacher.ir

Unit 5

1
1 eyebrows
2 fattish
3 scar
4 broad shoulders
5 stubble
6 clean-shaven
7 in good shape

2 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 D 7 S 8 S 9 D

3
1 shape
2 bald
3 clean
4 shoulders
5 built
6 skinny
7 skinned
8 scar

4 *Answers from an Italian person*
1 My mother.
2 My father.
3 My cousin.
4 My brother.
5 My sister.
6 My aunt.
7 My whole family is dark-skinned.
8 My boyfriend has a scar on his neck.

6 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 F 8 T

7
1 hair, appearance
2 tell, expecting
3 wrinkles
4 smooth, rough
5 slim/slender
6 tell, tan

Unit 6

1 1 N 2 N 3 P 4 P 5 P 6 B 7 N 8 B

2
1 energy
2 *responsible*
3 generous
4 cheerful
5 energetic
6 *aggressive*
7 patient
8 tolerant

3 1 f 2 a 3 g 4 h 5 e 6 b 7 i 8 d

4
honest dishonest
responsible irresponsible
lazy hard-working
generous mean
ambitious unambitious
self-confident insecure
honest honesty
tolerant tolerance
aggressive aggression
arrogant arrogance
generous generosity
patient patience

5
1 crazy
2 easy-going
3 sense of humour
4 modest
5 self-confident
6 hard-working
7 responsible
8 energy

6 *Answers from a German person*
1 Yes, I am a very ambitious person. I like to do well in most things that I try.
2 I am a hard-working person but I also enjoy letting my hair down.
3 I'm not an intolerant person but I don't like people imposing things on me.
4 I get impatient when passport control only has one lane open at the airport.
5 I'm a self-confident, easy-going person with a good sense of humour.
6 I think honesty and tolerance are the most important qualities.

Unit 7

1
1 anxious
2 furious
3 astonished
4 thrilled
5 heartbroken
6 fed up
7 scared stiff
8 kiss/kissed

2
1 delighted
2 miserable
3 terrified
4 amazed
5 jealous

3 *Answers from a Colombian person*
1 I'd be amazed as I don't usually study for exams!
2 I'd be delighted for him; after all, he is my best friend.
3 I'd be miserable, but everything has to end some time, so I would be fine after a while.
4 I'd be furious and would probably react violently.
5 I'd be envious of my friends who could go out.
6 I'd be heartbroken and would get another girlfriend.
7 *I'd be anxious as it is always hard to speak* in front of people.
8 I'd be proud that I actually got into the plane in the first place.

5
1 hide
2 sympathetic
3 sensitive
4 moody
5 insensitive
6 emotions

6
1 mood
2 *upset*
3 supportive
4 sympathetic
5 *in*
6 hurt

Unit 8

1 a close friend, get on well with someone, make friends, keep in touch, depend on someone

2
1 reliable
2 depend on
3 antisocial
4 disloyal
5 friendship
6 close

3
1 He's friendly with Ruben.
2 She never keeps in touch. / She doesn't keep in touch.
3 I don't get on with my father.
4 I made friends with her at university. / We *made friends at university.*
5 I can rely on my boss.
6 Donna's an old friend.

www.hellooteacher.ir

5 1 in
2 out
3 get
4 in
5 went
6 get

6 1 argue, row
2 know, common
3 split, regrets
4 realize, go out

7 1 another
2 common
3 relationship
4 wrong
5 argument/row
6 split
7 go
8 regretted
9 realized

Unit 9

1 1 an only child
2 half-sister
3 foster parents
4 stepfather
5 get divorced
6 adopt a child
7 single parent
8 bring somebody up

2 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 D

3 1 brought
2 only
3 half
4 single
5 divorced

4 *Answers from a Spanish person*
1 I was brought up in Salamanca, in Spain.
2 I've got a younger sister.
3 No, I don't have any half-brothers or -sisters.
4 One of my friends is a single parent.
5 One of my colleagues has recently got divorced.

5 1 ancestors
2 looks like
3 emigrated
4 relations
5 originally
6 member

6 1 related
2 royal, queen
3 previous
4 member, like
5 after

7 *Answers from a Japanese person*
1 No, I'm not related to anyone famous.
2 Yes, we have a royal family. The current monarch is Emperor Akihito.
3 Previous generations of my family have lived in Kyoto and Osaka in Japan.
4 I'm often told that I look like my grandmother.
5 I take after my dad. We're both good with our hands.

Unit 10

1 1 anniversary
2 I've chosen it
3 traditional
4 civil
5 bridesmaid
6 celebrate *correct*
7 wedding
8 honeymoon *correct*
9 speech
10 guest
11 ceremony
12 reception
13 religion

2 1 groom
2 bridesmaid
3 chosen
4 guests
5 after
6 best man
7 reception
8 husband and wife

3 1 go on your honeymoon
2 drink a toast
3 wish someone a happy marriage
4 make a speech
5 bride and groom
6 celebrate your anniversary
7 a religious ceremony
8 the best man
9 a wedding reception

4 1 choose, civil
2 best
3 bridesmaids
4 rings
5 reception
6 guests
7 traditional, make
8 toast
9 couple, honeymoon
10 celebrate

5 *Answers from a Norwegian person*
1 Yes, you can choose either.
2 Yes, he does, and the bride has a best woman.
3 Sometimes younger family members act as bridesmaids.
4 Yes, they do.
5 Yes. The wedding traditionally takes place in the late afternoon, and there's often a sit-down meal after that.
6 It could be any number.
7 Yes, very much so. The best man, best woman, bridegroom, bride's father, and sometimes the bride all make speeches. After that, anyone else who wants to speak can do so, and some guests write a song which is performed by all the guests for the couple.
8 Yes, they do.
9 Yes, normally the day after.
10 Yes, they do.

7 1 widower
2 gravestone
3 funeral
4 bury
5 inherit
6 death
7 cemetery
8 coffin

8 1 died
2 will, gravestone
3 funeral, burial
4 buried, cremated
5 widow, mourner
6 grave, coffin

9 1 of
2 in
3 widow
4 death
5 funeral
6 buried
7 will
8 inherited

www.hellooteacher.ir

Unit 11

1 1 space system
2 ~~moon~~ sun
3 planet star
4 ~~sun~~ moon
5 star planet
6 ~~planes~~ rockets
7 ~~earth~~ universe / solar system

2 1 space
2 words
3 roughly/approximately, reach
4 fetched
5 gained
6 revolves/circles
7 knowledge
8 satellite

4 1 exist
2 explore
3 invention
4 carried out
5 discovered
6 analyse

5 1 scientists
2 discovery
3 confirmation
4 analysis
5 exploration
6 existence

6 1 exists
2 explore
3 satellites
4 carry
5 invented
6 confirmed

Unit 12

1 1 flood
2 high tide
3 shallow
4 float
5 surface
6 narrow
7 puddle
8 drown
9 waterfall
10 ocean

2 1 c 2 d 3 h 4 g 5 b 6 e 7 f 8 a

3 1 N 2 Y 3 Y 4 Y 5 N 6 Y 7 N 8 Y 9 N 10 N

4 1 on the surface
2 lake
3 capsized
4 width
5 stream
6 drowned
7 shallow
8 floods

5 1 burst
2 caused
3 deep
4 floating
5 lake
6 capsized
7 sink
8 drowned

6 1 horizon
2 rock
3 beach
4 cliff
5 ship
6 shore
7 harbour
8 cave
9 coast
10 bay

7 1 rough
2 wave
3 protects
4 sandy
5 steep
6 on

Unit 13

1 1 a gale
2 a frosty morning
3 a muggy evening
4 It poured for an hour
5 fog
6 I got soaked

2 1 soaking
2 rainbow
3 mild
4 bitterly
5 frost
6 drops
7 drizzled
8 heatwave
9 muggy

4 1 predictable
2 disappear
3 famine
4 harmful
5 atmosphere
6 environment
7 pollution
8 liquid
9 disease
10 climate

5 1 B 2 G 3 B 4 B 5 G 6 B 7 B 8 B

6 1 affect
2 unpredictable
3 the environment
4 human
5 melting
6 liquid
7 disappearing
8 atmosphere

7 1 extreme, climate
2 liquid, solid
3 polluted, affects/affected
4 predict, rise
5 global, disappearing
6 spread
7 Pollution, harmful
8 famine

8 *Answers from a Polish person*
1 I'm quite worried about global warming, *but what worries me most is the fact that* scientists and politicians talk about this problem a lot, but nothing is being done *about it.*
2 We don't have rainforests in Poland.
3 Summers have become warmer and winters are milder now. Also, summer starts earlier, almost right after winter, so sometimes it seems as if we haven't had spring.
4 The changing of natural habitats, the construction of roads and buildings, and the growth of industry are all harming the environment.
5 I think industrial pollution is probably *most common in Poland.*

Unit 14

1 *volcanic eruption*
tidal wave
surrounding land
starve to death
violent storm

2 1 destruction
2 violence
3 eruption
4 surroundings
5 damage

3 1 *hurricane, destroyed, damaged, disaster*
2 drought, crops, starve
3 erupted, ground, lava
4 sudden, violent, typhoon

www.hellooteacher.ir

5 1 strikes/hits
2 collapse
3 trapped
4 evacuate
5 rescue
6 supplies
7 maintain
8 fear

6 1 collapsed
2 crucial
3 evacuated
4 trapped
5 hit/strike
6 death toll
7 considerable
8 rescue/save

Unit 15

1 1 leopard
2 elephant
3 eagle
4 gorilla
5 whale
6 spider
7 snake
8 shark
9 monkey

2 ▶ eagle, bee, mosquito
1 leopard, elephant, lion, tiger, camel, monkey
2 fly, bee, mosquito
3 gorilla, bear
4 elephant
5 tiger
6 leopard
7 eagle

4 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 F

5 1 survival
2 expectancy
3 weight
4 poisonous
5 harmful, harmless

6 1 survive
2 average
3 hunt
4 sting
5 up
6 vary

7 1 calf
2 mice
3 goats
4 donkey
5 rat
6 frog
7 male
8 herd
9 turkey
10 cattle

8 1 horse
2 goat
3 bull
4 calf
5 frog
6 mouse
7 donkey
8 turkey

9 *Answers from an Italian person*
1 In Italy, people eat horse, calf, turkey, donkey, cow, and frog.
2 People keep horses for sport and hobbies.
People keep goats for their milk.
Not many people keep bulls.
Donkeys are often kept in zoos.
People use mice for animal testing.

Unit 16

1 1 papaya
2 spinach
3 thyme
4 sweetcorn
5 stone

2 *In Britain*
artichoke C, beetroot C, fennel R, chickpeas C, celery R, broccoli C

3 1 plum
2 coconut
3 apricot
4 grapefruit
5 avocado

4 *Answers from a British person*
papaya Yes, but not much
coconut Yes, but not much
raspberries Yes
passion fruit Yes, but not much
plums Yes
basil Yes
parsley Yes
chick peas Yes, but not much
asparagus Yes
artichoke Yes, but not much
sweetcorn Yes
fennel Yes, but not much

6 1 calf
2 lobster
3 rabbit
4 squid
5 kidney
6 trout
7 oyster
8 liver
9 veal
10 sea bass
11 mussels
12 salmon

7 *Answers from a German person*
1 I think most Germans would like to eat a nice piece of veal.
2 I think salmon is the most popular fish in Germany.
3 I don't eat seafood, but I think it would be crab.
4 I don't eat any seafood because I don't like the taste of it very much.
5 I would never eat liver or kidney because I don't like to eat the insides of animals.
6 Out of the five fish, the one I'm least likely to eat is carp.

Unit 17

1 1 B 2 B 3 G 4 B 5 B 6 G 7 G

2 1 on
2 on
3 up
4 of
5 on
6 of

3 1 plenty
2 exercise
3 cut
4 diet
5 waste
6 keep

5 1 peel
2 chop
3 add
4 mash
5 boil
6 fry
7 bake
8 roast

6 1 recipe, ingredients
2 add
3 pan, dish
4 bake, oven
5 flour
6 stock, stir

www.hellooteacher.ir

Unit 18

1
1 afford
2 discount/reduction
3 reduced
4 sales
5 bargain
6 change
7 receipt
8 refund

2
1 bargain
2 scratch, off
3 change
4 sales
5 refund

3 *Answers from a Japanese person*
1 I don't always look for a bargain but I'm very happy when I find one.
2 I would ask the shop assistant whether they have another one in stock.
3 I check the number of notes, but I don't check the number of coins.
4 I often wait for the sales. I usually buy my clothes then.
5 I don't usually take things back or ask for a refund, but once the heel came off a pair of boots a few weeks after I had bought them, so I did take those back.

4
1 €1,000,000.
2 €250,000.
3 Six months.
4 She didn't live there, and she sold it for less money.
5 Over €5,000.
6 Yes (to the credit card company).

5
1 It's a huge house.
2 The house is valued at £2,000,000. / The value of the house is £2,000,000.
3 Rani is broke.
4 I don't own the flat.
5 Her shoes cost a fortune.
6 Gisela owes €5,000.

6
1 amount, well
2 broke
3 worth
4 huge/massive
5 income

Unit 19

1
1 fell asleep
2 fast asleep
3 nightmare
4 go / get to sleep
5 went off
6 overslept

2
1 wake
2 sleepy/tired
3 set, overslept
4 lie-in
5 awake
6 yawning
7 pyjamas, snores

4 have a nap, sleep like a log, suffer from insomnia, have a restless night, a heavy sleeper, on my mind

5
1 nap, habit
2 like a log
3 suffer from
4 restless
5 mind
6 disturbs, heavy
7 exhausted
8 lack

Unit 20

1
1 infection
2 bandage
3 thoroughly
4 wound
5 blood
6 symptom
7 temporarily
8 develop

2
1 burn
2 running
3 covered
4 prevent
5 symptoms
6 wound
7 temporarily
8 dressing
9 bandage
10 thoroughly
11 healed
12 infection

4 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 T 9 F 10 T

5
1 I **slipped** on the ice and fell over.
2 I know he slipped, but did he fall **backwards** or forwards?
3 He passed out, and when he came **round** he didn't know where he was.
4 Nobody was killed, but three people were **injured** in the accident.
5 She **banged** her head on the door and fell to the floor.
6 My finger was **bleeding** so I put a dressing on it.

Unit 21

1 steering wheel
door handle
windscreen wiper
gear lever
number plate
wing mirror

2 1 O 2 I 3 I 4 O 5 I 6 I 7 O 8 I 9 O

3
1 brake
2 clutch
3 accelerator
4 boot
5 bonnet
6 headlights
7 mirror
8 windscreen wipers
9 horn

5
1 past
2 faster
3 backwards
4 advice
5 direction
6 instead

6
1 prepared
2 limit, close
3 skidded
4 watch
5 keep
6 rather

7 *Answers from a British person*
1 I know these things, but it's useful to be reminded of them.
2 Usually I do, but I accelerate quickly to overtake.
3 No, not always. In supermarket car parks I go in forwards, then it's easier to put things in the boot.
4 Yes. I'm afraid so – usually on motorways.
5 I know what I'm supposed to do, but in an emergency I might panic and forget.

www.hellooteacher.ir

6 We don't have much snow or ice in the south of England, so I don't make preparations for bad weather.

Unit 22

1 1 B 2 G 3 B 4 G 5 B 6 G 7 B

2
1 due
2 connecting
3 trouble, delayed
4 cancelled
5 meant, held
6 get
7 pick
8 warning

3 *Answers from a British person*
1 Trains are often delayed, because of work to repair the track.
2 I have never missed a train or a plane (but I've often missed the ferry to France).

4 get stuck, end up, rush hour, traffic jam, stop off, on the way, the wrong way, hire a car

5
1 trip
2 traffic jam
3 overnight
4 rent/hire
5 nightmare
6 via

6
1 hired/rented
2 stop, way
3 stuck, heavy
4 trips

7 *Answers from a British person*
1 I hired a car in Germany when my boyfriend came to visit me so we could go to the coast.
2 On really long journeys, I like to stop off somewhere to have a break, but mostly I prefer to get from A to B as quickly as possible, so long as it's not dangerous.
3 I get stuck in traffic in Headington, on the outskirts of Oxford, every evening on my way home.
4 I sometimes go on day trips to London or Bath.

8
1 ambulance
2 vehicle
3 serious
4 emergency
5 occur
6 block
7 avoid
8 collide

9
1 injured
2 vehicles
3 collided with
4 skidded
5 emergency services
6 occurred

10
1 blocking
2 skidded
3 serious
4 lane
5 broke down
6 injured

Unit 23

1
1 underwear
2 material
3 sleeve
4 tights
5 suede
6 necklace
7 blouse
8 earrings
9 vest
10 button

2 1 T 2 T 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 F 8 F 9 T 10 T

3 Underwear: vest, slip, bra
Jewellery: bracelet, ring, necklace, earrings
Material(s): cotton, leather, suede, silk
Clothes: skirt, waistcoat, cap, blouse

4
1 ring
2 bracelet
3 belts
4 denim
5 leather, silk
6 neck
7 sleeves
8 material

5 *Answers from a Polish person*
► No, I don't think I've ever worn a cap.
1 Yes, I wear a ring on my middle finger.
2 I wear a bracelet on my right wrist.
3 I've got four leather belts.
4 I've got seven pairs of jeans but I rarely wear them.
5 All of my shoes, boots, handbags, and belts are made of leather. I've got a few silk scarves, pyjamas, and pillowcases.
6 Yes, I've got lots of V-neck sweaters, in various colours.
7 Yes, I often wear short sleeves.
8 My favourite material is linen.

7
1 matches
2 unfashionable
3 outfit
4 latest, style
5 suits
6 very good
7 accessories
8 neutral

8
1 matching
2 elegant/stylish/fashionable
3 latest
4 suit
5 versatile
6 transforms
7 accessories
8 outfit

Unit 24

1
1 The dentist
2 The tooth
3 I
4 The dentist
5 I
6 The dentist
7 I
8 I
9 The tooth
10 I

2
1 look
2 surgery
3 have
4 filling/check-up
5 painful, chew
6 take

3 *Answers from an Italian person*
► I don't have a check-up very often – about once a year.
1 I don't look forward to going to the dentist because I find it very scary.
2 My dental surgery is in a very nice, modern building with lots of rooms.
3 I had toothache last month.
4 About two years ago.

www.hellooteacher.ir

5 It's not normally painful when I bite or chew my food.
6 I can't remember the last time a dentist took one of my teeth out.

Unit 25

1
1 consultant
2 immediately
3 recover
4 patient
5 straightaway
6 urgent
7 well enough
8 successful
9 benefit
10 surgeon

2
1 patient
2 specialist
3 patient
4 patient
5 surgeon
6 nurse
7 patient
8 nurse

3
1 consultant
2 tests
3 operation
4 urgent
5 straightaway
6 into
7 risks
8 successful
9 enough
10 get over
11 take care

4 *Answers from a German person*
1 Yes, I had my tonsils removed in 1997.
2 Yes, I visited my mum in hospital when she had an operation on her ankle a few years ago.
3 Nurses are there to take care of you and families are there to support you.
4 Yes, you can see a specialist straightaway in Germany if you want to. Waiting times are minimal.
5 No, you can go directly to a specialist.
6 It depends on the operation. If it's a minor operation, people go home.

Unit 26

1
1 needle
2 scissors
3 screwdriver
4 rope
5 a hammer
6 a drill
7 Sellotape
8 screw

2
1 tools
2 scissors, sew, cotton/thread
3 stick, glue
4 string
5 screwdriver, tighten
6 hole
7 nail
8 tied

4 *These are possible*
1 fix, repair
2 *faulty, not working*
3 remove, replace
4 lamp, light bulb
5 is out of order, isn't working properly
6 leaking, faulty

5
1 stains
2 fixed
3 decorate
4 repair
5 cracked
6 working
7 repaired
8 properly
9 leaking
10 remove

Unit 27

1
1 dust
2 muddy
3 grease
4 vacuum

2
1 Sweep
2 vacuum cleaner
3 up
4 cloth
5 Do
6 mop, bucket
7 Dust, polish
8 wipe
9 sweep
10 Throw

3 *Answers from a Colombian person*
1 I do the washing up and I clean my room. Every other week I have to clean the kitchen or the toilet.
2 If I clean the toilets my housemates will clean the rest of the house.

Unit 28

1
1 fringe
2 scissors
3 hairstyle
4 hairdryer
5 parting
6 trim
7 colour
8 blow-dry

2
1 Could you colour **it** for me, please?
2 Sasha is letting her hair **grow**.
3 I'd like a fringe and a parting **on** the right.
4 I'd like a **cut** and blow-dry, please.
5 I want to **keep** the same hairstyle, please.
6 She's going to **have/get** her hair trimmed.

3 *Answers from a Spanish person*
1 Yes, I'm letting my hair grow longer.
2 I had my hair cut about two months ago.
3 I don't have a fringe. I have a parting in the middle.
4 I go to a different hairdresser's every time.
5 My mum and my sister have their hair coloured.

Unit 29

1
1 filthy
2 litter
3 pavement
4 whistle
5 graffiti
6 depressing

2
1 dirty
2 quickly
3 *walk*
4 ground
5 floors
6 money, food
7 *lips*
8 pictures/writing

3
1 litter
2 subway
3 wonder
4 hurry/rush
5 graffiti
6 depressing

5 1 S 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 D

6
1 suburb
2 surrounded, shame/pity

www.hellooteacher.ir

3 local/handy
4 handy/convenient
5 disadvantage/drawback
6 ideal

7 *Answers from a Japanese person*
1 The area where I live is built-up. I'd like to live in the country where I could have a nice garden.
2 My home is surrounded by other houses.
3 There are a few convenience stores and a small supermarket in the area.
4 It's not handy at all! The nearest bus stop is 15 minutes' walk away and the nearest train station is a 15-minute bike ride away. Wherever you go, it takes quite a while.
5 One of the disadvantages of where I live is that there is no park nearby where children can play or where you can go for a walk.

Unit 30

1
1 impressive
2 cellar
3 separate
4 attic
5 basement
6 spacious
7 currently
8 feature

2
1 basement
2 corridor
3 hall
4 drive
5 passage
6 lawn

3
1 enormous
2 store
3 tiny
4 staircase
5 leads
6 convert

4
1 detached
2 currently
3 drive
4 leads
5 cellar
6 store
7 huge
8 wall
9 convert

5
1 features
2 chimney
3 original
4 storage
5 bricks
6 roof

6 *Answers from a British person*
1 We don't have shutters on our windows.
2 We do have a lawn. We sit out on it when the weather is warm.
3 Yes, there's a small room we use for storage and a children's bedroom.
4 We haven't got a basement or a cellar, but we have got a garage where we store our bikes and the dustbins.
5 There's a drive in front of the house.
6 Most of the rooms are quite spacious but the spare room is tiny.

Unit 31

1
1 boot
2 concrete
3 tyre
4 woollen
5 wooden
6 silver
7 wooden
8 plastic
9 gold
10 pipe
11 metal

2
1 silver, gold
2 wood, plastic
3 plastic, metal
4 wood, metal
5 plastic, wood, cardboard
6 iron, steel, concrete

4
1 pointed
2 L-shaped
3 curved
4 rectangle
5 vertical
6 circular
7 round
8 circle
9 triangle
10 horizontal
11 square
12 parallel
13 diamond
14 star-shaped

5
1 oval
2 rectangular
3 round
4 square
5 triangular
6 pointed
7 curved
8 straight

6
1 a rectangular table
2 a curved needle
3 pointed shoes
4 a triangular handbag
5 an oval mirror
6 a star-shaped box

Unit 32

1
1 notice
2 see
3 look
4 watch
5 glanced at
6 can see
7 overheard
8 hear

2
1 catch
2 can, sounds
3 staring
4 seem/appear
5 looked
6 glanced/looked
7 observant
8 disappeared

4
1 stinks
2 damp
3 bland
4 like
5 touched
6 rubbed

5
1 like, like
2 tapping
3 Press
4 touch
5 tapped
6 grabbed
7 smell
8 flavour, taste

Unit 33

1
1 five
2 the background
3 no
4 yes
5 yes
6 a painting
7 in the distance/background
8 on the right-hand side
9 bright
10 on the left-hand side

2
1 no
2 work
3 feeling
4 dark
5 see
6 light

www.hellooteacher.ir

3 1 You can see it in the distance.
2 He's lying in the bottom left-hand corner.
3 Is it on the right-hand side of the painting?
4 They're sitting in the centre of the drawing.
5 There are some trees in the top left-hand corner.

4 1 industrial
2 illustrate
3 warmth
4 painting
5 even
6 shade

5 *Answers from a Polish person*
1 Gabriela Trykler.
2 Yes, in 1995.
3 It's an abstract painting.
4 I like the many different ways I can interpret it, depending on my mood. I also like the colours.
5 No, I don't.

Unit 34

1 1 Yes
2 No
3 Yes
4 Yes
5 Yes
6 No
7 No
8 Yes

2 1 drag
2 tore up
3 folded
4 shake
5 smashed
6 squeeze
7 scratched
8 sprayed

4 1 sneeze
2 breath
3 burst out laughing
4 breathe in
5 whisper
6 sigh
7 burst into tears/cry
8 shout
9 out loud / aloud
10 silent
11 tears
12 silence

5 *Answers from an Italian person*
1 Yesterday I heard my neighbours' baby screaming in the night because she was hungry.
2 I last burst out laughing when I went to a comedy show.
3 I last whispered to someone when I was visiting a museum.
4 I last read something out loud to my boyfriend. It was part of a review of a film.

Unit 35

1 steal, commit, attack, offend, obey

2 1 S 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 S 7 S 8 D

3 1 violence
2 attacked
3 stole
4 Property
5 violent/serious
6 serious/violent, jail
7 broken
8 minor, against

5 *These words are wrong*
1 attacker
2 mug
3 breaking into
4 shoplifting
5 burglary

6 1 broke, stole, stabbed
2 deliberately
3 mugged/attacked, shoot/kill
4 murdering/killing, shot
5 thief/burglar
6 robbed

Unit 36

1 1 report
2 Victims
3 investigate
4 fingerprints
5 took place
6 may
7 suspect
8 arrest
9 evidence
10 charge
11 court

2 1 The police
2 The suspect
3 The police
4 The victim
5 The suspect
6 The victim or a witness
7 The suspect
8 A witness / witnesses

4 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 T

5 1 tried
2 prove
3 prosecution
4 defendant
5 sentenced
6 trial
7 fined

Unit 37

1 1 allergic
2 obese
3 depressed
4 diabetic

2 1 Diabetes
2 allergy
3 Diseases
4 increased
5 dramatic
6 heart

3 1 allergic
2 obesity
3 attack
4 depressed
5 suffer
6 diabetic
7 breathe, lungs
8 lead, diseases
9 decrease

4 1 memory loss
2 arthritic
3 brain
4 blind
5 stroke
6 heart disease
7 disability

5 1 T 2 F 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 F 7 F 8 T

6 1 arthritis
2 deaf
3 sight
4 memory
5 cancer
6 heart

www.hellooteacher.ir

Unit 38

1 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 F

2
1 elections
2 consists, parties
3 power
4 vote
5 represent
6 majority

3 *Answers from a Colombian person*
1 My country holds elections every four years.
2 The Uribista party is in power at the moment.
3 They have been in power for five years.
4 The President of the Republic.
5 There are more than 500 people in parliament.

4
1 public
2 important
3 deal with it
4 start it
5 coming
6 disagree

5
1 policy
2 campaign
3 persuade
4 immigrants
5 aim/objective/goal
6 Opposition
7 focus
8 need

Unit 39

1 1 g 2 e 3 f 4 b 5 a 6 c

2
1 enemy
2 critical
3 surrendered
4 captured
5 twelve
6 explode

3
1 out
2 bomb
3 battle
4 soldiers
5 control
6 war

4 1 f 2 h 3 b 4 d 5 g 6 e 7 a

5
1 sides
2 ceasefire
3 leaders
4 settlement
5 determined
6 unwilling
7 involved
8 compromise
9 reach/negotiate
10 peace

Unit 40

1
1 f, release
2 a, assassination
3 e, establishment
4 b, invasion
5 d, attempt

2
1 assassinated
2 established
3 Revolution
4 defeated
5 attempt
6 independence, independent

Unit 41

1 whole, daily, entire, national, cultural

2 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 D

3
1 culture
2 press, journalist
3 published
4 whole, international
5 declining
6 daily

5
1 scare
2 axed
3 clashed
4 demonstration
5 claimed
6 pension
7 threat

6
1 pledged
2 claims
3 aid
4 scare
5 demonstrate/protest
6 clashed
7 threatened
8 promise

Unit 42

1
1 equivalent
2 produce
3 supporting role
4 individual
5 award
6 achieve
7 winner
8 prize

2 1 F 2 F 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 T 8 F 9 T 10 T

3
1 winner
2 achieve
3 leading
4 produced
5 role
6 award
7 equivalent
8 individual

5 1 P 2 N 3 P 4 N 5 N 6 P 7 N

6
1 indeed
2 plot
3 movie
4 extraordinary
5 suitable
6 performance

7
1 entertaining
2 extraordinary performance
3 disappointing indeed
4 fan
5 moving

8 *Answers from a Spanish person*
1 *The Bourne Ultimatum* is a really entertaining film.
2 Nicole Kidman gave an extraordinary performance in *The Others*.
3 I thought *Music and Lyrics* was very disappointing indeed.
4 I'm a fan of Brad Pitt.
5 *Life is Beautiful* was very moving.

Unit 43

1 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 D 7 D 8 S 9 D

2
1 styles
2 abstract
3 techniques
4 oils
5 vary
6 watercolours
7 portrait/painting
8 masterpiece
9 display
10 exhibitions

www.hellooteacher.ir

4 1 camera
2 lens
3 photographer
4 focus
5 a film
6 of film
7 flash
8 album

5 1 She can develop films in her studio.
2 I put the photo in the frame.
3 Can I have two prints of this negative please?
4 He focused on the girl in the foreground.
5 Amateur photographers often buy automatic cameras.
6 You can transfer the pictures to the computer.

6 *Answers from a British person*
1 I'm interested in taking photographs of beautiful scenery and wildlife.
2 I have a new Japanese digital camera.
3 It has a digital screen and a very good 'zoom' feature.
4 I find it hard to stop my hands shaking when I try to take photos at night without the flash.

Unit 44

1 1 violin/violinist
2 organ/organist
3 trumpet/trumpeter
4 guitar/guitarist
5 saxophone/saxophonist
6 cello/cellist
7 flute/flautist

2 1 orchestra
2 guitar, band, lead
3 instrument
4 composers
5 songwriter
6 player
7 musicians
8 conductor

4 1 lyrics
2 solo
3 live
4 voice
5 living
6 melody
7 appeals

5 1 influenced
2 release
3 recorded
4 recording
5 solo
6 albums
7 appeals
8 admire

6 *Answers from a Japanese person*
1 I like Marcus Miller very much.
2 His music has been influenced by Jaco Pastorius.
3 He records his own music but sometimes writes for other people.
4 He often does live concerts. I have seen him play live in Osaka several times.
5 The last album he released was called 'Free'.
6 I like his music because he is a genius and the rhythms he plays are brilliant.

Unit 45

1 1 golfer
2 athlete
3 boxer
4 racing driver
5 rugby player
6 skier
7 gymnast

2 1 captain
2 referee
3 support
4 umpire
5 supporters

3 1 referee
2 linesman
3 flag
4 commentator
5 fans
6 crowd
7 pitch
8 manager

4 1 length
2 track
3 width
4 maximum
5 depth
6 construction
7 lap

5 1 construct, stadium, capacity
2 laps, Circuit, track, constructed
3 Championship, worldwide, courts
4 standard, pool, long, wide, minimum, depth, maximum

Unit 46

1 1 gymnastics
2 weightlifting
3 fencing
4 cycling
5 athletics
6 wrestling

2 1 took part
2 take part, participate
3 record
4 takes place
5 race, medal
6 hold

3 1 take
2 compete
3 record
4 competitors, professionals
5 race
6 medal, competition

5 1 achievement
2 criticize
3 resistance
4 praise
5 brilliant
6 favourite
7 defeat sb

6 1 contest
2 overall
3 achievement
4 favourite, sided
5 critical
6 opponent, semi

Unit 47

1 1 Fiction: murder mystery, novel, sci-fi
Non-fiction: autobiography, manual, reference book, encyclopedia, biography

2 1 encyclopedia
2 poetry/poems
3 reference
4 pleasure
5 mystery
6 alphabet
7 autobiography
8 manual

4 1 attention
2 well known
3 chapter
4 readable
5 paperback
6 browsing

www.hellooteacher.ir

5 1 author
2 attention
3 title
4 paperback
5 chapter
6 fascinating
7 cover
8 written

6 *Answers from a Polish person*
1 I like detective stories and biographies.
2 I use lots of different dictionaries.
3 I used to when I was younger and had more free time.
4 No, not really.
5 I have more paperbacks than hardbacks because they are cheaper, but also because many books only come out in paperback.

Unit 48

1 1 illuminated
2 Carnival
3 approached
4 spectacular
5 festival
6 fireworks
7 tons
8 blossom

2 1 c 2 b 3 h 4 d 5 i 6 f 7 a 8 g

3 1 participated
2 dress up
3 illuminated
4 striking
5 occasion
6 neighbourhood

4 1 festival, carnival
2 parade
3 entertainment
4 taken part
5 dressed up
6 occasions, fireworks
7 mean
8 participate

5 *Answers from a German person*
1 The 'Oktoberfest' in Munich is a very important and popular festival. It was originally a harvest festival.
2 No, they don't.
3 Yes. There are lots of local bands playing and there's a fairground.
4 No, I haven't taken part in a parade.
5 Yes, at 'Fasching' in February, when I was small, my mum dressed me up as a mouse!
6 Yes, on New Year's Eve.
7 Not really, but I can understand why a lot of people like tradition.
8 Yes, I'd like to participate in 'La Tomatina' because I think it would be a lot of fun throwing tomatoes at other people!

Unit 49

1 1 invigilator
2 success
3 succeed
4 attitude
5 follow
6 disqualified

2 1 attitude
2 instructions
3 invigilator
4 cheating
5 disqualified
6 item
7 paper
8 essential
9 carefully
10 devotes
11 planning
12 examiner
13 relief

Unit 50

1 The people are 4, 5, 6, and 9.

2 1 attend
2 seminars
3 lectures
4 notes
5 tutor
6 widely
7 academic
8 assessment
9 graduate

4 1 opportunity
2 on time
3 freedom
4 revision
5 manage
6 in time
7 homesick

5 1 away
2 residence
3 tuition
4 loans
5 scholarship
6 chance

6 *Answers from an Italian person*
1 Students usually live at home, unless they go to university in another city.
2 Some students live in halls of residence, but most of them live in shared flats or houses.
3 Yes, they do have to pay tuition fees unless they receive a scholarship.
4 Normally they don't have to take out loans because their parents help them.
5 Yes, scholarships are available.
6 It would be great to have the chance to study abroad.

Unit 51

1 1 application, assessment, confirmation, acknowledgement, interview

2 1 They said they'd contact ~~to~~ me.
2 Is she applying **for** a job?
3 Have you got a work **permit**?
4 The company is based **in** Tokyo.
5 He gave me some good **advice**.
6 She gave me **feedback** after the interview.
7 I have to **confirm** it in writing.
8 If you apply for a job, it's quite a long **process**.

3 1 requested
2 position
3 attended
4 require
5 subject to

4 1 based
2 acknowledge
3 confirmation
4 contact
5 automatically
6 candidates
7 vacancies
8 give
9 apply, application
10 process

5 Answers from a German person
1 I've applied for the following jobs in the past: a paper-boy, a lighting technician in a nightclub, an optician, and an IT specialist.
2 I think I've had more than twenty interviews in my life.

www.hellooteacher.ir

3 Yes, interviewers usually give feedback after an interview.
4 I've been the successful candidate five times.
5 My referees were my previous supervisors.
6 No, I've never had to get a work permit because I've always worked in the European Union.

Unit 52

1
1 training
2 military
3 retail
4 engineering
5 manufacturing
6 management
7 finance
8 recruitment

2
1 sector
2 management
3 experience
4 training
5 qualifications
6 profession
7 military

3 *Answer from a Colombian person*
I have some management experience. And I worked in retail when I was younger. I don't have experience in any of the other fields.

4 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 T 7 T

5
1 ~~estate~~ travel
2 ~~landing~~ land
3 ~~produces~~ products
4 ~~servant~~ service
5 ~~exports~~ imports
6 ~~takes care for~~ takes care of / cares for
7 ~~*representants*~~ *representatives/reps*

Unit 53

1 1 S 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 S 7 D 8 S 9 D

2
1 challenging
2 department
3 prospects
4 promoted
5 elsewhere
6 unemployed
7 sack/fire
8 resign/quit

3 *Answers from a British person*
1 My job is very challenging.
2 In fact I've already transferred from another department.
3 I have reasonable prospects in my job.
4 I'm not thinking about promotion at the moment as my job is already challenging enough!
5 No, I'm not bored, so I won't be looking elsewhere.
6 No, I've never been unemployed.
7 *I would hate to have to sack someone.*
8 Yes, I would definitely resign if I started to hate my job.

4
1 I'd like to **make** an enquiry about the club.
2 I talked to her **face**-to-face.
3 It's very hard to deal **with** this situation.
4 Who's **in** charge of this department?
5 You have to **make** sure the door is locked.
6 We're not responsible **for** the cleaning.
7 Do you know how to **solve** the problem?
8 I want to **make** a complaint about the service.

5 *Text A*
1 duties
2 enquiries
3 solutions
4 responsible
5 sure

Text B
6 involves
7 public
8 handling
9 clerical
10 responsibility
11 deal
12 complaints

Unit 54

1
1 trade
2 strike
3 bonus
4 working conditions
5 overtime
6 takes, off
7 stress

2
1 Is she a member of a trade **union**?
2 *Are we entitled to sick* **pay**?
3 I'd like to take a week **off**.
4 Why don't you like shift **work**?
5 *I left on time today; I didn't do* **overtime**.
6 Why did the workers go on **strike**?

3 *Answers from a British person*
1 Yes, it is very stressful.
2 We get 25 days' holiday each year.
3 No, we don't do shift work.
4 Yes, I regularly work overtime.
5 We sometimes get a small bonus if the year has been good financially.
6 Yes, we are entitled to sick pay.
7 Yes, we have a trade union, which we have a right to join.
8 It is very rare for people at my place of work to go on strike.

Unit 55

1 1 e 2 i 3 g 4 c 5 a 6 b 7 d 8 h

2
1 turnover
2 flow
3 rate
4 tax profit
5 inflation
6 took out, loan
7 costs, loss
8 finance/start/operate

4
1 grew/rose significantly
2 rose gradually
3 fell slightly
4 stable/unchanged
5 *risen steadily*

5
1 *sharply*
2 rise
3 peak
4 gone
5 by
6 fall/drop
7 fluctuated
8 stable/unchanged

6
1 rose slightly
2 sharp rise/increase
3 remained stable/unchanged
4 fell slightly
5 fell sharply

www.hellooteacher.ir

Unit 56

1 asset, goods, stock

2
1 up the business
2 of business
3 supplier
4 quality
5 employer
6 her on

3
1 research
2 assets
3 rivals
4 employs
5 optimistic/ambitious, estimates

4
1 takeover
2 reputation
3 break even
4 leader
5 survival
6 struggle

5
1 share
2 shares
3 brand
4 growth, market
5 taken
6 gained

Unit 57

1
1 1993.
2 Because surfing was a seasonal business.
3 b) it had to give protection
c) it had to retain heat
4 He did some research.
5 He took out a bank loan.
6 It's crucial to have a good relationship.
7 Feedback from his customers.
8 A good partnership with suppliers.

2
1 contract
2 retain
3 crucial
4 feedback
5 innovate
6 diversify
7 partnership
8 potential

3
1 exploit
2 *Both answers are correct.*
3 potential
4 adapt
5 *Both answers are correct.*
6 founded
7 investment
8 *Both answers are correct.*

4
1 gap
2 case
3 producers/manufacturers
4 research
5 invest
6 ahead
7 contract
8 retain/keep
9 factor
10 diversify

Unit 58

1 1 G 2 G 3 B 4 G 5 B 6 G

2
1 sector
2 demand
3 strengths
4 threat
5 resources

3
1 skills
2 advertise
3 demand/market
4 reduce
5 weaknesses

4 1 f 2 e 3 a 4 c 5 b

5
1 strategy
2 objective
3 response
4 data/facts
5 realistic
6 tip

6
1 ignored
2 forecast
3 assume
4 target
5 gathered

Unit 59

1
1 almost
2 probably
3 may
4 possible
5 think/believe
6 probably
7 don't
8 bad

2
1 She's bound to pass.
2 She'll probably pass. / She's likely to pass. / I expect she'll pass.
3 She may/might pass.
4 I doubt (if/that) she'll pass. / She's unlikely to pass.
5 She'll definitely fail.

3 *Answer from a Japanese person*
Next week, I'm **definitely** going to go to a salsa party on Sunday evening. It's a **good chance** for me to let off steam. However, the good dancers are **unlikely** to dance with someone like me who isn't very good, although I **expect** some of them will ask me to dance anyway. Otherwise I will be standing alone in the corner for hours and it will be a **disaster**! But maybe I'm too **pessimistic**.
My friend and I **might** go out for a drink afterwards. There I'm **likely to ask her** advice about the boy **I fancy**, even though **I doubt** she has a good opinion of him.

Unit 60

1
1 in comparison
2 apart from
3 alike
4 main
5 compared
6 identical

2
1 similar
2 Compared
3 similarity
4 except
5 greedy
6 alike, completely
7 apart
8 difference

3 *Answers from a British person*
Oxford and Cambridge are **alike** in many ways. They both have famous universities, and many beautiful old buildings. Another **similarity** is that it takes about an hour to get to London on the train. However, **apart from the universities**, there is one **main difference**. **Compared with Cambridge**, Oxford is very cosmopolitan.

www.hellooteacher.ir

Unit 61

1
1 meant
2 busy
3 What
4 free (to see you)
5 put it off
6 for example/for instance
7 Are you able to come
8 meet
9 I'm afraid

2
1 Shall we **get** together for a meeting?
2 I'll tell you definite**ly** tomorrow.
3 I could put the meeting **off** until Friday.
4 I'm afraid **but** I'm tied up then. OR I'm **sorry** but I'm tied up then.
5 A Let's meet at a restaurant, **say**?
B No, what about the station **instead**?
6 **As** an alternative, we could meet on Tuesday.

Unit 62

1 Like very much: mad about, crazy about, adore
Like: fond of, keen on
Dislike very much: detest, loathe, can't bear, not like at all

2
1 I**'m** fond of . . .
2 I **can't** stand . . .
3 I loathe **cooking** . . .
4 I'm mad **about** . . .
5 I can't **bear** . . .
6 **I** detest . . .
7 I adore **eating** . . .
8 I**'m** crazy about . . .
9 Recently, I've got **to** like . . .
10 I**'d** rather eat . . . than . . .

3 *Answers from a Polish person*
1 chocolate cake
2 cigarette smoke
3 liver
4 reading
5 people who smoke in my presence
6 waiting in departure lounges at airports
7 white chocolate
8 travelling to new places
9 mussels
10 fish, meat

Unit 63

1
1 What do you think of this idea?
2 Personally, I think it's a good idea.
3 I agree with it in principle.
4 It seems to me we have no choice.
5 If you ask me, it was a disaster.

2
1 It seems to me we should do something.
2 How do you feel about that?
3 In my opinion, we should help them.
4 I'm to blame.
5 I reckon it'll be a problem.

3
1 Apparently, fault
2 concerned
3 issues
4 point
5 principle/theory

4
1 sensible
2 consider
3 reduce
4 support
5 believe
6 proposal

5
1 against
2 reduce
3 opposed
4 believe/think
5 silly
6 favour
7 dependent
8 mature

Unit 64

1
1 force ~~to~~ you
2 to
3 be
4 with
5 to
6 on

2
1 behaved
2 allowed
3 *disobedient*
4 banned
5 punishment
6 *behaviour*

3
1 obedient
2 disobeyed
3 strict
4 force
5 behave

4 *Answers from an Italian person*
► Yes, they were allowed to wear make-up.
1 Yes. I was a quiet and obedient child.
2 If you disobeyed the rules, you would have to stand outside the classroom.
3 The rules were not that strict.
4 The teachers didn't force me to do anything I didn't want to do.
5 I think children probably behaved much better then compared to nowadays.

5 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 S

6
1 let
2 choice
3 allowed, forbidden
4 up
5 optional
6 compulsory/obligatory, choice
7 allowed/permitted
8 option

Unit 65

1 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 S

2
1 making
2 intend
3 hoping
4 expecting
5 intention
6 wrong
7 fact
8 smoothly
9 forward

4
1 I doubt it.
2 I'm afraid not.
3 *I don't think so.*
5 I'm afraid so
6 I hope not
7 *Definitely not*

www.hellooteacher.ir

4 I guess so.

5
1 imagine so
2 think so
3 hope not
4 afraid not
5 assume so
6 doubt it / don't think so
7 Definitely
8 suppose so

Unit 66

1 1 d 2 f 3 g 4 b 5 a 6 e

2
1 dissatisfied, complained
2 guarantee
3 point
4 back
5 writing
6 keep/stay, temper
7 expert
8 considered

4 ~~mention~~

5
1 fed
2 bother
3 nuisance
4 spoilt/ruined
5 bother
6 join
7 bothered
8 mentioned

6 *Answers from a German person*
1 Yes, I'm fed up with the traffic in the morning when I drive to work; it's so busy.
2 Sometimes the small child living above us can be a bit loud and that gets on my nerves.
3 I don't tend to moan a lot; however, postal strikes are a real inconvenience to me and others.
4 Shopping in town on a Saturday can be a real nightmare, as it's so crowded.
5 I'm not particularly bothered about my level of English at the moment; however, I do try to improve constantly.

Unit 67

1
1 Do you need any assistance?
2 Caution. If symptoms continue, seek medical help. OR Seek medical help if symptoms continue.
3 Beware of the dog; it bites.
4 Warning. Don't cross when the barrier is down.
5 In case of fire, leave the building immediately.
6 Ring the police in case of emergency. OR In case of emergency, ring the police.

2
1 swallows
2 Beware, case
3 Mind
4 out
5 warned, danger
6 careful, aircraft
7 assistance
8 premises

Unit 68

1
1 as a result
2 what's more
3 due to
4 therefore
5 plus
6 Since
7 Moreover
8 Furthermore

2 REASON: due to, since
RESULT: therefore, as a result
ADDITION: what's more, plus, moreover, furthermore

3
1 close/shut
2 she couldn't
3 was terrible/bad/dreadful
4 didn't have
5 get in / get into / enter
6 they aren't / they're not

4 1 e 2 i 3 b 4 c 5 d 6 f 7 a 8 h

5
1 despite
2 that
3 However/Nevertheless
4 though/however
5 although/though
6 spite, still
7 even
8 Despite

6 1 S 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S

7
1 as long as
2 so that
3 On the one hand
4 whereas
5 in case
6 otherwise

Unit 69

1 Synonyms: curious/strange, fair/reasonable, essential/vital
Opposites: modern/old-fashioned, polite/rude, busy/deserted, rural/urban

2 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 S 6 S 7 D

3
1 curious
2 rural/remote
3 suspicious
4 reasonable
5 impressed
6 overall

5
1 shocked
2 satisfied
3 disappointing
4 terrifying
5 disgusting
6 embarrassed

6
1 amusing
2 embarrassing
3 shocking
4 disappointed
5 disgusting
6 amazed/astonished
7 alarming
8 satisfied

8
1 inadequate
2 soft
3 inefficient
4 spacious
5 artificial
6 common
7 ineffective
8 unexpected
9 permanent

www.hellooteacher.ir

9
1 mixed
2 rare
3 glad
4 fashioned
5 unexpected
6 efficient
7 adequate
8 modern/contemporary
9 negative
10 temporary

Unit 70

1 over 8, the rear 6, beside 4, beneath 1, onto 7, the edge 5, among 2

2
1 onto
2 among
3 over, beside
4 underneath/beneath
5 over
6 back
7 edge
8 beyond

3
1 nowadays
2 lasted
3 occasionally / now and again
4 Meanwhile
5 throughout
6 eventually

4
1 yet, recently / not long ago
2 recent, during
3 over, go
4 last, already
5 occasionally / now and again / from time to time, during/throughout

Unit 71

1 in general, in private, in public
at least, at first
by chance
on purpose, on board

2
1 In general
2 on purpose
3 on board
4 At the end
5 in charge of
6 in a hurry/rush

3
1 in
2 in
3 At
4 by
5 in

4
1 of
2 in/with
3 with
4 on
5 of
6 on
7 of
8 to
9 of

5
1 cope
2 rid
3 care
4 most
5 look
6 depends
7 involved
8 disapprove

Unit 72

1
1 unkind
2 non-alcoholic
3 illegal
4 irresponsible
5 uncertain
6 informal
7 non-smoking
8 insecure
9 irregular
10 dishonest
11 irrelevant

2
1 immoral
2 non-alcoholic
3 irrelevant
4 insecure
5 unfair/unacceptable
6 disloyal

3
1 unfair
2 unacceptable
3 disloyal
4 illegible
5 illegal

Answers from a Colombian person
1 Life is always unfair, but knowing that means that I do not expect anything marvellous to happen and have therefore become cynical.
2 It has always been acceptable to them and unacceptable to others and it will remain so.
3 My friends tend to be loyal but a disloyal friend can always appear loyal at first.
4 My handwriting is probably the clearest sign of a confused mind! Even I can't read it – it is completely illegible.
5 I think it should be legal. I learnt to drive when I was 17 and didn't have an accident for the first four years.

4
1 a, c
2 a, b
3 b, c
4 a, b
5 a, c
6 a, b

5
1 Unwrap the present. Wrap (up) the present.
2 Lock the suitcase. Unlock the suitcase.
3 Get dressed. Get undressed.
4 Pack your suitcase. Unpack your suitcase.
5 Do up your shirt. Undo your shirt.
6 Tie up / Do up your shoelaces. Untie / Undo your shoelaces.

Unit 73

1 gentleness, kindness,
disappearance, extension, reality,
preference, judgement

2
1 react reaction
2 prefer preference
3 cruel cruelty
4 define definition
5 interpret interpretation
6 measure measurement
7 extend extension

www.hellooteacher.ir

3 1 measurements 5 reaction
2 cruelty 6 judgement
3 reality 7 preference
4 disappearance 8 extension

4 1 waterproof 5 practical
2 careful, careless 6 washable
3 creamy 7 powerful, powerless
4 humorous

5 1 G 2 G 3 B 4 G 5 G 6 G 7 B

6 1 harmful
2 ridiculous
3 useless/ridiculous
4 practical/useful/economical
5 fashionable
6 economical
7 painful
8 spicy

Unit 74

1 1 d 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 a 6 b

2 1 enable 3 imagine 5 reminds
2 intend 4 warned 6 mind

3 1 f 2 g 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 d

4 *Answers from a Spanish person*
1 I managed to cycle up a steep hill last week.
2 I intended to call my sister yesterday but I forgot.
3 I regret missing a chance to buy a house a couple of years ago.
4 I refused to go on a business trip recently.
5 My dad persuaded me to buy a car last year.
6 My mum warned me not to spend too much on my credit card.
7 I'm pleased to say no one has blamed me for anything recently.
8 My mum reminded me to call my sister today!

Unit 75

1 1 R 2 R 3 W 4 W 5 R 6 W 7 R

2 1 takes after 4 runs out
2 made it up 5 switched on
3 get on with 6 give away

3 1 up 3 on 5 on, with
2 out 4 over 6 out of

5 1 leave out 4 go over
2 get through 5 getting on
3 work out 6 go on / carry on

6 1 out 4 on 7 back
2 through, on 5 off 8 up, down
3 back 6 on

Unit 76

1 1 They're highly intelligent boys.
2 It's bitterly cold outside.
3 That man is completely/totally mad.
4 Paula's been seriously ill.
5 Their profits have fallen sharply.
6 We desperately need to earn more money.
7 It was totally/completely unnecessary to do that.

2 1 risen 4 travelled
2 injured 5 feel
3 sorry, forgot 6 convinced/sure

3 1 vitally 4 completely/totally
2 highly 5 bitterly
3 desperately 6 terribly

4 1 S 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 S

5 1 On the whole 5 rather
2 mainly/mostly 6 actually
3 approximately/about 7 rarely
4 largely/mostly 8 fairly

Unit 77

1 1 I 2 F 3 I 4 F 5 N 6 I 7 N

2 1 fetch 4 purchase
2 commence 5 out of the blue
3 stuff 6 keep an eye on

3 1 of 3 stuff 5 turned
2 vague 4 idiom 6 sort, neutral

4 1 D 2 S 3 S 4 D 5 S 6 S 7 D

5 1 Yeah
2 Hang on. / Hold on.
3 What's up?
4 I haven't a clue.
5 How are things? / How's it going?
6 What've you been up to?
7 Cheers.

6 1 care 4 up, hang/hold
2 going 5 to
3 give/lend, problem

8 1 g 2 c 3 f 4 b 5 a 6 d

9 1 joking
2 disaster
3 tent
4 loads/lots/masses, nonsense/rubbish
5 better 7 picking
6 for 8 like

www.hellooteacher.ir

Unit 78

1
1 No.
2 As a deposit for the cottage.
3 Arriving.
4 Yes, she wants to know whether there is parking nearby.
5 Her own address.
6 Mr Ellison's address.
7 Yes, she wrote the date underneath her address.
8 Dear Mr Ellison
9 Yours sincerely
10 No, because it's a formal letter.

2 1 ✓ 2 ✗ 3 ✓ 4 ✓ 5 ✗ 6 ✓

3
1 I look forward **to** hearing **from** you.
2 If there's a problem, please **don't** hesitate **to** ring me.
3 I **enclose** a photocopy **of** my identity card with the application form.
4 I would be **grateful** if you **could** phone me about the meeting.
5 Further **to** your letter **of** 7 April, I wish to confirm my booking.
6 I would **appreciate** it if **you** could help me.
7 Please let me know **in** particular **whether/ if** there is a beach nearby.
8 I enclose a cheque for €30 as a **deposit** for the rental of the room.

4
1 Further
2 enclose
3 deposit
4 commence
5 grateful
6 appreciate
7 whether
8 nearby / close by
9 further
10 hesitate
11 sincerely

Unit 79

1
1 m
2 p
3 km
4 ml
5 t
6 mph
7 cl
8 kg
9 cm
10 mg
11 c/ct
12 kph
13 g/gm
14 mm
15 £
16 $

2
1 kph, mph
2 mm
3 gm
4 p OR c/ct

3
1 vet
2 pop / pop music
3 fridge
4 bike
5 gym
6 plane
7 board
8 paper
9 pub
10 deli
11 lab

4 ▶ lab
1 deli, fridge
2 ads, paper
3 pub, TV/telly
4 flu

5
1 ATM, PIN
2 CV
3 ID
4 VAT
5 UEFA
6 IT
7 AIDS
8 DVD, UFOs
9 EU
10 UN
11 ISP

Unit 80

1
1 sidewalk
2 cellphone
3 datebook
4 drugstore
5 railroad

2
1 garbage
2 subway
3 closet
4 candy
5 attorney
6 gasoline
7 transportation
8 billfold

3
1 can
2 theater
3 store
4 fries
5 trip
6 highway

4
1 ~~holiday~~ vacation
2 ~~lift~~ elevator
3 ~~rubbish~~ garbage/trash
4 ~~handbag~~ purse
5 ~~diary~~ datebook
6 ~~sweets~~ candy
7 ~~lorry~~ truck
8 ~~biscuit~~ cookie
9 ~~tap~~ faucet
10 ~~pavement~~ sidewalk

5 *Answers from a Japanese person*
1 I don't often use the subway. I use it a few times a month.
2 I use the railroad twice a day, every day, to commute to work.
3 I go to a movie theater about twice a month.
4 The last movie I saw was *No Reservations*.
5 I sometimes eat French fries when I go for a beer with friends.
6 I went to Seoul on my last vacation.
7 The last time I went to a mall was about two months ago.
8 I left high school eighteen years ago.

www.hellooteacher.ir

Answer key to review units

Learning

Unit 1

1
1 a translation (of this), please?
2 (some) revision for an exam
3 I repeat
4 his explanation (of it)
5 a guess
6 a record of new words in a book
7 a chat (about it)
8 the pronunciation of that word

2
1 recognize
2 gist
3 go through
4 make a note of
5 guess
6 context
7 translation
8 pronounce
9 make
10 pronunciation
11 experiment
12 foreign

Unit 2

1
1 complex/complicated
2 expand, aim
3 fluently
4 detail
5 range
6 contain
7 specialized
8 appropriate

2
1 frustrating
2 motivated
3 while
4 progress
5 encouraging
6 getting
7 aware
8 express
9 accurate

Unit 3

1
1 definitions
2 entry
3 select
4 instance
5 symbols
6 stressed
7 stress
8 syllable
9 idiom
10 expression
11 style
12 offend

Unit 4

1
1 a colon
2 *a full stop*
3 a semicolon
4 quotation marks
5 an exclamation mark
6 *an apostrophe*
7 a question mark

2
1 separates
2 details, list
3 interrupts
4 instead, connected

People

Unit 5

1
1 expecting
2 contact
3 neat
4 tell
5 figure
6 tanned
7 wrinkles
8 shape

2
1 shoulders
2 bald, losing
3 scar
4 appearance, shape
5 shaven
6 plump

Unit 6

1 generous, generosity, mean
honest, honesty, dishonest
tolerant, tolerance, intolerant
patient, patience, impatient
arrogant, arrogance, modest
hard-working, lazy

2
1 crazy
2 boring/dull
3 lazy
4 aggressive
5 sense of humour
6 cheerful

Unit 7

1
1 OPP insensitive
2 SYN fed up
3 SYN astonished
4 OPP hides
5 SYN scared stiff
6 SYN thrilled

2
1 He was furious with me, and I was ~~thrilled~~. *terrified / scared stiff*
OR He was ~~furious~~ *delighted* with me, and I was thrilled.
2 She was so proud when her son did well, and really ~~jealous~~. *thrilled/delighted*
3 I was anxious before the flight, and scared stiff by the time we took off. (logical)
4 I don't know what upset her, but she was ~~thrilled~~. *miserable / fed up*
5 She can be very insensitive and often hurts people's feelings. (logical)
6 I can't talk to her because she's insensitive and very ~~supportive~~. *moody*

Unit 8

1 Petros and I have nothing ^ common. *in*
2 How did you get ^ know her? *to*
3 I like Imran; we get ^ very well. *on*
4 Don't forget to keep ^ touch. *in*
5 You can't rely ^ her brother. *on*
6 I don't think they're ^ a relationship at the moment. *in*

www.hellooteacher.ir

2 1 sociable
2 realize
3 loyal
4 together
5 common
6 rows/arguments
7 regrets
8 reliable

Unit 9

1 1 immigrant
2 stepmother
3 ancestor
4 adopt
5 look like sb
6 take after sb
7 get divorced / get a divorce
8 generation

2 1 immigrants
2 only
3 parent
4 brought
5 divorced
6 up
7 previous
8 half
9 step
10 step

Unit 10

1

D	R	I	N	K	A	T	O	A	S	T		
C				W				C				M
E				E				O	R			A
R	I	N	G	D				U	E			K
E			G	D				P	C			E
M	A	R	R	I	A	G	E	L	E			A
O			O	N				E	P			S
N			O	G	G	U	E	S	T			P
Y			M						I			E
H	O	N	E	Y	M	O	O	N	O			E
									N			C
		B	R	I	D	E	S	M	A	I	D	H

2 1 funeral
2 widower
3 buried
4 mourners
5 inherited
6 choose
7 ceremony/wedding
8 civil
9 chose
10 bride
11 best
12 reception
13 anniversary
14 celebrate

The world around us

Unit 11

1 reach
2 approximately
3 earth
4 planet
5 system
6 exists
7 scientists
8 discovered
9 invented
10 space
11 satellites
12 circle
13 universe
14 roughly

2 1 go/travel
2 not
3 circle
4 test
5 studies
6 true
7 different
8 exist

Unit 12

1 1 wave
2 puddle
3 float
4 ocean
5 flood
6 steep

2 1 narrow
2 surface
3 protection
4 sank/capsized
5 horizon
6 rough
7 deep
8 steep

3 1 ~~socks~~ rocks
2 ~~chip~~ ship
3 ~~sleep~~ steep
4 ~~pony~~ pond
5 ~~boots~~ boats
6 ~~cave~~ wave
7 ~~floor~~ flood
8 ~~pink~~ sink
9 ~~blows~~ flows
10 ~~peach~~ beach

Unit 13

1 1 pouring
2 effects
3 mild
4 predict
5 breeze
6 extreme, affect

2 1 harm
2 melts
3 rise
4 spread
5 gradually
6 disappear

Unit 14

1 1 volcanic eruption
2 hurricane
3 tidal wave
4 drought
5 earthquake
6 tidal wave
7 volcanic eruption
8 drought
9 hurricane

2 1 d 2 g 3 b 4 h 5 c 6 a 7 e

Unit 15

1 Wild animals: lion, gorilla, leopard
Farm animals: calf, donkey, goat
Insects: fly, bee, mosquito
Sea creatures: whale, shark

www.hellooteacher.ir

2 Some snakes are poisonous.
Leopards have spots.
Elephants have a trunk.
Eagles have a beak.
Bears have fur.
Bees can sting.
Goats have horns.

3

Across	*Down*
2 wings	1 mice
5 bone	3 snake
6 vary	4 poison
8 camel	7 harmless
9 sting	9 shark
10 monkey	
11 calf	
12 weight	
13 spider	

Daily life

Unit 16

1 Herbs: parsley, thyme, mint
Fruit: fig, pomegranate, raspberry, apricot
Vegetables: beetroot, sweetcorn, broccoli, leeks
Fish: cod, salmon, carp, sea bass
Seafood: oysters, clams, mussels, crab
Meat: veal, rabbit, liver, kidney

Unit 17

1

1	not	6	oil or fat
2	less	7	without
3	good	8	cut
4	bad	9	weight
5	fatter	10	cooking

Unit 18

1

1	receipt	7	broke
2	well off	8	bargain
3	the sales	9	debt
4	waste	10	reduction
5	change	11	amount
6	can't afford	12	huge

The phrase in the grey squares is 'cost a fortune'.

Unit 19

1

1	fall	6	sleepy/exhausted/tired
2	go/get	7	habits
3	lack	8	nap
4	irritable	9	night
5	concentrate	10	mind

Unit 20

1 bleed
dizzy
prevent
symptom
infection
injury
develop
thoroughly

Unit 21

1 1 f 2 a 3 h 4 d 5 c 6 e 7 b

Unit 22

1 *Correct answers*
1 cancelled, held up
2 the outskirts, the way
3 a vehicle, an ambulance
4 a coach, a van
5 broke down, crashed
6 injured, delayed
7 a valid ticket, a day return
8 gets in, is due

2

1	hire	5	skid
2	pick	6	stop
3	turn	7	end
4	get		

Unit 23

1

1	style	5	button
2	bracelet	6	suede
3	dress	7	underwear
4	vest		

2

1	versatile	4	outfit
2	matches	5	jewellery
3	suits	6	materials/fabrics

Getting things done

Unit 24

1 Is it **painful** when you bite?
2 I will probably have to **take** the tooth out.
3 This is the tooth which is **causing** the pain.
4 When did you last **have** a check-up?
5 Can you come back to the **surgery** tomorrow?
6 Just ask the receptionist to make an **appointment** for you.
7 There's a hole in this tooth – you need a **filling**.
8 I'm going to **examine** your teeth and then decide what you need.

www.hellooteacher.ir

Unit 25

1 treat
2 concerned
3 surgeon
4 straightaway
5 benefit
6 take care of / care for someone
7 get over something / recover from something
8 patient
9 ward
10 risk

Unit 26

1
1 stain, remove
2 out of, fix/repair/mend
3 leaking
4 mend/repair
5 working, bulbs
6 wrong with, fix/repair/mend

2
1 hammer
2 drill
3 screwdriver
4 scissors
5 rope
6 string/wire
7 glue
8 Sellotape/glue/string

Unit 27

1 broom
2 bucket
3 vacuum cleaner
4 throw
5 dust/polish
6 wipe

Unit 28

1 I **had** my hair cut last week.
2 I just want **a** trim, please.
3 I'd like a **cut** and blow-dry, please.
4 Are you **letting** your hair grow?
5 Can you pass me the **scissors**?
6 She's got a **parting** on the left.
7 I'm having my hair **coloured** tomorrow.
8 Can I borrow your **hairdryer**?

Describing things

Unit 29

1 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 F

2
1 filthy
2 lively
3 pity
4 space
5 handy
6 graffiti
7 begging
8 disadvantage

Unit 30

1 *Possible answers*
It's a semi-detached house.
There's a chimney on the roof.
The cellar is used for storage.
There's a lawn in the garden.
The drive leads to the front door.

Unit 31

1
1 a wooden fence
2 a rubber tyre
3 a wax candle
4 a gold medal
5 a woollen blanket
6 a cardboard box
7 iron railings
8 a concrete bridge

2
1 round
2 four
3 horizontal
4 square
5 parallel
6 straight

Unit 32

1 1 h 2 f 3 a 4 d 5 g 6 b 7 i 8 e

Unit 33

1
1 artist
2 scene
3 foreground
4 just
5 distance
6 shade
7 hand
8 ignoring

Unit 34

1
1 smash
2 tear
3 fold
4 sprayed
5 crying
6 burst
7 sighed
8 shake
9 dragging

Social and political issues

Unit 35

1
1 criminal
2 murderer
3 mugger
4 burglar/thief
5 thief
6 shoplifter
7 robber

2
1 stabbed
2 obey
3 commit
4 the museum, stole
5 killed
6 violence
7 serious
8 attacked

Unit 36

1 c 1 h 2 g 3 e 4 b 5 d 6 f 7 a 8 i 9

2
1 place
2 prove
3 accused
4 witness
5 fine, sentence
6 may/might
7 evidence
8 arrest

Unit 37

1
1 obesity
2 allergy
3 stroke
4 asthma
5 heart attack
6 cancer
7 arthritis
8 diabetes

www.hellooteacher.ir

2 1 She has suffered **from** asthma for years.
2 He had a heart **attack** and died last week.
3 My grandfather is going **deaf** so I have to shout to him.
4 It's an infectious **disease** so he can't mix with other people.
5 The doctor told me to **breathe** in deeply through my nose.
6 She is allergic **to** some medicines.
7 Obesity can lead **to** heart disease.
8 He suffers from **memory** loss and can't remember where he puts things.

Unit 38

1 1 g 2 e 3 i 4 b 5 k 6 a 7 c 8 h 9 f 10 d

2 1 objective
2 oppose
3 priority
4 parliament
5 politician
6 power
7 consist

Unit 39

1 1 Yes
2 No
3 Yes
4 Yes
5 Yes
6 No
7 Yes
8 No

2 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 D 7 D 8 S

Unit 40

1 assassination, released
2 president, attempted, assassinate
3 Revolution
4 established
5 discovered
6 Princess
7 republic
8 gained

Media and entertainment

Unit 41

1 1 threats
2 declined
3 scares
4 current
5 protesting
6 daily

2 1 I enjoy all sorts of **cultural** events, such as exhibitions and concerts.
2 I think he must receive a **pension** because he's nearly 70.
3 I saw a strange newspaper **headline** the other day: 'Man bites dog'.
4 She's in charge of the local newspaper; I believe she's been the **editor** for three years.
5 The government **claims** that it can cut crime by 20 per cent this year, but I don't believe it.
6 My cousin's a newspaper **journalist**; he writes articles about current affairs.

Unit 42

1 1 editing
2 movie
3 role
4 winner
5 incredible
6 plot
7 disappointing
8 swearing

The word in the grey squares is 'director'.

Unit 43

1 1 automatic
2 abstract
3 studio
4 out of
5 realistic
6 landscape
7 sort
8 skilled

Unit 44

1 1 conductor P
2 lead singer P
3 keyboard player P
4 composer P
5 flute
6 band P
7 trumpet
8 melody
9 flautist P
10 guitarist P
11 saxophone
12 solo artist P

Unit 45

1 1 ground, stadium
2 court, umpire
3 coach, manager
4 track, circuit
5 club, referee
6 deep, standard

2 1 constructing
2 capacity
3 supported
4 lap
5 interrupted
6 crowd
7 championship
8 length, width

Unit 46

1 1 e 2 h 3 b 4 c 5 f 6 i 7 d

Unit 47

1 1 Yes
2 Yes
3 No
4 Yes
5 No
6 No
7 No
8 No

www.hellooteacher.ir

Unit 48

1 1 Everyone **parades** through the main streets in the town.
2 The people in the **neighbourhood** where I live are very friendly.
3 It's a two-day **festival**, which we have every year.
4 It was quite a **wild** party; we had great fun.
5 Do you ever **take part / participate** in parades?
6 I enjoy the carnival: it **means** a lot to me.
7 She wore a really **striking** dress with gold flowers on it.
8 We all had to **throw** a ball and try to hit the moving object.

Work and study

Unit 49

1 1 You have to follow his instructions.
2 Don't communicate with anyone.
3 Your attitude is important.
4 I was relieved to finish the exam.
5 Devote ten minutes to making notes.
6 He would never cheat in an exam.
7 If you don't succeed, try again.
8 Are dictionaries essential?

Unit 50

1 *Correct answers*
1 seminar, lecture
2 at home, away from home
3 Professors, Tutors
4 take out a loan, try to get a scholarship
5 have a debate, take notes

2 1 Our seminar started **on** time at 10.00.
2 My sister is studying away from home and she's living in a hall **of** residence.
3 How much were the tuition **fees** for your summer course?
4 We had to hurry but we arrived just **in** time for the beginning of the lecture.
5 At the moment, she's **doing** some medical research as part of her studies.
6 I would like to have the **chance/ opportunity** to study abroad, perhaps in Canada.
7 When I was at university, our essays were all part of the continuous **assessment**.
8 Do you study away **from** home?

Unit 51

1 1 vacancy
2 advice
3 acknowledge
4 valid
5 assess
6 require
7 automatically
8 process

2 1 apply
2 interview
3 feedback
4 contact
5 references
6 candidates
7 in
8 permit

Unit 52

1 carpenter/plumber
2 nanny
3 civil servant / estate agent
4 electrician/mechanic
5 sales rep / travel agent
6 plumber/carpenter

2 1 experience, profession
2 arrangements, agent
3 *servant, career, service*
4 training, qualifications
5 products, rep

Unit 53

1 1 involved
2 challenging
3 promoted
4 dealing
5 transferred
6 complaints
7 resign
8 elsewhere
9 work
10 charge
11 responsibility

2 1 appoint
2 reward
3 notice
4 unemployed
5 prospects
6 duties
7 clerical
8 solve
9 handle

The word in the grey squares is 'promotion'.

Unit 54

1 1 stressful
2 right
3 trade union
4 entitled
5 shift
6 overtime
7 bonus
8 strike

Business

Unit 55

1 finance, loss, tax, revenue, interest, cash flow, profit, loan, turnover, bank, capital

2 1 rose slightly
2 fell/dropped sharply
3 remained unchanged/stable
4 dropped/fell by
5 fluctated
6 slight increase/growth

Unit 56

1 1 G 2 B 3 B 4 G 5 B 6 G 7 G

2 1 even
2 growth
3 risks
4 rivals
5 quality
6 market
7 reputation
8 shares

www.hellooteacher.ir

Unit 57

1 e 2 h 3 g 4 b 5 a 6 d 7 c 8 f

2
1 Innovation
2 crucial
3 research
4 invest
5 contract
6 potential
7 feedback
8 diversify

Unit 58

1
danger/threat
advice/tip
ability/skill
plan/strategy
aim/objective
reply/response
data/information
need/demand

2
1 strengths, weaknesses
2 opportunities
3 gather/get, data
4 assume
5 objectives
6 ignore
7 forecasts
8 evaluate

Social English

Unit 59

1
1 definitely go
2 doubt (if/that)
3 to be a disaster
4 he'll go
5 likely
6 pessimistic

Unit 60

1 except
2 exactly
3 alike
4 compared
5 completely
6 apart
7 main
8 comparison

Unit 61

1
1 make
2 afraid
3 How/What
4 available/free
5 to
6 tied
7 postpone / put off
8 confirm

Unit 62

1
1 keen
2 fond
3 mad
4 adore/love
5 all
6 bear/stand
7 keen
8 loathe/detest

2 *Answers from a British person*
1 I enjoy physical exercise, especially long walks.
2 I'm fond of the people I work with.
3 I'm no good at dancing, so I don't enjoy it very much.
4 Yes, I absolutely adore chocolate!
5 In fact I do like shellfish, though I'm allergic to mussels.
6 I agree. I can't stand waiting in queues.
7 In fact I like cheese very much.
8 I hate cold weather, especially if it's wet as well.

Unit 63

1
1 not in favour of, against
2 is to blame, is his fault
3 in my opinion, as far as I'm concerned
4 in principle, in theory
5 is opposed to, is against
6 I believe, I reckon

2
1 in favour
2 fault
3 sensible
4 of
5 consider
6 in principle
7 support

Unit 64

1
1 He disobeys me.
2 They force us to work hard.
3 You aren't allowed to eat here. OR Eating here isn't allowed.
4 It's compulsory to wear a uniform. OR Wearing a uniform is compulsory.
5 She let us sit down.
6 The boss insists that we go.
7 His behaviour in class is terrible.
8 He punishes us if we're late.

Unit 65

1
1 fact
2 expecting
3 definitely
4 intending
5 hope
6 intention
7 afraid
8 actually/apparently
9 smoothly
10 going
11 guess

Unit 66

1 1 U 2 U 3 H 4 U 5 H 6 U 7 H 8 U 9 U

2
1 There's no point in going out.
2 You should speak to her in person.
3 I would ask an expert for advice.
4 Have you ever considered going to live abroad?
5 She joined the tennis club.
6 Waiting in queues gets on my nerves.
7 I'm not bothered about the cost of the meal.
8 Did she mention anything to you about the divorce? OR Did she mention the divorce to you?

Unit 67

1
1 mind
2 out
3 beware
4 case
5 assistance/help
6 careful

www.hellooteacher.ir

Language

Unit 68

1
1 because
2 all the same
3 still
4 furthermore
5 though
6 however
7 so
8 whereas

2 *Text 1*
1 result
2 more
3 provided

Text 2
4 due
5 addition
6 as/since
7 However/ Nevertheless

Unit 69

1
1 rare, common
2 adequate, inadequate
3 old-fashioned, modern/contemporary
4 urban, rural
5 crowded, deserted
6 artificial, real
7 rude, polite
8 satisfied, dissatisfied
9 firm, soft
10 effective, ineffective

Unit 70

1
1 underneath
2 nowadays / these days
3 throughout
4 eventually
5 onto
6 occasionally
7 towards
8 Meanwhile / In the meantime

Unit 71

1 IN: in general, in favour of, in public, in a rush
ON: insist on, rely on, on purpose, depend on, on board
OF: get rid of, capable of, take care of, approve of

Unit 72

1
1 ~~non-acceptable~~ unacceptable
2 ~~unrelevant~~ irrelevant
3 ~~dissecure~~ insecure
4 ~~an unalcoholic~~ a non-alcoholic
5 ~~disfasten~~ unfasten
6 ~~unhonest~~ dishonest
7 ~~inpatient~~ impatient

Unit 73

2
1 judgement
2 definition
3 reaction
4 powerful
5 preference
6 cruelty
7 extension
8 harmless

Unit 74

1
1 I don't recall meeting your parents.
2 He refused to leave.
3 Carrie admitted stealing the necklace.
4 Mario accused me of taking all the food.
5 She regrets moving to London.
6 Boris reminds me of your brother.
7 He blamed me for the mistake.
8 I tend to work in the evening.
9 Cal pretended to be a doctor.
10 She persuaded me to leave.

Unit 75

1
1 I take **after** my mother.
2 why don't you give it **away**?
3 I don't get **on** very well with my boss.
4 just **leave** it out
5 put his coat **on** / put **on** his coat
6 I can't work **out**
7 **switch** the TV on
8 go **over** it

Unit 76

1
1 sharply
2 strongly
3 roughly
4 rather
5 rarely
6 widely
7 seriously
8 totally

www.hellooteacher.ir

Styles of English

Unit 77

1
1 are things / 's it going?
2 up to
3 much
4 up
5 turned her down
6 You're joking! / You must be joking!
7 reckons
8 rubbish
9 loads/masses
10 Yeah
11 I'd better be off
12 Cheers!

2
1 ~~fancy~~
2 ~~reckon~~
3 ~~hang on~~
4 ~~hurry up~~
5 ~~Tell me a joke~~
6 ~~keep an eye on someone~~

Unit 78

1
1 Sir or Madam
2 regards
3 Yours
4 further
5 enclose
6 whether
7 in particular
8 hearing
9 don't hesitate
10 All the best

2
1 Further
2 deposit
3 commencing
4 further/more
5 nearby / close by
6 grateful
7 whether / if
8 appreciate
9 hesitate
10 further
11 forward
12 sincerely

Unit 79

1
1 identity card
2 United Nations
3 personal identification number
4 value added tax
5 curriculum vitae
6 internet service provider
7 information technology

2
1 Yes, fridge
2 No
3 Yes, vet
4 No
5 Yes, ad/advert
6 Yes, flu
7 Yes, lab
8 No
9 Yes, gym
10 No

Unit 80

1
tap faucet
chemist drugstore
biscuit cookie
lift elevator
petrol gasoline
wardrobe closet
diary datebook
rubbish garbage
pavement sidewalk
lorry truck

www.hellooteacher.ir

Spotlight boxes

Unit	Title of spotlight box	Page
1A	*formal*	10
1B	*conversation, chat, discussion, argument*	11
2B	*contain* and *include*	13
3A	*stress* and *emphasize*	14
5B	*-ish*	21
6	*crazy, mad, stupid*	22
7A	*absolutely* and *very*	24
7B	*sensitive*	25
8A	*friend*	26
8B	*have a row / an argument*	27
10A	*wedding* and *marriage*; *bride* and *groom*	30
11B	*discover* or *invent*	37
12A	*cause* V, N	38
13B	*effect* N, *affect* V	42
15C	*cows* and *cattle*	48
17A	*diet*	54
21B	*keep*	63
22B	*way*	65
23A	*jewellery* and *material*	67
24	*dread, look forward to*	73
25	*enough*	74
26A	Nouns	76
26B	*repair, fix,* or *mend sth*	77
28	*have/get sth done*	79
29B	*area, region, district, part*	83
30	*passage, corridor, hall*	84
31A	Noun + noun	86
31B	*shape, -shaped*	87
32A	*can* + sense verbs	88
32B	*like*	89
33	*painting* and *drawing*	90
34B	*loud, out loud / aloud, silent, silence*	93
35A	*crime*	96
35B	*steal* and *rob*	97
37B	*go* + adjective	101
38B	*oppose, opposition*	103
41B	Verbs and nouns with the same form	111
42B	*indeed*	113
43B	*photography, photograph,* etc.	115
44A	The suffix *-ist*	116
44B	*living, alive, live*	117
45A	Suffix *-er* and *player*	118
45B	*long, wide, deep*	119
46A	*record*	120
46B	*defeat*	121
47B	Compound adjectives with *well*	123
48A	*festival, carnival, parade*	124
50B	*in time, on time*	131
51	Formal language	132
52A	*career, job, profession*	134
53A	*dismiss, sack, fire*	136
54	*time off*	138
55A	*finance*	142
56A	Prefixes *over-* and *under-*	144
56B	*market*	145
57	Verbs of change	146
58A	*skill*	148
60	*compare* V, *comparison* N	153
61	*be supposed to, be meant to* + verb	154
62	Verb + *-ing*	155
63A	Giving opinions	156
65A	*actually*	160
66A	*point*	162
66B	*bother*	163
68A	*in addition, moreover, furthermore*	168
68B	*still*	169
68C	*purpose*	170
69B	*-ed/-ing* endings	172
70A	*over*	174
71A	*in the end* and *at the end*	176
71B	*depend on sb/sth*	177
72A	Prefixes	178
73B	Adjectives ending in *-ful* and *-less*	181
75A	Separable phrasal verbs	184
75B	Different meanings	185
76B	*rather, fairly, quite, pretty*	187
77A	*stuff*	191
77B	*cheers*	192
77C	*joke*	193
78	*further, further to*	194
80	*highway, freeway, expressway*	199

www.hellooteacher.ir

Word list / Index

Numbers are unit numbers, not page numbers

ATM /ˌeɪ ˌtiː ˈem/ 79
abbreviation /əˌbriːviˈeɪʃn/ 4
absolutely /ˈæbsəluːtli/ 7
abstract /ˈæbstrækt/ 43
academic /ˌækəˈdemɪk/ 50
accelerate /əkˈseləreɪt/ 21
accelerator /əkˈseləreɪtə(r)/ 21
acceptable /əkˈseptəbl/ 72
access /ˈækses/ 71
accessory /əkˈsesəri/ 23
accident /ˈæksɪdənt/ 22
accurate /ˈækjərət/ 2
accurately /ˈækjərətli/ 2
accuse /əˈkjuːz/ 74
accused *as in* the accused /əˈkjuːzd/ 36
achieve /əˈtʃiːv/ 42, 46
achievement /əˈtʃiːvmənt/ 42, 46
acknowledge /əkˈnɒlɪdʒ/ 51
acknowledgement /əkˈnɒlɪdʒmənt/ 51
actually /ˈæktʃuəli/ 65, 76
ad (= advertisement) /æd/ 79
adapt /əˈdæpt/ 57
add /æd/ 17
addition *as in* in addition /əˈdɪʃn/ 68
adequate /ˈædɪkwət/ 56, 69
admiration /ˌædməˈreɪʃn/ 44
admire /ədˈmaɪə(r)/ 44
admit /ədˈmɪt/ 74
adopt /əˈdɒpt/ 9
adore /əˈdɔː(r)/ 62
advance *as in* in advance /ədˈvɑːns/ 71
advantage /ədˈvɑːntɪdʒ/ 29
advantage *as in* take advantage of /ədˈvɑːntɪdʒ/ 71
advert /ˈædvɜːt/ 79
advertise /ˈædvətaɪz/ 58
advertising /ˈædvətaɪzɪŋ/ 58
advice /ədˈvaɪs/ 51
advise /ədˈvaɪz/ 51
afraid *as in* I'm afraid ... /əˈfreɪd/ 61
afraid *as in* I'm afraid not/so /əˈfreɪd/ 65
affect /əˈfekt/ 13
afford /əˈfɔːd/ 18
after a while /ˌɑːftər ə ˈwaɪl/ 2
against /əˈgenst/ 63
against the law /əˌgenst ðə ˈlɔː/ 35
aggression /əˈgreʃn/ 6
aggressive /əˈgresɪv/ 6
ahead /əˈhed/ 57
aid N, V /eɪd/ 41
AIDS /eɪdz/ 79
aim /eɪm/ 2, 38, 58
aircraft /ˈeəkrɑːft/ 67
alarm N /əˈlɑːm/ 19
alarmed /əˈlɑːmd/ 69
alarming /əˈlɑːmɪŋ/ 69
album (= music collection) /ˈælbəm/ 44
album *as in* photo album /ˈælbəm/ 43
alcoholic /ˌælkəˈhɒlɪk/ 72
alike /əˈlaɪk/ 60
alive /əˈlaɪv/ 44
all over /ˌɔːl ˈəʊvə(r)/ 70
all over the world /ˌɔːl ˌəʊvə ðə ˈwɜːld/ 45
all the best /ˌɔːl ðə ˈbest/ 78
all the same /ˌɔːl ðə ˈseɪm/ 68
allergic /əˈlɜːdʒɪk/ 37
allergy /ˈælədʒi/ 37
allowed /əˈlaʊd/ 64
allow /əˈlaʊ/ 64
ally /ˈælaɪ/ 39
aloud /əˈlaʊd/ 34
alphabet /ˈælfəbet/ 47
alphabetical /ˌælfəˈbetɪkl/ 47
already /ɔːlˈredi/ 70
alter /ˈɔːltə(r)/ 57
alternative /ɔːlˈtɜːnətɪv/ 4
although /ɔːlˈðəʊ/ 68
amateur /ˈæmətə(r)/ 46
amateur photographer /ˌæmətə fəˈtɒgrəfə(r)/ 43
amazed /əˈmeɪzd/ 7, 69
amazing /əˈmeɪzɪŋ/ 69
ambition /æmˈbɪʃn/ 6
ambitious /æmˈbɪʃəs/ 6
ambulance /ˈæmbjələns/ 22
among /əˈmʌŋ/ 70
amongst /əˈmʌŋst/ 70
amount /əˈmaʊnt/ 18
amused /əˈmjuːzd/ 69
amusing /əˈmjuːzɪŋ/ 69
analyse /ˈænəlaɪz/ 11
analysis /əˈnæləsɪs/ 11
ancestor /ˈænsestə(r)/ 9
anniversary /ˌænɪˈvɜːsəri/ 10
announce /əˈnaʊns/ 38
announcement /əˈnaʊnsmənt/ 38
annual /ˈænjuəl/ 55
antisocial /ˌænti ˈsəʊʃl/ 8
anxious /ˈæŋkʃəs/ 7
apart /əˈpɑːt/ 60
apartment /əˈpɑːtmənt/ 80
apostrophe /əˈpɒstrəfi/ 4
appalling /əˈpɔːlɪŋ/ 66
apparently /əˈpærəntli/ 63
appeal N, V /əˈpiːl/ 44
appear /əˈpɪə(r)/ 32
appearance /əˈpɪərəns/ 5
application /ˌæplɪˈkeɪʃn/ 51
apply /əˈplaɪ/ 51
appoint /əˈpɔɪnt/ 53
appointment /əˈpɔɪntmənt/ 24
appreciate *as in* I would appreciate it if ... /əˈpriːʃieɪt/ 78
approach /əˈprəʊtʃ/ 48
appropriate /əˈprəʊpriət/ 2
approve /əˈpruːv/ 71
approximately /əˈprɒksɪmətli/ 11, 76
apricot /ˈeɪprɪkɒt/ 16
area /ˈeəriə/ 29
argue /ˈɑːgjuː/ 8
argument /ˈɑːgjumənt/ 1, 8
army /ˈɑːmi/ 39
arrangements /əˈreɪndʒmənts/ 52
arrest /əˈrest/ 36
arrogance /ˈærəgəns/ 6
arrogant /ˈærəgənt/ 6
arthritic /ɑːˈθrɪtɪk/ 37
arthritis /ɑːˈθraɪtəs/ 37
artichoke /ˈɑːtɪtʃəʊk/ 16
artificial /ˌɑːtɪˈfɪʃl/ 69
artist /ˈɑːtɪst/ 33
as /æz, əz/ 68

www.hellooteacher.ir

as a result /əz ə rɪ'zʌlt/ 68
as an alternative /əz ən ɔ:l'tɜ:nətɪv/ 61
as far as I'm concerned ... /əz ˌfɑ:r əz 'aɪm kənˌsɜ:nd/ 63
as long as /əz 'lɒŋ əz/ 68
ask *as in* if you ask me ... /ɑ:sk/ 63
asleep /ə'sli:p/ 19
asparagus /ə'spærəgəs/ 16
assassinate /ə'sæsɪneɪt/ 40
assassination /əˌsæsɪ'neɪʃn/ 40
assault /ə'sɔ:lt/ 35
assess /ə'ses/ 51
assessment /ə'sesmənt/ 51
asset /'æset/ 56
assistance /ə'sɪstəns/ 67
assume /ə'sju:m/ 58, 65
assumption /ə'sʌmpʃn/ 58
asthma /'æsmə/ 37
astonished /ə'stɒnɪʃt/ 7, 69
astonishing /ə'stɒnɪʃɪŋ/ 69
at first /ət 'fɜ:st/ 71
at home /ət 'həʊm/ 50
at least /ət 'li:st/ 71
at the end /ət ði 'end/ 71
athlete /'æθli:t/ 45
athletics /æθ'letɪks/ 45, 46
atmosphere /'ætməsfɪə(r)/ 13
atrocious /ə'trəʊʃəs/ 66
attack N /ə'tæk/ 15
attack V /ə'tæk/ 15, 35
attacker /ə'tækə(r)/ 35
attempt *n, v* /ə'tempt/ 40
attend /ə'tend/ 50, 51
attention /ə'tenʃn/ 47
attic /'ætɪk/ 30
attitude /'ætɪtju:d/ 49
attorney /ə'tɜ:ni/ 80
attract sb's attention /əˌtrækt ... ə'tenʃn/ 47
author /'ɔ:θə(r)/ 47
autobiography /ˌɔ:təbaɪ'ɒgrəfi/ 47
automatic /ˌɔ:tə'mætɪk/ 43
automatically /ˌɔ:tə'mætɪkli/ 51
available /ə'veɪləbl/ 61
average /'ævərɪdʒ/ 15
avocado /ˌævə'kɑ:dəʊ/ 16
avoid /ə'vɔɪd/ 3, 22
awake *as in* wide awake /ə'weɪk/ 19
award N /ə'wɔ:d/ 42
aware /ə'weə(r)/ 2
away from home /əˌweɪ frəm 'həʊm/ 50
axe N, V /æks/ 41

BBC (British Broadcasting Corporation) /ˌbi: ˌbi: 'si:/ 79
back /bæk/ 70
back sth up /ˌbæk ... 'ʌp/ 66
background /'bækgraʊnd/ 33
backward(s) /'bækwədz/ 20
bad diet /ˌbæd 'daɪət/ 17
bad for you /'bæd fə ˌju:/ 17
bake /beɪk/ 17
balanced diet /ˌbælənst 'daɪət/ 17
bald /bɔ:ld/ 5
ban V /bæn/ 64
band /bænd/ 44
bandage /'bændɪdʒ/ 20
bang N /bæŋ/ 26
bang V /bæŋ/ 20
bank loan /'bæŋk ˌləʊn/ 55
bank /bæŋk/ 12
bargain /'bɑ:gɪn/ 18
barrier /'bæriə(r)/ 67
barrister /'bærɪstə(r)/ 80
based /beɪst/ 51
basement /'beɪsmənt/ 30
basic /'beɪsɪk/ 69
basil /'bæzl/ 16
bass *as in* sea bass /bæs/ 16
battle /'bætl/ 39
be bothered /ˌbi 'bɒðəd/ 66
be going to /ˌbi 'gəʊɪŋ tə/ 65
be keen on /ˌbi 'ki:n ˌɒn/ 62
be meant to /ˌbi 'ment tə/ 61
be stuck /ˌbi 'stʌk/ 22
be supposed to /ˌbi sə'pəʊst tə/ 61
be to blame for sth /ˌbi tə 'bleɪm fə ˌ.../ 63
be up to sb /ˌbi 'ʌp tə ˌ.../ 64
beach /bi:tʃ/ 12
beak /bi:k/ 15
bear N /beə(r)/ 15
bear *as in* can't bear /beə(r)/ 62
beat /bi:t/ 46
beauty contest /'bju:ti ˌkɒntest/ 48
because /bɪ'kɒz, bɪ'kəz/ 68
bee /bi:/ 15
beetroot /'bi:tru:t/ 16
beg /beg/ 29
behave /bɪ'heɪv/ 64
behaviour /bɪ'heɪvjə(r)/ 64
believe /bɪ'li:v/ 63
belong /bɪ'lɒŋ/ 18
belt /belt/ 23
beneath /bɪ'ni:θ/ 70
benefit /'benɪfɪt/ 25
beside /bɪ'saɪd/ 70
best man /ˌbest 'mæn/ 10
best wishes /'best ˌwɪʃɪz/ 78
better *as in* I'd better be off /'betə(r)/ 77
beware /bɪ'weə(r)/ 67
beyond /bɪ'jɒnd/ 70
bike /baɪk/ 79
billfold /'bɪlfəʊld/ 80
biography /baɪ'ɒgrəfi/ 47
bite /baɪt/ 24
bitterly /'bɪtəli/ 76
bitterly cold /ˌbɪtəli 'kəʊld/ 13
blame *as in* be to blame /bleɪm/ 63
blame V /bleɪm/ 74
bland /blænd/ 32
blanket /'blæŋkɪt/ 31
bleed /bli:d/ 20
blind /blaɪnd/ 37
block /blɒk/ 22
blood /blʌd/ 20
blossom /'blɒsəm/ 48
blouse /blaʊz/ 23
blow-dry /'bləʊ ˌdraɪ/ 28
blue *as in* out of the blue /blu:/ 77
board /bɔ:d/ 79
board *as in* on board /bɔ:d/ 71
boat /bəʊt/ 12
boil /bɔɪl/ 17
bomb /bɒm/ 39
bomb scare /'bɒm ˌskeə(r)/ 41
bone /bəʊn/ 15
bonnet /'bɒnɪt/ 21
bonus /'bəʊnəs/ 54
book /bʊk/ 47
boot (of a car) /bu:t/ 21
boot (item of clothing) /bu:t/ 23
bother /'bɒðə(r)/ 66
bottom /'bɒtəm/ 33
bound to /'baʊnd tə/ 59
box /bɒks/ 31
boxer /'bɒksə(r)/ 45
bra /brɑ:/ 23
bracelet /'breɪslət/ 23
brackets /'brækɪts/ 4
brain /breɪn/ 37
brake N, V /breɪk/ 21

www.hellooteacher.ir

brand /brænd/ 56
break down /ˌbreɪk 'daʊn/ 22
break even /ˌbreɪk 'i:vn/ 56
break into /'breɪk ˌɪntə/ 35
break out /ˌbreɪk 'aʊt/ 39
break the law
/ˌbreɪk ðə 'lɔ:/ 35
break a record
/ˌbreɪk ə 'rekɔ:d/ 46
breath /breθ/ 34
breathe /bri:ð/ 34, 37
breeze /bri:z/ 13
breezy /'bri:zi/ 13
brick /brɪk/ 30
bride /braɪd/ 10
bridesmaid /'braɪdzmeɪd/ 10
bridge /brɪdʒ/ 31
bright /braɪt/ 33
brightness /'braɪtnəs/ 33
brilliant /'brɪliənt/ 46
bring sb up /ˌbrɪŋ ... 'ʌp/ 9
broad shoulders
/ˌbrɔ:d 'ʃəʊldəz/ 5
broccoli /'brɒkəli/ 16
broke /brəʊk/ 18
broom /bru:m/ 27
browse /braʊz/ 47
bruised /bru:zd/ 20
bucket /'bʌkɪt/ 27
build /bɪld/ 3
built-in flash /ˌbɪlt ˌɪn 'flæʃ/ 43
built-up /ˌbɪlt 'ʌp/ 29
bulb *as in* light bulb /bʌlb/ 26
bull /bʊl/ 15
burglar /'bɜ:glə(r)/ 35
burglary /'bɜ:gləri/ 35
burial /'beriəl/ 10
burn /bɜ:n/ 20
burst /bɜ:st/ 12
burst into tears
/ˌbɜ:st ɪntə 'tɪəz/ 34
burst out laughing
/ˌbɜ:st aʊt 'lɑ:fɪŋ/ 34
bury /'beri/ 10
business trip /'bɪznəs ˌtrɪp/ 22
busy /'bɪzi/ 69
button /'bʌtn/ 23
by /baɪ/ 70
by chance /ˌbaɪ 'tʃɑ:ns/ 71

c (cent(s)) /sent(s)/ 79
cl (centilitre(s))
/'sentɪli:tə(z)/ 79
cm (centimetre(s))
/'sentɪmi:tə(z)/ 79
ct (cent(s)) /sent(s)/ 79
CV (curriculum vitae)
/ˌsi: 'vi:/ 79
cabinet /'kæbɪnət/ 34
calf /kɑ:f/ 15, 16
calf's liver /'kɑ:fs ˌlɪvə(r)/ 16
calm /kɑ:m/ 66
camel /'kæml/ 15
campaign /kæm'peɪn/ 38
can /kæn, kən/ 32
can *as in* trash can /kæn/ 80
can you make it?
/kən ˌju: 'meɪk ˌɪt/ 61
canal /kə'næl/ 12
cancel /'kænsl/ 22
cancer /'kænsə(r)/ 37
candidate
/'kændɪdət, -deɪt/ 49, 51
candle /'kændl/ 31
candlestick /'kændlstɪk/ 31
candy /'kændi/ 80
can't bear /ˌkɑ:nt 'beə(r)/ 62
can't stand /ˌkɑ:nt 'stænd/ 62
cap /kæp/ 23
capable /'keɪpəbl/ 71
capacity /kə'pæsəti/ 45
capital /'kæpɪtl/ 55
capital letter /ˌkæpɪtl 'letə(r)/ 4
capsize /kæp'saɪz/ 12
captain /'kæptɪn/ 45
capture /'kæptʃə(r)/ 39
cardboard /'kɑ:dbɔ:d/ 31
care about /'keər əˌbaʊt/ 71
care for /'keə ˌfɔ:(r), fə(r)/ 25, 52
career /kə'rɪə(r)/ 52
careful /'keəfl/ 67, 73
carefully /'keəfəli/ 49
careless /'keələs/ 73
cargo ship /'kɑ:gəʊ ˌʃɪp/ 12
carnival /'kɑ:nɪvl/ 48
carp /kɑ:p/ 16
carpenter /'kɑ:pəntə(r)/ 52
carry on /ˌkæri 'ɒn/ 75
carry out /ˌkæri 'aʊt/ 11
case /keɪs/ 57
case *as in* in case /keɪs/ 67, 68
cash flow /'kæʃ ˌfləʊ/ 55
cash flow problem
/'kæʃ ˌfləʊ ˌprɒbləm/ 55
catalogue /'kætəlɒg/ 47
catch (= find and hold)
/kætʃ/ 36
catch (= hear/understand)
/kætʃ/ 32
cattle /kætl/ 15
cause N /kɔ:z/ 12
cause V /kɔ:z/ 12, 24
caution /'kɔ:ʃn/ 67
cave /keɪv/ 12
ceasefire /'si:sfaɪə(r)/ 39
celebrate /'selɪbreɪt/ 10
celery /'seləri/ 16
cellar /'selə(r)/ 30
cellist /'tʃelɪst/ 44
cello /'tʃeləʊ/ 44
cellphone /'selfəʊn/ 80
cemetery /'semətri/ 10
cent /sent/ 79
centilitre /'sentɪli:tə(r)/ 79
centimetre /'sentɪmi:tə(r)/ 79
centre /'sentə(r)/ 33
ceremony /'serəməni/ 10
challenge N /'tʃælɪndʒ/ 53
challenging /'tʃælɪndʒɪŋ/ 53
championship
/'tʃæmpiənʃɪp/ 45
chance (= opportunity)
/tʃɑ:ns/ 1, 50
chance (= possibility)
/tʃɑ:ns/ 59
change /tʃeɪndʒ/ 18
chapter /'tʃæptə(r)/ 47
charge *as in* in charge
/tʃɑ:dʒ/ 53, 71
charge V /tʃɑ:dʒ/ 36
chat /tʃæt/ 1
cheat V, N /tʃi:t/ 49
check-up /'tʃek ˌʌp/ 24
cheerful /'tʃɪəfl/ 6
cheers /tʃɪəz/ 77
chew /tʃu:/ 24
chickpeas /'tʃɪkpi:z/ 16
chilly /'tʃɪli/ 13
chimney /'tʃɪmni/ 30
choice /tʃɔɪs/ 10, 64
choose /tʃu:z/ 3, 10
chop /tʃɒp/ 17
circle N /'sɜ:kl/ 31
circle V /'sɜ:kl/ 11
circuit /'sɜ:kɪt/ 45
circular /'sɜ:kjələ(r)/ 31
city *as in* inner city /'sɪti/ 29
civil ceremony
/ˌsɪvl 'serəməni/ 10
civil servant /ˌsɪvl 'sɜ:vənt/ 52
civil service /ˌsɪvl 'sɜ:vɪs/ 52
civil war /ˌsɪvl 'wɔ:(r)/ 39
claim N /kleɪm/ 41, 66
claim V /kleɪm/ 41
clam /klæm/ 16
clash N, V /klæʃ/ 41
clean-shaven /ˌkli:n 'ʃeɪvn/ 5

www.hellooteacher.ir

cleaner *as in* vacuum cleaner /'kli:nə(r)/ 27
clear /klɪə(r)/ 2
clerical /'klerɪkl/ 53
clerk /klɑ:k/ 53
cliff /klɪf/ 12
climate /'klaɪmət/ 13
close /kləʊs/ 21
close by /ˌkləʊs 'baɪ/ 78
close friend /ˌkləʊs 'frend/ 8
closet /'klɒzɪt/ 80
cloth /klɒθ/ 27
club /klʌb/ 45
clue *as in* I haven't a clue /klu:/ 77
clutch /klʌtʃ/ 21
coach (= vehicle) /kəʊtʃ/ 22
coach (= person) /kəʊtʃ/ 45
coast /kəʊst/ 12
coconut /'kəʊkənʌt/ 16
cod /kɒd/ 16
coffin /'kɒfɪn/ 10
collapse N, V /kə'læps/ 14
collar /'kɒlə(r)/ 23
collide /kə'laɪd/ 22
collocation /ˌkɒlə'keɪʃn/ 3
colon /'kəʊlən/ 4
colour /'kʌlə(r)/ 28
come round /ˌkʌm 'raʊnd/ 20
comma /'kɒmə/ 4
commence /kə'mens/ 77, 78
commentator /'kɒməntertə(r)/ 45
commit a crime /kəˌmɪt ə 'kraɪm/ 35
common /'kɒmən/ 69
communicate /kə'mju:nɪkeɪt/ 49
community /kə'mju:nəti/ 48
company /'kʌmpəni/ 56
compare /kəm'peə(r)/ 60, 74
comparison /kəm'pærɪsən/ 60
compete /kəm'pi:t/ 46
competition /ˌkɒmpə'tɪʃn/ 46
competitive /kəm'petətɪv/ 46
competitor (= sports person) /kəm'petɪtə(r)/ 46
competitor (= rival company) /kəm'petɪtə(r)/ 56
complain /kəm'pleɪn/ 53, 66
complaint /kəm'pleɪnt/ 53, 66
completely /kəm'pli:tli/ 60, 76
complex /'kɒmpleks/ 2
complicated /'kɒmplɪkeɪtɪd/ 2
compose /kəm'pəʊz/ 44
composer /kəm'pəʊzə(r)/ 44
compromise N, V /'kɒmprəmaɪz/ 39
compulsory /kəm'pʌlsəri/ 64
concentrate /'kɒnsəntreɪt/ 19
concerned /kən'sɜ:nd/ 25
concrete /'kɒŋkri:t/ 31
conditions /kən'dɪʃnz/ 54
conductor /kən'dʌktə(r)/ 44
confirm /kən'fɜ:m/ 11, 51, 61
confirmation /ˌkɒnfə'meɪʃn/ 11, 51
conflict /'kɒnflɪkt/ 39
connect /kə'nekt/ 4
connecting flight /kəˌnektɪŋ 'flaɪt/ 22
conscious /'kɒnʃəs/ 20
consequently /'kɒnsɪkwəntli/ 68
consider /kən'sɪdə(r)/ 63, 66
considerable /kən'sɪdərəbl/ 14
consideration /kənˌsɪdə'reɪʃn/ 66
consist /kən'sɪst/ 38
constituency /kən'stɪtjuənsi/ 38
construct (= make a sentence) /kən'strʌkt/ 1
construct (= build) /kən'strʌkt/ 45
construction (= sentence) /kən'strʌkʃn/ 1
construction (= building) /kən'strʌkʃn/ 45
consultant /kən'sʌltənt/ 25
contact V /'kɒntækt/ 51
contact lenses /'kɒntækt ˌlenzɪz/ 5
contain /kən'teɪn/ 2
contemporary /kən'temprəri/ 69
contest /'kɒntest/ 46, 48
context /'kɒntekst/ 1
continuous assessment /kənˌtɪnjuəs ə'sesmənt/ 50
contract /'kɒntrækt/ 57
contrast N /'kɒntrɑ:st/ 68
contrast V /kən'trɑ:st/ 68
control *as in* in control /kən'trəʊl/ 39
convenient /kən'vi:niənt/ 29
conversation /ˌkɒnvə'seɪʃn/ 1
convert /kən'vɜ:t/ 30
convinced /kən'vɪnst/ 76
cookie /'kʊki/ 80
cope /kəʊp/ 71
corner /'kɔ:nə(r)/ 33
corridor /'kɒrɪdɔ:(r)/ 30
cost a fortune /ˌkɒst ə 'fɔ:tʃu:n/ 18
costs *as in* operating costs /kɒsts/ 55
costume /'kɒstju:m/ 48
cotton /'kɒtn/ 23, 26
couple /'kʌpl/ 10
court (for tennis, badminton, etc.) /kɔ:t/ 45
court *as in* go to court /kɔ:t/ 36
courtroom /'kɔ:tru:m/ 36
cover N /'kʌvə(r)/ 47
cover V /'kʌvə(r)/ 20
cow /kaʊ/ 15
crab /kræb/ 16
cracked /krækt/ 26
cramped /kræmpt/ 69
crash /kræʃ/ 22
crazy /'kreɪzi/ 6
crazy about /'kreɪzi əˌbaʊt/ 62
creamy /'kri:mi/ 73
create /kri'eɪt/ 43
creature /'kri:tʃə(r)/ 15
cremate /krə'meɪt/ 10
cremation /krə'meɪʃn/ 10
crime /kraɪm/ 35
criminal /'krɪmɪnl/ 35
crisis /'kraɪsɪs/ 39
critical (= dangerous) /'krɪtɪkl/ 39
critical (of sth/sb) /'krɪtɪkl/ 46
criticize /'krɪtɪsaɪz/ 46
crops /krɒps/ 14
cross /krɒs/ 67
crowd /kraʊd/ 45
crowded /'kraʊdɪd/ 69
crucial /'kru:ʃl/ 14, 57
cruel /kru:əl/ 73
cruelty /'kru:əlti/ 73
cry /kraɪ/ 34
cultural /'kʌltʃərəl/ 41
culture /'kʌltʃə(r)/ 41
curious /'kjʊəriəs/ 69
current affairs /ˌkʌrənt ə'feəz/ 41
currently /'kʌrəntli/ 30
curriculum vitae /kəˌrɪkjələm 'vi:taɪ/ 79
curved /kɜ:vd/ 31
cut N /kʌt/ 20
cut V /kʌt/ 28
cut down /ˌkʌt 'daʊn/ 17
cycling /'saɪklɪŋ/ 46

www.hellooteacher.ir

DVD /ˌdi: ˌvi: 'di:/ 79
daily /'deɪli/ 41
damage N, V /'dæmɪʤ/ 14
damp /dæmp/ 32
danger /'deɪnʤə(r)/ 67
dark /dɑ:k/ 33
dark-skinned /ˌdɑ:k 'skɪnd/ 5
dash /dæʃ/ 4
data /'deɪtə/ 58
datebook /'deɪtbʊk/ 80
day return /ˌdeɪ rɪ'tɜ:n/ 22
day trip /'deɪ ˌtrɪp/ 22
dead /ded/ 10
deaf /def/ 37
deal with /'di:l wɪð/ 53
death /deθ/ 10
death toll /'deθ ˌtɒl/ 14
debate /dɪ'beɪt/ 50
debt /det/ 18
decline N, V /dɪ'klaɪn/ 41
decorate /'dekəreɪt/ 26
decrease V /dɪ'kri:s/ 37
decrease N /'di:kri:s/ 37
deep /di:p/ 12, 45
deep sleep /ˌdi:p 'sli:p/ 19
defeat N /dɪ'fi:t/ 46
defeat V /dɪ'fi:t/ 40, 46
defence *as in* the defence /dɪ'fens/ 36
defend /dɪ'fend/ 36
defendant /dɪ'fendənt/ 36
define /dɪ'faɪn/ 3, 73
definitely /'defɪnətli/ 59, 65
definitely not /ˌdefɪnətli 'nɒt/ 65
definition /ˌdefɪ'nɪʃn/ 3, 73
delayed /dɪ'leɪd/ 22
deli /'deli/ 79
deliberately /dɪ'lɪbərətli/ 71
delicatessen /ˌdelɪkə'tesn/ 79
delighted /dɪ'laɪtɪd/ 7
demand /dɪ'mɑ:nd/ 58
demonstrate /'demənstreɪt/ 41
demonstration /ˌdemən'streɪʃn/ 41
denim skirt /ˌdenɪm 'skɜ:t/ 23
dental surgery /'dentl ˌsɜ:ʤəri/ 24
deny /dɪ'naɪ/ 74
department /dɪ'pɑ:tmənt/ 53
depend /dɪ'pend/ 8, 71
dependent /dɪ'pendənt/ 63
deposit /dɪ'pɒzɪt/ 78
depressed /dɪ'prest/ 37
depressing /dɪ'presɪŋ/ 29
depression /dɪ'preʃn/ 37
depth /depθ/ 12, 45
deserted /dɪ'zɜ:tɪd/ 69
desperately /'despərətli/ 76
despite /dɪ'spaɪt/ 68
destroy /dɪ'strɔɪ/ 4
destruction /dɪ'strʌkʃn/ 14
detail *as in* in detail /'di:teɪl/ 2
details /'di:teɪlz/ 4
determined /dɪ'tɜ:mɪnd/ 39
detest /dɪ'test/ 62
develop (= grow/increase) /dɪ'veləp/ 20
develop (a film) /dɪ'veləp/ 43
devote /dɪ'vəʊt/ 49
diabetes /ˌdaɪə'bi:ti:z/ 37
diabetic /ˌdaɪə'betɪk/ 37
diagonal /daɪ'ægənl/ 31
diary /'daɪəri/ 80
die /daɪ/ 10
diet /'daɪət/ 17
different /'dɪfrənt/ 60
digital camera /ˌdɪʤɪtl 'kæmərə/ 43
direct /də'rekt, dɪ-, daɪ-/ 42
director /də'rektə(r), dɪ-, daɪ-/ 42
dirt /dɜ:t/ 27
dirty /'dɜ:ti/ 27
disability /ˌdɪsə'bɪlәti/ 37
disabled /dɪs'eɪbld/ 37
disadvantage /ˌdɪsəd'vɑ:ntɪʤ/ 29
disappear /ˌdɪsə'pɪə(r)/ 13, 32, 73
disappearance /ˌdɪsə'pɪərəns/ 73
disappointing /ˌdɪsə'pɔɪntɪŋ/ 42, 69
disappointed /ˌdɪsə'pɔɪntɪd/ 69
disapprove /ˌdɪsə'pru:v/ 71
disaster /dɪ'zɑ:stə(r)/ 14, 59, 77
discount /'dɪskaʊnt/ 18
discover /dɪ'skʌvə(r)/ 11, 40
discovery /dɪ'skʌvəri/ 11, 40
discuss /dɪ'skʌs/ 1
discussion /dɪ'skʌʃn/ 1
disease /dɪ'zi:z/ 13, 37
disgusted /dɪs'gʌstɪd/ 69
disgusting /dɪs'gʌstɪŋ/ 42, 69
dish /dɪʃ/ 17
dishonest /dɪs'ɒnɪst/ 6
dislike /dɪs'laɪk/ 62
disloyal /dɪs'lɔɪəl/ 8, 72
dismiss /dɪs'mɪs/ 53
disobedient /ˌdɪsə'bi:diənt/ 64
disobey /ˌdɪsə'beɪ/ 64
display *as in* on display /dɪ'spleɪ/ 43
disqualify /dɪs'kwɒlɪfaɪ/ 49
dissatisfaction /ˌdɪsˌsætɪs'fækʃn/ 66
dissatisfied /ˌdɪs'sætɪsfaɪd/ 66, 69
distance /'dɪstəns/ 33
district /'dɪstrɪkt/ 29
diversify /daɪ'vɜ:sɪfaɪ/ 57
divide /dɪ'vaɪd/ 4
dizzy /'dɪzi/ 20
do overtime /ˌdu: 'əʊvətaɪm/ 54
do research /ˌdu: rɪ'sɜ:tʃ, 'ri:sɜ:tʃ/ 50, 57
do revision /ˌdu: rɪ'vɪʒn/ 1
do up /ˌdu: 'ʌp/ 72
do the washing up /ˌdu: ðə ˌwɒʃɪŋ 'ʌp/ 27
doctor's surgery /'dɒktəz ˌsɜ:ʤəri/ 24
donkey /'dɒŋki/ 15
don't bother /ˌdəʊnt 'bɒðə(r)/ 66
door handle /'dɔ: ˌhændl/ 21
doubt /daʊt/ 59
doubt *as in* I doubt it /daʊt/ 65
downturn /'daʊntɜ:n/ 58
dozen /'dʌzn/ 39
drag /dræg/ 34
drama /'drɑ:mə/ 42
dramatic /drə'mætɪk/ 37, 42
draw /drɔ:/ 33
drawback /'drɔ:bæk/ 29
drawing /'drɔ:ɪŋ/ 33, 43
dread /dred/ 24
dreadful /'dredfl/ 66
dream /dri:m/ 19
dress /dres/ 23
dress up /ˌdres 'ʌp/ 48
dressing /'dresɪŋ/ 20
dries up /ˌdraɪz 'ʌp/ 12
drill /drɪl/ 26
drink a toast /ˌdrɪŋk ə 'təʊst/ 10
drive /draɪv/ 30
driver *as in* racing driver /'draɪvə(r)/ 45
drizzle /'drɪzl/ 13
drizzling /'drɪzlɪŋ/ 13
drop N, V /drɒp/ 55
drop (of rain) /drɒp/ 13
drought /draʊt/ 14
drown /draʊn/ 12

www.hellooteacher.ir

drugstore /'drʌgstɔ:(r)/ 80
drummer /'drʌmə(r)/ 44
dry up /ˌdraɪ 'ʌp/ 12
duck /dʌk/ 16
due (= expected) /dju:/ 22
due to /'dju: tə/ 68
dull /dʌl/ 6
during /'djʊərɪŋ/ 70
dust N, V /dʌst/ 27
dustbin /'dʌstbɪn/ 80
dusty /'dʌsti/ 27
duty /'dju:ti/ 53

EU (European Union) /ˌi: 'ju:/ 79
eagle /'i:gl/ 15
earrings /'ɪərɪŋz/ 23
earth /ɜ:θ/ 11
earthquake /'ɜ:θkweɪk/ 14
easy-going /ˌi:zi 'gəʊɪŋ/ 6
economical /ˌi:kə'nɒmɪkl/ 73
edge /edʒ/ 70
edit /'edɪt/ 41, 42
editing /'edɪtɪŋ/ 42
editor /'edɪtə(r)/ 41
effect /ɪ'fekt/ 13
effective /ɪ'fektɪv/ 2, 69
effectively /ɪ'fektɪvli/ 2
efficient /ɪ'fɪʃnt/ 69
effort /'efət/ 56
elbow /'elbəʊ/ 20
elect /ɪ'lekt/ 38
election /ɪ'lekʃn/ 38
electrical /ɪ'lektrɪkl/ 52
electrician /ɪˌlek'trɪʃn/ 52
elegant /'elɪgənt/ 23
elephant /'elɪfənt/ 15
elevator /'elɪveɪtə(r)/ 80
elsewhere /ˌels'weə(r)/ 53
embarrassed /ɪm'bærəst/ 69
embarrassing /ɪm'bærəsɪŋ/ 69
emergency services /ɪ'mɜ:dʒənsi ˌsɜ:vɪsɪz/ 22
emigrate /'emɪgreɪt/ 9
emotion /ɪ'məʊʃn/ 7
emotional /ɪ'məʊʃənl/ 7
emphasis /'emfəsɪs/ 3
emphasize /'emfəsaɪz/ 3
employ /ɪm'plɔɪ/ 56
employee /ɪm'plɔɪi:/ 56
employer /ɪm'plɔɪə(r)/ 56
enable /ɪ'neɪbl/ 74
enclose /ɪn'kləʊz/ 78
encourage /ɪn'kʌrɪdʒ/ 2, 74
encouragement /ɪn'kʌrɪdʒmənt/ 2
encouraging /ɪn'kʌrɪdʒɪŋ/ 2
encyclopedia /ɪnˌsaɪklə'pi:diə/ 47
end *as in* at/in the end /end/ 71
end up /ˌend 'ʌp/ 22
enemy /'enəmi/ 39
energetic /ˌenə'dʒetɪk/ 6
energy /'enədʒi/ 6
engine /'endʒɪn/ 21
engineering /ˌendʒɪ'nɪərɪŋ/ 52
enormous /ɪ'nɔ:məs/ 30
enough /ɪ'nʌf/ 25
enquiry /ɪn'kwaɪəri/ 53
entertainer /ˌentə'teɪnə(r)/ 48
entertaining /ˌentə'teɪnɪŋ/ 42
entertainment /ˌentə'teɪnmənt/ 48
enthusiasm /ɪn'θju:ziæzəm/ 2
enthusiastic /ɪnˌθju:zi'æstɪk/ 2
entitled /ɪn'taɪtld/ 54
entire /ɪn'taɪə(r)/ 41
entry /'entri/ 3
envious /'enviəs/ 7
environment /ɪn'vaɪrənmənt/ 13
environmentalist /ɪnˌvaɪrən'mentəlɪst/ 13
equivalent /ɪ'kwɪvələnt/ 42
erupt /ɪ'rʌpt/ 14
eruption /ɪ'rʌpʃn/ 14
especially /ɪ'speʃəli/ 78
essential /ɪ'senʃl/ 49, 69
establish /ɪ'stæblɪʃ/ 40
establishment /ɪ'stæblɪʃmənt/ 40
estate agent /ɪ'steɪt ˌeɪdʒənt/ 52
European Union /ˌjʊərəˌpi:ən 'ju:niən/ 79
evacuate /ɪ'vækjueɪt/ 14
evacuation /ɪˌvækju'eɪʃn/ 14
evaluate /ɪ'væljueɪt/ 58
evaluation /ɪˌvælju'eɪʃn/ 58
even /'i:vn/ 33
even *as in* break even /'i:vn/ 56
even though /'i:vn ˌðəʊ/ 68
eventually /ɪ'ventʃuəli/ 70
everyday /'evrideɪ/ 2
evidence /'evɪdəns/ 36
exactly the same /ɪgˌzæktli ðə 'seɪm/ 60
examine /ɪg'zæmɪn/ 24
examiner /ɪg'zæmɪnə(r)/ 49
example *as in* for example /ɪg'zɑ:mpl/ 3
except /ɪk'sept/ 60
exclamation mark /ˌeksklə'meɪʃn ˌmɑ:k/ 4
exercise /'eksəsaɪz/ 17
exhausted /ɪg'zɔ:stɪd/ 19
exhibition /ˌeksɪ'bɪʃn/ 43
exist /ɪg'zɪst/ 11
existence /ɪg'zɪstəns/ 11
expand /ɪk'spænd/ 2
expect /ɪk'spekt/ 59, 65
expect *as in* I expect so /ɪk'spekt/ 65
expect a baby/child /ɪk ˌspekt ə 'beɪbi, 'tʃaɪld/ 5
expectancy *as in* life expectancy /ɪk'spektənsi/ 15
expected /ɪk'spektɪd/ 69
experience /ɪk'spɪəriəns/ 52
experiment N /ɪk'sperɪmənt/ 11
experiment V /ɪk'sperɪmənt/ 1
expert /'ekspɜ:t/ 43, 66
explain /ɪk'spleɪn/ 1
explanation /ˌeksplə'neɪʃn/ 1
explode /ɪk'spləʊd/ 39
exploit /ɪk'splɔɪt/ 57
exploitation /ˌeksplɔɪ'teɪʃn/ 57
exploration /ˌeksplə'reɪʃn/ 11
explore /ɪk'splɔ:(r)/ 11
explosion /ɪk'spləʊʒn/ 39
express /ɪk'spres/ 2
expression /ɪk'spreʃn/ 3
expressway /eks'preweɪ/ 80
extend /ɪk'stend/ 73
extension /ɪk'stenʃn/ 73
extent *as in* to some / a certain extent /ɪk'stent/ 76
extinguish /ɪk'stɪŋgwɪʃ/ 75
extraordinary /ɪk'strɔ:dnri/ 42
extreme /ɪk'stri:m/ 13
eye *as in* keep an eye on /aɪ/ 77
eyebrows /'aɪbraʊz/ 5

fabric /'fæbrɪk/ 23
face (= do sth about) /feɪs/ 38
face (= look towards) /feɪs/ 70
face-to-face /ˌfeɪs tə 'feɪs/ 53
fact *as in* in fact /fækt/ 65, 76
fact *as in* in (actual) fact /fækt/ 76
factor /'fæktə(r)/ 57
fail /feɪl/ 56
faint /feɪnt/ 20
fair /feə(r)/ 69, 72
fairly /'feəli/ 76
faithfully *as in* yours faithfully /'feɪθfəli/ 78

www.hellooteacher.ir

fall /fɔ:l/ 13, 55
fall asleep /ˌfɔ:l əˈsli:p/ 19
fall out with /ˌfɔ:l ˈaʊt wɪð/ 8
famine /ˈfæmɪn/ 13
fan /fæn/ 42, 45
fancy (= find sb attractive) /ˈfænsi/ 59
fancy (= want sth) /ˈfænsi/ 77
far-fetched /ˌfɑ: ˈfetʃt/ 11
fascinating /ˈfæsɪneɪtɪŋ/ 47
fashionable /ˈfæʃnəbl/ 23, 73
fast asleep /ˌfɑ:st əˈsli:p/ 19
fasten /ˈfɑ:sn/ 72
fattening /ˈfætnɪŋ/ 17
fattish /ˈfætɪʃ/ 5
faucet /ˈfɔ:set/ 80
fault /fɔ:lt/ 63
faulty /ˈfɔ:lti/ 26
favour *as in* in favour of /ˈfeɪvə(r)/ 63
favourite /ˈfeɪvərɪt/ 46
fear N, V /fɪə(r)/ 14
feathers /ˈfeðəz/ 15
feature /ˈfi:tʃə(r)/ 30
fed up /ˌfed ˈʌp/ 7
fed up with /ˌfed ˈʌp wɪð/ 66
feedback /ˈfi:dbæk/ 51, 57
feel /fi:l/ 32
feel like (doing sth) /ˈfi:l ˌlaɪk/ 77
feelings *as in* mixed feelings /ˈfi:lɪŋz/ 69
fees /fi:z/ 50
female /ˈfi:meɪl/ 5, 15
fence /fens/ 31
fencing /ˈfensɪŋ/ 46
fennel /ˈfenl/ 16
festival /ˈfestɪvl/ 48
fetch /fetʃ/ 77
fiction /ˈfɪkʃn/ 47
fig /fɪg/ 16
fight N, V /faɪt/ 39
fighter /ˈfaɪtə(r)/ 39
figure /ˈfɪgə(r)/ 5, 23
filling /ˈfɪlɪŋ/ 24
film (for camera) /fɪlm/ 43
film (at cinema) /fɪlm/ 80
filthy /ˈfɪlθi/ 29
final /ˈfaɪnl/ 46
finance N /ˈfaɪnæns/ 52, 55
finance V /ˈfaɪnæns/ 55
financial /faɪˈnænʃl/ 55
find a solution /ˌfaɪnd ə səˈlu:ʃn/ 53
fine N, V /faɪn/ 36
fingerprints /ˈfɪŋgəprɪnts/ 36
fire N /ˈfaɪə(r)/ 67
fire V /ˈfaɪə(r)/ 53
fireworks /ˈfaɪəwɜ:ks/ 48
firm /fɜ:m/ 69
first *as in* at first /fɜ:st/ 71
fix /fɪks/ 26
fizzy drink /ˌfɪzi ˈdrɪŋk/ 17
flag /flæg/ 45
flash /flæʃ/ 43
flautist /ˈflɔ:tɪst/ 44
flavour /ˈfleɪvə(r)/ 32
flexibility /ˌfleksəˈbɪləti/ 50
flexible /ˈfleksəbl/ 50
float /fləʊt/ 12
flood /flʌd/ 12
flour /ˈflaʊə(r)/ 17
flow /fləʊ/ 12
flu /flu:/ 79
fluctuate /ˈflʌktʃʊeɪt/ 55
fluctuation /ˌflʌktʃʊˈeɪʃn/ 55
fluent /ˈflu:ənt/ 2
fluently /ˈflu:əntli/ 2
flute /flu:t/ 44
fly /flaɪ/ 15
focus N, V (= attention/attend) /ˈfəʊkəs/ 38
focus N, V (in photography) /ˈfəʊkəs/ 43
fold *as in* fold in half/two /fəʊld/ 34
follow instructions /ˌfɒləʊ ɪnˈstrʌkʃnz/ 49
fond /fɒnd/ 62
food scare /ˈfu:d ˌskeə(r)/ 41
footballer /ˈfʊtbɔ:lə(r)/ 45
for example /fər ɪgˈzɑ:mpl/ 3
for instance /fər ˈɪnstəns/ 3
for sure /fə ˈʃʊə(r)/ 61
forbid /fəˈbɪd/ 64
force /fɔ:s/ 64
forecast N, V /ˈfɔ:kɑ:st/ 58
foreground /ˈfɔ:graʊnd/ 33
foreign /ˈfɒrən/ 1
foreigner /ˈfɒrənə(r)/ 1
formal /ˈfɔ:ml/ 1
fortune *as in* cost a fortune /ˈfɔ:tʃu:n/ 18
forward(s) /ˈfɔ:wəd(z)/ 20
foster parent /ˈfɒstə ˌpeərənt/ 9
found /faʊnd/ 57
founder /ˈfaʊndə(r)/ 57
frame /freɪm/ 43
free /fri:/ 61
freedom /ˈfri:dəm/ 50
freeway /ˈfri:weɪ/ 80
French fries /ˌfrentʃ ˈfraɪz/ 80
fridge /frɪdʒ/ 79
friends *as in* make friends /frendz/ 8
friendly /ˈfrendli/ 8
friendship /ˈfrendʃɪp/ 8
fringe /frɪndʒ/ 28
frog /frɒg/ 15
from time to time /frəm ˌtaɪm tə ˈtaɪm/ 70
front /frʌnt/ 70
frost /frɒst/ 13
frosty /ˈfrɒsti/ 13
frustrating /frʌˈstreɪtɪŋ/ 2
frustration /frʌˈstreɪʃn/ 2
fry /fraɪ/ 17
frying pan /ˈfraɪɪŋ ˌpæn/ 17
full stop /ˌfʊl ˈstɒp/ 4
funeral /ˈfju:nərəl/ 10
fur /fɜ:(r)/ 15
furious /ˈfjʊəriəs/ 7
further /ˈfɜ:ðə(r)/ 78
further to /ˈfɜ:ðə tə/ 78
furthermore /ˌfɜ:ðəˈmɔ:(r)/ 68

g (gram(s)) /græm(z)/ 79
gm (gram(s)) /græm(z)/ 79
gain /geɪn/ 11, 56, 40
gale /geɪl/ 13
gap in the market /ˌgæp ɪn ðə ˈmɑ:kɪt/ 57
garbage /ˈgɑ:bɪdʒ/ 80
garbage can /ˈgɑ:bɪdʒ ˌkæn/ 80
gas (= e.g. oxygen) /gæs/ 13
gas (= gasoline) /gæs/ 80
gasoline /ˈgæsəli:n/ 80
gather /ˈgæðə(r)/ 58
gear lever /ˈgɪə ˌli:və(r)/ 21
gear stick /ˈgɪə ˌstɪk/ 21
general *as in* in general /ˈdʒenrəl/ 71
generally /ˈdʒenrəli/ 71, 76
generation /ˌdʒenəˈreɪʃn/ 9
generosity /ˌdʒenəˈrɒsəti/ 6
generous /ˈdʒenərəs/ 6
gentle /ˈdʒentl/ 73
gentleness /ˈdʒentlnəs/ 73
get (= fetch) /get/ 77
get (= receive) /get/ 36, 42
get better /ˌget ˈbetə(r)/ 2
get divorced / a divorce /ˌget dɪˈvɔ:st, ə dɪˈvɔ:s/ 9
get dressed /ˌget ˈdrest/ 72
get held up /ˌget ˌheld ˈʌp/ 22
get in /ˌget ˈɪn/ 22

www.hellooteacher.ir

get on /ˌget 'ɒn/ 75
get on with /ˌget 'ɒn ˌwɪð/ 75
get on sb's nerves
/ˌget ˌɒn ˌ... 'nɜ:vz/ 66
get over /ˌget 'əʊvə(r)/ 25, 75
get rid of /ˌget 'rɪd əv/ 71
get sth done /ˌget ˌ... 'dʌn/ 28
get stuck /ˌget 'stʌk/ 22
get the sack /ˌget ðə 'sæk/ 53
get through /ˌget 'θru:/ 75
get time off /ˌget ˌtaɪm 'ɒf/ 54
get to know /ˌget tə 'nəʊ/ 8
get to like /ˌget tə 'laɪk/ 62
get together /ˌget tə'geðə(r)/ 8, 61
get undressed
/ˌget ʌn'drest/ 72
gift /gɪft/ 47
gist /ʤɪst/ 1
give it a trim
/ˌgɪv ɪt ə 'trɪm/ 28
give sb a hand
/ˌgɪv ˌ... ə 'hænd/ 77
give sb advice
/ˌgɪv ˌ... əd'vaɪs/ 51
give sb feedback
/ˌgɪv ˌ... 'fi:dbæk/ 51
give sb the sack
/ˌgɪv ˌ... ðə 'sæk/ 53
give sth away
/ˌgɪv ˌ... ə'weɪ/ 75
give sth out /ˌgɪv ˌ... 'aʊt/ 75
give up /ˌgɪv 'ʌp/ 39, 75
glad /glæd/ 69
glance /glɑ:ns/ 32
global warming
/ˌgləʊbl 'wɔ:mɪŋ/ 13
glue /glu:/ 26
go *as in* to go /gəʊ/ 70
go bald /ˌgəʊ 'bɔ:ld/ 5
go blind /ˌgəʊ 'blaɪnd/ 37
go deaf /ˌgəʊ 'def/ 37
go down /ˌgəʊ 'daʊn/ 55, 75
go grey /ˌgəʊ 'greɪ/ 5
go into hospital
/ˌgəʊ ˌɪntə 'hɒspɪtl/ 25
go off (= ring) /ˌgəʊ 'ɒf/ 19
go off (= explode) /ˌgəʊ 'ɒf/ 39
go on (with sth) /ˌgəʊ 'ɒn/ 75
go on a diet
/ˌgəʊ ˌɒn ə 'daɪət/ 17
go on strike
/ˌgəʊ ˌɒn 'straɪk/ 54
go out of business
/ˌgəʊ ˌaʊt əv 'bɪznəs/ 56
go out with /ˌgəʊ 'aʊt wɪð/ 8
go over /ˌgəʊ 'əʊvə(r)/ 75
go smoothly /ˌgəʊ 'smu:ðli/ 65
go through /ˌgəʊ 'θru:/ 1
go to court /ˌgəʊ tə 'kɔ:t/ 36
go to hospital
/ˌgəʊ tə 'hɒspɪtl/ 25
go to jail /ˌgəʊ tə 'ʤeɪl/ 35
go to prison /ˌgəʊ tə 'prɪzn/ 35
go to sleep /ˌgəʊ tə 'sli:p/ 19
go up /ˌgəʊ 'ʌp/ 55, 75
go white /ˌgəʊ 'waɪt/ 5
go wrong /ˌgəʊ 'rɒŋ/ 8, 65
goal /gəʊl/ 2, 38, 58
goat /gəʊt/ 15
gold /gəʊld/ 31
golfer /'gɒlfə(r)/ 45
good chance /'gʊd ˌʧɑ:ns/ 59
good for you /'gʊd fə ˌju:/ 17
goods /gʊdz/ 56
gorilla /gə'rɪlə/ 15
govern /'gʌvn/ 38
government /'gʌvnmənt/ 38
grab /græb/ 32
gradual /'grædʒuəl/ 13, 55
gradually /'grædʒuəli/ 13, 55
graduate N /'grædʒjuət/ 50
graduate V /'grædʒjueɪt/ 50
graffiti /grə'fi:ti/ 29
gram /græm/ 79
grand /grænd/ 69
grapefruit /'greɪpfru:t/ 16
grateful *as in* I would be
grateful if ... /'greɪtfl/ 78
grave /greɪv/ 10
gravestone /'greɪvstəʊn/ 10
grease /gri:s/ 27
greasy /'gri:si/ 27
greedy /'gri:di/ 60
gripping /'grɪpɪŋ/ 42
groom /gru:m/ 10
ground (= earth's surface)
/graʊnd/ 14
ground (= sports area)
/graʊnd/ 45
group /gru:p/ 44
grow /grəʊ/ 55, 56
growth /grəʊθ/ 29, 55, 56
guarantee /gærən'ti:/ 66
guess N, V /ges/ 1
guess *as in* I guess so /ges/ 65
guest /gest/ 10
guilty /'gɪlti/ 36
guitar /gɪ'tɑ:(r)/ 44
guitarist /gɪ'tɑ:rɪst/ 44
gun /gʌn/ 39
gun battle /'gʌn ˌbætl/ 39
gym /ʤɪm/ 79
gymnast /'ʤɪmnæst/ 45
gymnastics /ʤɪm'næstɪks/ 45, 46

habit /'hæbɪt/ 19
hair *as in* lose your hair
/heə(r)/ 5
haircut /'heəkʌt/ 28
hairdryer /'heədraɪə(r)/ 28
hairstyle /'heəstaɪl/ 28
half *as in* fold in half /hɑ:f/ 34
half a dozen /ˌhɑ:f ə 'dʌzn/ 39
half-brother /'hɑ:f ˌbrʌðə(r)/ 9
half-sister /'hɑ:f ˌsɪstə(r)/ 9
hall /hɔ:l/ 30
hall of residence
/ˌhɔ:l əv 'rezɪdəns/ 50
hammer /'hæmə(r)/ 26
hand *as in* left-hand corner, right-hand side /hænd/ 33
hand *as in* lend sb a hand
/hænd/ 77
hand *as in* on the one/other hand /hænd/ 68
hand in your notice
/ˌhænd ˌɪn ˌjɔ: 'nəʊtɪs/ 53
hand sth out
/ˌhænd ˌ... 'aʊt/ 75
handcuffs /'hændkʌfs/ 36
handle *as in* door handle
/'hændl/ 21
handle V /'hændl/ 53
handy /'hændi/ 29
hang on /ˌhæŋ 'ɒn/ 77
happy /'hæpi/ 66
harbour /'hɑ:bə(r)/ 12
hardback /'hɑ:dbæk/ 47
hard-working
/ˌhɑ:d 'wɜ:kɪŋ/ 6
harm N, V /hɑ:m/ 15
harm V /hɑ:m/ 13
harmful /'hɑ:mfl/ 13, 15, 73
harmless /'hɑ:mləs/ 15, 73
have a chat /ˌhæv ə 'ʧæt/ 1
have a debate
/ˌhæv ə dɪ'beɪt/ 50
have a haircut
/ˌhæv ə 'heəkʌt/ 28
have a lie-in
/ˌhæv ə 'laɪ ˌɪn/ 19
have a lot in common
/ˌhæv ə ˌlɒt ˌɪn 'kɒmən/ 8
have a nap /ˌhæv ə 'næp/ 19

www.hellooteacher.ir

have a restless night
/ˌhæv ə ˌrestləs 'naɪt/ 19
have a row /ˌhæv ə 'raʊ/ 8
have a stroke
/ˌhæv ə 'strəʊk/ 37
have an operation
/ˌhæv ən ˌɒpə'reɪʃn/ 25
have fun /ˌhæv 'fʌn/ 48
have no choice
/ˌhæv ˌnəʊ 'ʧɔɪs/ 64
have no intention of doing sth
/ˌhæv 'nəʊ ɪnˌtenʃn əv ˌ.../ 65
have nothing in common
/ˌhæv ˌnʌθɪŋ ɪn 'kɒmən/ 8
have sth done
/ˌhæv ˌ... 'dʌn/ 28
have the right to
/ˌhæv ðə 'raɪt tə/ 54
have time off
/ˌhæv ˌtaɪm 'ɒf/ 54
have toothache
/ˌhæv 'tu:θeɪk/ 24
have your back to sth
/ˌhæv ˌjɔ: 'bæk tə ˌ.../ 70
headlights /'hedlaɪts/ 21
headline /'hedlaɪn/ 41
heal /hi:l/ 20
heal up /ˌhi:l 'ʌp/ 20
health scare /'helθ ˌskeə(r)/ 41
healthy /'helθi/ 17
hear /hɪə(r)/ 32
hear from sb /'hɪə frəm ˌ.../ 78
heart /hɑ:t/ 37
heart attack /'hɑ:t əˌtæk/ 37
heart disease /'hɑ:t dɪˌzi:z/ 37
heartbroken /'hɑ:tbrəʊkən/ 7
heatwave /'hi:tweɪv/ 13
heavy sleeper
/ˌhevi 'sli:pə(r)/ 19
heavy traffic /ˌhevi 'træfɪk/ 22
held up /ˌheld 'ʌp/ 22
helmet *as in* safety helmet
/'helmɪt/ 57
herbs /hɜ:bz/ 16
herd /hɜ:d/ 15
hesitate /'hezɪteɪt/ 78
hi /haɪ/ 77
hide your feelings
/ˌhaɪd ˌjɔ: 'fi:lɪŋz/ 7
high-heeled /ˌhaɪ 'hi:ld/ 23
high school /'haɪ ˌsku:l/ 80
high tide /ˌhaɪ 'taɪd/ 12
highly /'haɪli/ 76
highway /'haɪweɪ/ 80
hire a car /ˌhaɪər ə 'kɑ:(r)/ 22
hit /hɪt/ 14
hold an election
/ˌhəʊld ən ɪ'lekʃn/ 38
hold on /ˌhəʊld 'ɒn/ 77
hold the record
/ˌhəʊld ðə 'rekɔ:d/ 46
hole /həʊl/ 26
home *as in* at home /həʊm/ 50
homesick /'həʊmsɪk/ 50
honest /'ɒnɪst/ 6
honesty /'ɒnəsti/ 6
honeymoon /'hʌnimu:n/ 10
hoover /'hu:və(r)/ 27
hope /həʊp/ 65
hope *as in* I hope so/not
/həʊp/ 65
horizon /hə'raɪzən/ 12
horizontal /ˌhɒrɪ'zɒntl/ 31
hospital /'hɒspɪtl/ 25
horn /hɔ:n/ 21
horns /hɔ:nz/ 15
horse /hɔ:s/ 15
hour *as in* rush hour
/'aʊə(r)/ 22
how about? /'haʊ əˌbaʊt/ 61
how are things?
/'haʊ ə ˌθɪŋz/ 77
how do you feel about ...?
/'haʊ də ˌju: ˌfi:l əˌbaʊt '.../ 63
however /haʊ'evə(r)/ 68
how's it going?
/ˌhaʊz ɪt 'gəʊɪŋ/ 77
huge /hju:ʤ/ 18, 30
human /'hju:mən/ 13
humid /'hju:mɪd/ 13
humorous /'hju:mərəs/ 73
humour *as in* sense of humour /'hju:mə(r)/ 6
hunt /hʌnt/ 15
hurricane /'hʌrɪkən/ 14
hurry /'hʌri/ 29
hurry *as in* in a hurry
/'hʌri/ 71
hurry up /ˌhʌri 'ʌp/ 77
hurt sb's feelings
/ˌhɜ:t ˌ... 'fi:lɪŋz/ 7
husband /'hʌzbənd/ 10
hyphen /'haɪfən/ 4

ID card (identity card)
/ˌaɪ 'di: ˌkɑ:d/ 79
ISP (internet service provider)
/ˌaɪ ˌes 'pi:/ 79
IT (information technology)
/ˌaɪ 'ti:/ 79
i.e. /ˌaɪ 'i:/ 52
I assume so
/ˌaɪ ə'sju:m ˌsəʊ/ 65
I'd better be off
/ˌaɪd ˌbetə bi 'ɒf/ 77
I don't think so
/ˌaɪ ˌdəʊnt 'θɪŋk ˌsəʊ/ 65
I doubt it /ˌaɪ 'daʊt ˌɪt/ 65
I expect so
/ˌaɪ ɪk'spekt ˌsəʊ/ 65
I guess so /ˌaɪ 'ges ˌsəʊ/ 65
I haven't a clue
/ˌaɪ ˌhævnt ə 'klu:/ 77
I hope not /ˌaɪ 'həʊp ˌnɒt/ 65
I hope so /ˌaɪ 'həʊp ˌsəʊ/ 65
I imagine so
/ˌaɪ ɪ'mæʤɪn ˌsəʊ/ 65
I suppose so
/ˌaɪ sə'pəʊz ˌsəʊ/ 65
I think so /ˌaɪ 'θɪŋk ˌsəʊ/ 65
I think ... /ˌaɪ 'θɪŋk/ 63
I think that ...
/ˌaɪ 'θɪŋk ðət/ 63
I would appreciate it if ...
/ˌaɪ ˌwʊd ə'pri:ʃieɪt ɪt ˌɪf/ 78
I would be grateful if ...
/ˌaɪ ˌwʊd ˌbi 'greɪtfl ˌɪf/ 78
ideal /aɪ'di:əl/ 29
identical /aɪ'dentɪkl/ 60
identify /aɪ'dentɪfaɪ/ 1
identity /aɪ'dentəti/ 79
idiom /'ɪdiəm/ 3, 77
idiomatic /ˌɪdiə'mætɪk/ 77
if you ask me ....
/ˌɪf ˌju: ˌɑ:sk 'mi:/ 63
ignition /ɪg'nɪʃn/ 21
ignore /ɪg'nɔ:(r)/ 33, 58
illegal /ɪ'li:gl/ 35
illegible /ɪ'leʤəbl/ 72
illuminate /ɪ'lu:mɪneɪt/ 48
illustrate /'ɪləstreɪt/ 33
illustration /ˌɪlə'streɪʃn/ 33
I'm afraid ... /ˌaɪm ə'freɪd/ 61
I'm afraid not
/ˌaɪm əˌfreɪd 'nɒt/ 65
I'm afraid so
/ˌaɪm əˌfreɪd 'səʊ/ 65
I'm meant to
/ˌaɪm 'ment tə/ 61
I'm not bothered
/ˌaɪm ˌnɒt 'bɒðəd/ 66
I'm supposed to
/ˌaɪm sə'pəʊst tə/ 61
imagine /ɪ'mæʤɪn/ 65, 74
imagine *as in* I imagine so
/ɪ'mæʤɪn/ 65

www.hellooteacher.ir

immediately /ɪ'mi:diətli/ 25
immigrant /'ɪmɪgrənt/ 9, 38
immigration /ˌɪmɪ'greɪʃn/ 38
immoral /ɪ'mɒrəl/ 72
impatient /ɪm'peɪʃnt/ 6
impressed /ɪm'prest/ 69
impressive /ɪm'presɪv/ 30
improve /ɪm'pru:v/ 2
improvement /ɪm'pru:vmənt/ 2
in a bad mood /ˌɪn ə ˌbæd 'mu:d/ 7
in a deep sleep /ˌɪn ə ˌdi:p 'sli:p/ 19
in a good mood /ˌɪn ə ˌgʊd 'mu:d/ 7
in a hurry /ˌɪn ə 'hʌri/ 71
in a relationship /ˌɪn ə rɪ'leɪʃnʃɪp/ 8
in a rush /ˌɪn ə 'rʌʃ/ 71
in actual fact /ˌɪn ˌæktʃuəl 'fækt/ 76
in addition /ˌɪn ə'dɪʃn/ 68
in advance /ˌɪn əd'vɑ:ns/ 71
in bad shape /ˌɪn ˌbæd 'ʃeɪp/ 5
in case /ˌɪn 'keɪs/ 67, 68
in charge of /ˌɪn 'tʃɑ:dʒ əv/ 53, 71
in comparison with /ˌɪn kəm'pærɪsən wɪð/ 60
in control /ˌɪn kən'trəʊl/ 39
in detail /ˌɪn 'di:teɪl/ 2
in fact /ˌɪn 'fækt/ 65, 76
in favour of /ˌɪn 'feɪvər əv/ 63, 71
in focus /ˌɪn 'fəʊkəs/ 43
in general /ˌɪn 'dʒenrəl/ 71
in good shape /ˌɪn ˌgʊd 'ʃeɪp/ 5
in mourning /ˌɪn 'mɔ:nɪŋ/ 10
in my opinion /ˌɪn 'maɪ ə,pɪnjən/ 63
in other words /ˌɪn 'ʌðə ˌwɜ:dz/ 11
in particular /ˌɪn pə'tɪkjələ(r)/ 78
in person /ˌɪn 'pɜ:sn/ 66
in power /ˌɪn 'paʊə(r)/ 38
in principle /ˌɪn 'prɪnsəpl/ 63
in private /ˌɪn 'praɪvət/ 71
in public /ˌɪn 'pʌblɪk/ 71
in spite of /ˌɪn 'spaɪt əv/ 68
in the centre /ˌɪn ðə 'sentə(r)/ 33
in the distance /ˌɪn ðə 'dɪstəns/ 33
in the end /ˌɪn ði 'end/ 71
in the meantime /ˌɪn ðə 'mi:ntaɪm/ 70
in theory /ˌɪn 'θɪəri/ 63
in time /ˌɪn 'taɪm/ 50
in writing /ˌɪn 'raɪtɪŋ/ 66
inadequate /ɪn'ædɪkwət/ 56, 69
inappropriate /ˌɪnə'prəʊpriət/ 2
include /ɪn'klu:d/ 2
income /'ɪnkʌm/ 18
increase N /'ɪŋkri:s/ 37
increase V /ɪn'kri:s/ 37, 55, 58, 63
incredible /ɪn'kredəbl/ 42
indeed /ɪn'di:d/ 42
independence /ˌɪndɪ'pendəns/ 40
independent /ˌɪndɪ'pendənt/ 40
individual /ˌɪndɪ'vɪdʒuəl/ 42
industrial /ɪn'dʌstriəl/ 33
industry /'ɪndəstri/ 33
ineffective /ˌɪnɪ'fektɪv/ 69
inefficient /ˌɪnɪ'fɪʃnt/ 69
infection /ɪn'fekʃn/ 20
infectious /ɪn'fekʃəs/ 37
inflation /ɪn'fleɪʃn/ 55
influence N, V /'ɪnfluəns/ 44
influenza /ˌɪnflu'enzə/ 79
informal /ɪn'fɔ:ml/ 1
information technology /ɪnfə,meɪʃn tek'nɒlədʒi/ 79
ingredients /ɪn'gri:diənts/ 17
inherit /ɪn'herɪt/ 10
inheritance /ɪn'herɪtəns/ 10
injure /'ɪndʒə(r)/ 20
injured /'ɪndʒəd/ 22
injury /'ɪndʒəri/ 20
inner city /ˌɪnə 'sɪti/ 29
innocent /'ɪnəsnt/ 36
innovate /'ɪnəveɪt/ 57
innovation /ˌɪnə'veɪʃn/ 57
innovative /'ɪnəvətɪv/ 57
insect /'ɪnsekt/ 15
insecure /ɪnsɪ'kjʊə(r)/ 6, 72
insensitive /ɪn'sensətɪv/ 7
insist /ɪn'sɪst/ 71, 64
insomnia /ɪn'sɒmniə/ 19
install /ɪn'stɔ:l/ 52
instance *as in* for instance /'ɪnstəns/ 3
instead /ɪn'sted/ 4, 61
instructions /ɪn'strʌkʃnz/ 49
instrument *as in* musical instrument /'ɪnstrəmənt/ 44
intend /ɪn'tend/ 65, 74
intention /ɪn'tenʃn/ 65
interest /'ɪntrəst/ 55
interest rate /'ɪntrəst ˌreɪt/ 55
international /ˌɪntə'næʃnəl/ 41
internet service provider /ˌɪntənet 'sɜ:vɪs prə,vaɪdə(r)/ 79
interpret /ɪn'tɜ:prɪt/ 73
interpretation /ɪn,tɜ:prɪ'teɪʃn/ 73
interrupt /ˌɪntə'rʌpt/ 4, 45
interstate /'ɪntəsteɪt/ 80
interview N, V /'ɪntəvju:/ 51
interviewer /'ɪntəvju:ə(r)/ 51
intolerant /ɪn'tɒlərənt/ 6
introduce /ˌɪntrə'dju:s/ 74
invade /ɪn'veɪd/ 40
invasion /ɪn'veɪʒn/ 40
invent /ɪn'vent/ 11
invention /ɪn'venʃn/ 11
invest /ɪn'vest/ 57
investigate /ɪn'vestɪgeɪt/ 36
investment /ɪn'vestmənt/ 57
invigilator /ɪn'vɪdʒɪleɪtə(r)/ 49
involve /ɪn'vɒlv/ 53
involved /ɪn'vɒlvd/ 39
involved in /ɪn'vɒlvd ɪn/ 71
iron /'aɪən/ 31
irrelevant /ɪ'reləvənt/ 2, 72
irresponsible /ˌɪrɪ'spɒnsəbl/ 6
irritable /'ɪrɪtəbl/ 19
-ish /ɪʃ/ 5
issue /'ɪʃu:/ 63
it seems to me /ɪt ˌsi:mz tə 'mi:/ 63
item /'aɪtəm/ 49
it's up to me /ˌɪts ˌʌp tə 'mi:/ 64

jail /dʒeɪl/ 35
jam *as in* traffic jam /dʒæm/ 22
jealous /'dʒeləs/ 7
jewellery /'dʒu:əlri/ 23
job /dʒɒb/ 52
join a class /ˌdʒɔɪn ə 'klɑ:s/ 66
join (= put together) /dʒɔɪn/ 4
joke /dʒəʊk/ 77
joking *as in* you must be joking, you're joking /'dʒəʊkɪŋ/ 77
journalism /'dʒɜ:nəlɪzəm/ 41
journalist /'dʒɜ:nəlɪst/ 41
judge N /dʒʌdʒ/ 36

www.hellooteacher.ir

judge v /dʒʌdʒ/ 73
judgement /'dʒʌdʒmənt/ 73
junk food /'dʒʌŋk ˌfu:d/ 17
jury /'dʒʊəri/ 36
just /dʒʌst/ 33

kg (kilo(s)/kilogram(s))
/'ki:ləʊ(z), 'kɪləgræm(z)/ 79
km (kilometre(s))
/'kɪləmi:tə(z)/ 79
kph (kilometres per hour)
/ˌkɪləmi:təz pər 'aʊə(r)/ 79
keen *as in* be keen on /ki:n/ 62
keep /ki:p/ 21, 28
keep a record of
/ˌki:p ə 'rekɔ:d əv/ 1
keep ahead of
/ˌki:p ə'hed əv/ 57
keep an eye on
/ˌki:p ən 'aɪ ˌɒn/ 77
keep calm /ˌki:p 'kɑ:m/ 66
keep in touch /ˌki:p ɪn 'tʌtʃ/ 8
keep sth up /ˌki:p ˌ... 'ʌp/ 17
keep your temper
/ˌki:p ˌjɔ: 'tempə(r)/ 66
key /ki:/ 57
keyboard /'ki:bɔ:d/ 44
keyboard player
/'ki:bɔ:d ˌpleɪə(r)/ 44
kid /kɪd/ 77
kidney /'kɪdni/ 16
kill /kɪl/ 35
kilogram /'kɪləgræm/ 79
kilometre /'kɪləmi:tə(r)/ 79
kilometres per hour
/ˌkɪləmi:təz pər 'aʊə(r)/ 79
kind /kaɪnd/ 73
kind regards
/'kaɪnd rɪˌgɑ:dz/ 78
kindness /'kaɪndnəs/ 73
king /kɪŋ/ 9
knickers /'nɪkəz/ 23
knock /nɒk/ 34
knowledge /'nɒlɪdʒ/ 11

l (litre(s)) /'li:tə(z)/ 79
lab /læb/ 79
laboratory /lə'bɒrətri/ 79
lack /læk/ 19
ladder /'lædə(r)/ 31
lake /leɪk/ 12
land /lænd/ 52
landscape /'lændskeɪp/ 43
lane /leɪn/ 22
lap /læp/ 45
largely /'lɑ:dʒli/ 76
last /lɑ:st/ 70
lately /'leɪtli/ 77
latest /'leɪtɪst/ 23
launch /lɔ:ntʃ/ 38
laughing *as in* burst out laughing /'lɑ:fɪŋ/ 34
lava /'lɑ:və/ 14
law /lɔ:/ 35
lawn /lɔ:n/ 30
lazy /'leɪzi/ 6
lead /li:d/ 30
lead singer /ˌli:d 'sɪŋə(r)/ 44
lead to /'li:d tə/ 37
leader /'li:də(r)/ 39
leader *as in* market leader
/'li:də(r)/ 56
leading role /'li:dɪŋ ˌrəʊl/ 42
leaf /li:f/ 34
leak n, v /li:k/ 26
least *as in* at least /li:st/ 71
leather /'leðə(r)/ 23
leave out /ˌli:v 'aʊt/ 4, 75
leaves /li:vz/ 34
lecture /'lektʃə(r)/ 50
lecturer /'lektʃərə(r)/ 50
leek /li:k/ 16
left-hand /'left ˌhænd/ 33
legal /'li:gl/ 35
legible /'ledʒɪbl/ 72
leisure /'leʒə(r)/ 33
lend sb a hand
/ˌlend ˌ... ə 'hænd/ 77
length /leŋθ/ 45
lens *as in* zoom lens /lenz/ 43
lenses *as in* contact lenses
/'lenzɪz/ 5
leopard /'lepəd/ 15
let /let/ 28, 64
letter *as in* capital letter
/letə(r)/ 4
letter box /'letə ˌbɒks/ 31
lid /lɪd/ 34
life expectancy
/'laɪf ɪkˌspektənsi/ 15
lifeboat /'laɪfbəʊt/ 57
lifespan /'laɪfspæn/ 15
light bulb /'laɪt ˌbʌlb/ 26
light-skinned /ˌlaɪt 'skɪnd/ 5
light sleeper /ˌlaɪt 'sli:pə(r)/ 19
light sth up /ˌlaɪt ˌ... 'ʌp/ 48
like (= similar to) /laɪk/ 32
like (= such as) /laɪk/ 4, 32
likely to /'laɪkli tə/ 59
limit *as in* speed limit
/'lɪmɪt/ 21
limited /'lɪmɪtɪd/ 58
linesman /'laɪnzmən/ 45
lion /'laɪən/ 15
liquid /'lɪkwɪd/ 13
list /lɪst/ 4
listen /'lɪsn/ 32
litre /'li:tə(r)/ 79
litter /'lɪtə(r)/ 29
live /laɪv/ 44
lively /'laɪvli/ 29
liver /'lɪvə(r)/ 16
living /'lɪvɪŋ/ 44
loads /ləʊdz/ 77
load sth up /ˌləʊd ˌ... 'ʌp/ 72
loan /ləʊn/ 50
loathe /ləʊð/ 62
lobster /'lɒbstə(r)/ 16
local /'ləʊkl/ 29
lock /lɒk/ 72
log *as in* sleep like a log
/lɒg/ 19
long /lɒŋ/ 45
long *as in* as long as /lɒŋ/ 68
look /lʊk/ 32
look after /ˌlʊk 'ɑ:ftə(r)/ 71
look forward to
/ˌlʊk 'fɔ:wəd tə/ 24, 65, 78
look like /'lʊk ˌlaɪk/ 9
look out /ˌlʊk 'aʊt/ 67
look through /'lʊk ˌθru:/ 47
loosen /'lu:sn/ 26
lose /lu:z/ 56
lose weight /ˌlu:z 'weɪt/ 17
lose your hair
/ˌlu:z ˌjɔ: 'heə(r)/ 5
lose your sight
/ˌlu:z ˌjɔ: 'saɪt/ 37
lose your temper
/ˌlu:z ˌjɔ: 'tempə(r)/ 66
loss /lɒs/ 55
loud /laʊd/ 34
love /lʌv/ 78
love from /'lʌv frəm/ 78
low tide /ˌləʊ 'taɪd/ 12
loyal /'lɔɪəl/ 8, 72
lungs /lʌŋz/ 37
lyrics /'lɪrɪks/ 44

ml (millilitre(s))
/'mɪlili:tə(z)/ 79
mm (millimetre(s))
/'mɪlimi:tə(z)/ 79
MP (Member of Parliament)
/ˌem 'pi:/ 38
mph (miles per hour)
/ˌmaɪlz pər 'aʊə(r)/ 79
mad /mæd/ 6

www.hellooteacher.ir

mad about (= liking very much) /ˈmæd əˌbaʊt/ 62
Madam /ˈmædəm/ 78
main difference /ˌmeɪn ˈdɪfrəns/ 60
main road /ˌmeɪn ˈrəʊd/ 80
mainly /ˈmeɪnli/ 76
maintain /meɪnˈteɪn/ 14
majority /məˈʤɒrəti/ 38
make *as in* can you make it? /meɪk/ 61
make (= perform an action) /meɪk/ 1, 10, 65
make a claim /ˌmeɪk ə ˈkleɪm/ 66
make a complaint /ˌmeɪk ə kəmˈpleɪnt/ 53, 66
make a note /ˌmeɪk ə ˈnəʊt/ 1
make a profit /ˌmeɪk ə ˈprɒfɪt/ 55
make a promise /ˌmeɪk ə ˈprɒmɪs/ 41
make a speech /ˌmeɪk ə ˈspiːʧ/ 10
make an appointment /ˌmeɪk ən əˈpɔɪntmənt/ 24
make an enquiry /ˌmeɪk ən ɪnˈkwaɪəri/ 53
make arrangements /ˌmeɪk əˈreɪnʤmənts/ 52
make friends /ˌmeɪk ˈfrendz/ 8
make mistakes /ˌmeɪk mɪˈsteɪks/ 1
make plans /ˌmeɪk ˈplænz/ 65
make progress /ˌmeɪk ˈprəʊgres/ 2
make sb do sth /ˌmeɪk ˌ... ˈduː ˌ.../ 64
make sb redundant /ˌmeɪk ˌ... rɪˈdʌndənt/ 53
make sth up /ˌmeɪk ˌ... ˈʌp/ 75
make sure /ˌmeɪk ˈʃʊə(r)/ 53, 66
make the most of /ˌmeɪk ðə ˈməʊst əv/ 71
male /meɪl/ 5, 15
mall /mɔːl, mæl/ 80
manage /ˈmænɪʤ/ 50, 52, 71, 74
management /ˈmænɪʤmənt/ 52
manager /ˈmænɪʤə(r)/ 45
manual /ˈmænjuəl/ 47
manufacture /ˌmænjuˈfækʧə(r)/ 52, 57
manufacturer /ˌmænjuˈfækʧərə(r)/ 57
manufacturing /ˌmænjuˈfækʧərɪŋ/ 52
mark *as in* exclamation/ question mark /mɑːk/ 4
market *as in* target market /ˈmɑːkɪt/ 58
market leader /ˌmɑːkɪt ˈliːdə(r)/ 56
market research /ˌmɑːkɪt rɪˈsɜːʧ, ˈriːsɜːʧ/ 56
marketing /ˈmɑːkətɪŋ/ 58
marks *as in* quotation marks /mɑːks/ 4
marriage /ˈmærɪʤ/ 10
mash /mæʃ/ 17
massive /ˈmæsɪv/ 18
masterpiece /ˈmɑːstəpiːs/ 43
match /mæʧ/ 23
mate /meɪt/ 77
material /məˈtɪərɪəl/ 23
mature /məˈʧʊə(r)/ 63
maximum /ˈmæksɪməm/ 45
may /meɪ/ 36, 59
mean /miːn/ 6
mean a lot /ˌmiːn ə ˈlɒt/ 48
meant *as in* be meant to /ment/ 22, 61
meantime *as in* in the meantime /ˈmiːntaɪm/ 70
meanwhile /ˈmiːnwaɪl/ 70
measure /ˈmeʒə(r)/ 73
measurement /ˈmeʒəmənt/ 73
mechanic /məˈkænɪk/ 52
medal /ˈmedl/ 31, 46
melody /ˈmelədi/ 44
melt /melt/ 13
member /ˈmembə(r)/ 9
Member of Parliament /ˌmembər əv ˈpɑːləmənt/ 38
member of the public /ˌmembər əv ðə ˈpʌblɪk/ 53
memory loss /ˈmeməri ˌlɒs/ 37
mend /mend/ 26
mention /ˈmenʃn/ 66
metal /ˈmetl/ 31
method /ˈmeθəd/ 1
metric /ˈmetrɪk/ 79
metric capacity /ˌmetrɪk kəˈpæsəti/ 79
metric length /ˌmetrɪk ˈleŋθ/ 79
metric weight /ˌmetrɪk ˈweɪt/ 79
mice /maɪs/ 15
middle /ˈmɪdl/ 33
might /maɪt/ 36, 59
mild /maɪld/ 13
miles per hour /ˌmaɪlz pər ˈaʊə(r)/ 79
millilitre /ˈmɪlɪliːtə(r)/ 79
millimetre /ˈmɪlɪmiːtə(r)/ 79
military /ˈmɪlətri/ 52
minced /mɪnst/ 17
mind /maɪnd/ 74
mind *as in* on your mind /maɪnd/ 19
mind your head /ˌmaɪnd ˌjɔː ˈhed/ 67
minimum /ˈmɪnɪməm/ 45
minor /ˈmaɪnə(r)/ 35
minority /maɪˈnɒrəti/ 38
mint /mɪnt/ 16
mirror *as in* rear-view / wing mirror /ˈmɪrə(r)/ 21
miserable /ˈmɪzrəbl/ 7
mist /mɪst/ 13
mistake *as in* make mistakes /mɪˈsteɪk/ 1
misty /ˈmɪsti/ 13
mixed feelings /ˌmɪkst ˈfiːlɪŋz/ 69
moan N, V /məʊn/ 66
modern /ˈmɒdn/ 69
modest /ˈmɒdɪst/ 6
money /ˈmʌni/ 79
monkey /ˈmʌŋki/ 15
mood /muːd/ 7
moody /ˈmuːdi/ 7
moon /muːn/ 11
mop /mɒp/ 27
moral /ˈmɒrəl/ 72
moreover /mɔːrˈəʊvə(r)/ 68
mosquito /məˈskiːtəʊ/ 15
most *as in* make the most of /məʊst/ 71
motivated /ˈməʊtɪveɪtɪd/ 2
motivation /ˌməʊtɪˈveɪʃn/ 2
motorbike /ˈməʊtəbaɪk/ 79
motorway /ˈməʊtəweɪ/ 80
mourners /ˈmɔːnəz/ 10
mourning *as in* in mourning /ˈmɔːnɪŋ/ 10
mouse /maʊs/ 15
movie /ˈmuːvi/ 42, 80
movie theater /ˈmuːvi ˌθɪətə(r)/ 80
moving /ˈmuːvɪŋ/ 42
mud /mʌd/ 27
muddy /ˈmʌdi/ 27
mug /mʌg/ 35
mugger /ˈmʌgə(r)/ 35
mugging /ˈmʌgɪŋ/ 35

www.hellooteacher.ir

muggy /'mʌgi/ 13
multi-storey car park /ˌmʌlti ˌstɔ:ri 'kɑ: ˌpɑ:k/ 29
murder N, V /'mɜ:də(r)/ 35
murderer /'mɜ:dərə(r)/ 35
musical instrument /ˌmju:zɪkl 'ɪnstrəmənt/ 44
musician /mju:'zɪʃn/ 44
mussel /'mʌsl/ 16
mystery /'mɪstri/ 47

nail /neɪl/ 26
nanny /'næni/ 52
nap *as in* have a nap /næp/ 19
narrow /'nærəʊ/ 12
nasty /'nɑ:sti/ 20
national /'næʃnəl/ 41
NATO /'neɪtəʊ/ 79
natural /'nætʃrəl/ 69
nearby /ˌnɪə'baɪ/ 78
neat /ni:t/ 5
necklace /'neklɪs/ 23
need *as in* a need for /ni:d/ 38
need *as in* desperately need /ni:d/ 76
needle /'ni:dl/ 26
negative ADJ /'negətɪv/ 69
negative N /'negətɪv/ 43
negotiate /nɪ'gəʊʃieɪt/ 39
neighbourhood /'neɪbəhʊd/ 48
neutral /'nju:trəl/ 23, 77
nevertheless /ˌnevəðə'les/ 68
nightie /'naɪti/ 19
nightmare (= bad dream) /'naɪtmeə(r)/ 19
nightmare (= bad experience) /'naɪtmeə(r)/ 22
no problem /ˌnəʊ 'prɒbləm/ 77
non-alcoholic /ˌnɒn ælkə'hɒlɪk/ 72
non-fiction /ˌnɒn 'fɪkʃn/ 47
non-metric /ˌnɒn 'metrɪk/ 79
nonsense /'nɒnsns/ 77
not at all /ˌnɒt ət 'ɔ:l/ 62
not ... yet /ˌnɒt ... 'jet/ 70
note *as in* make a note of /nəʊt/ 1
notice V /'nəʊtɪs/ 32
notice *as in* hand in your notice /'nəʊtɪs/ 53
nothing much /ˌnʌθɪŋ 'mʌtʃ/ 77
novel /'nɒvl/ 47
now and again /ˌnaʊ ənd ə'gen/ 70
nowadays /'naʊədeɪz/ 70
nuisance /'nju:sns/ 66
number plate /'nʌmbə ˌpleɪt/ 21

obedient /ə'bi:diənt/ 64
obese /əʊ'bi:s/ 37
obesity /əʊ'bi:səti/ 37
obey /ə'beɪ/ 64
obey the law /əˌbeɪ ðə 'lɔ:/ 35
object /'ɒbʤekt/ 52
objective /əb'ʤektɪv/ 58
obligatory /ə'blɪgətri/ 64
observant /əb'zɜ:vənt/ 32
obvious /'ɒbviəs/ 2
occasion /ə'keɪʒn/ 48
occasionally /ə'keɪʒnəli/ 70
occur /ə'kɜ:(r)/ 22
ocean /'əʊʃn/ 12
off (= money off) /ɒf/ 18
off *as in* time off /ɒf/ 54
offence /ə'fens/ 35
offend /ə'fend/ 3
offender /ə'fendə(r)/ 35
offensive /ə'fensɪv/ 3
oil paints /'ɔɪl ˌpeɪnts/ 43
oils /ɔɪlz/ 43
old-fashioned /ˌəʊld 'fæʃnd/ 69
old friend /ˌəʊld 'frend/ 8
omit /ə'mɪt/ 4, 75
on board /ˌɒn 'bɔ:d/ 71
on display /ˌɒn dɪ'spleɪ/ 43
on my mind /ˌɒn ˌmaɪ 'maɪnd/ 19
on my way /ˌɒn ˌmaɪ 'weɪ/ 22
on purpose /ˌɒn 'pɜ:pəs/ 71
on show /ˌɒn 'ʃəʊ/ 43
on the horizon /ˌɒn ðə hə'raɪzn/ 12
on the one hand /ˌɒn ðə 'wʌn ˌhænd/ 68
on the other hand /ˌɒn ði 'ʌðə ˌhænd/ 68
on the way /ˌɒn ðə 'weɪ/ 22
on the whole /ˌɒn ðə 'həʊl/ 76
on time /ˌɒn 'taɪm/ 50
on your mind /ˌɒn ˌjɔ: 'maɪnd/ 19
one-sided /ˌwʌn 'saɪdɪd/ 46
only child /ˌəʊnli 'ʧaɪld/ 9
onto /'ɒntə/ 70
operate /'ɒpəreɪt/ 25
operating costs /'ɒpəreɪtɪŋ ˌkɒsts/ 55
operating theatre /'ɒpəreɪtɪŋ ˌθɪətə(r)/ 25
operation /ˌɒpə'reɪʃn/ 25
opinion *as in* in my opinion /ə'pɪnjən/ 63
opponent /ə'pəʊnənt/ 46
opportunity /ˌɒpə'tju:nəti/ 1, 50, 58
oppose /ə'pəʊz/ 38
opposed to /ə'pəʊzd tə/ 63
opposition /ˌɒpə'zɪʃn/ 38
Opposition *as in* the Opposition /ˌɒpə'zɪʃn/ 38
optimistic /ˌɒptɪ'mɪstɪk/ 59
optional /'ɒpʃənl/ 64
or /ɔ:(r)/ 68
or else /ˌɔ:r 'els/ 68
order *as in* out of order /'ɔ:də(r)/ 26
orchestra /'ɔ:kɪstrə/ 44
ordinary /'ɔ:dnri/ 42
organ /'ɔ:gən/ 44
organist /'ɔ:gənɪst/ 44
original /ə'rɪʤənl/ 30
originally /ə'rɪʤənəli/ 9
otherwise /'ʌðəwaɪz/ 68
out loud /ˌaʊt 'laʊd/ 34
out of focus /ˌaʊt əv 'fəʊkəs/ 43
out of order /ˌaʊt əv 'ɔ:də(r)/ 26
out of the blue /ˌaʊt əv ðə 'blu:/ 77
out of work /ˌaʊt əv 'wɜ:k/ 53
outfit /'aʊtfɪt/ 23
outsider /aʊt'saɪdə(r)/ 46
outskirts /'aʊtskɜ:ts/ 22
outstanding /aʊt'stændɪŋ/ 42, 46
oval ADJ, N /'əʊvl/ 31
oven /'ʌvn/ 17
over /'əʊvə(r)/ 70
over-ambitious /ˌəʊvər æm'bɪʃəs/ 56
over-optimistic /ˌəʊvər ɒptɪ'mɪstɪk/ 56
over there /ˌəʊvə 'ðeə(r)/ 70
overall /ˌəʊvər'ɔ:l/ 46
overall /'əʊvərɔ:l/ 69
overcharge /ˌəʊvə'ʧɑ:ʤ/ 56
overestimate /ˌəʊvər'estɪmeɪt/ 56
overhear /ˌəʊvə'hɪə(r)/ 32
overnight /ˌəʊvə'naɪt/ 22
oversleep /ˌəʊvə'sli:p/ 19
overtake /ˌəʊvə'teɪk/ 21

www.hellooteacher.ir

overtime /'əʊvətaɪm/ 54
owe /əʊ/ 18
own /əʊn/ 18
oyster /'ɔɪstə(r)/ 16

p (pence) /pi:, pens/ 79
PM (prime minister) /ˌpi: 'em/ 38
pack /pæk/ 72
painful /'peɪnfl/ 24, 73
painless /'peɪnləs/ 73
paint /peɪnt/ 33
painter /'peɪntə(r)/ 33
painting /'peɪntɪŋ/ 33
pale-skinned /ˌpeɪl 'skɪnd/ 5
papaya /pə'paɪə/ 16
paper (= exam paper) /'peɪpə(r)/ 49
paper (= newspaper) /'peɪpə(r)/ 79
paperback /'peɪpəbæk/ 47
parade /pə'reɪd/ 48
parallel /'pærəlel/ 31
parent *as in* foster parent /'peərənt/ 9
parliament /'pɑ:ləmənt/ 38
particular *as in* in particular /pə'tɪkjələ(r)/ 78
parsley /'pɑ:sli/ 16
part /pɑ:t/ 29
participate /pɑ:'tɪsɪpeɪt/ 46, 48
particular *as in* in particular /pə'tɪkjələ(r)/ 78
particularly /pə'tɪkjələli/ 78
parting /'pɑ:tɪŋ/ 28
partly /'pɑ:tli/ 76
partnership /'pɑ:tnəʃɪp/ 57
party *as in* political party /'pɑ:ti/ 39
pass out /ˌpɑ:s 'aʊt/ 20
passage /'pæsɪʤ/ 30
passion fruit /'pæʃn ˌfru:t/ 16
patience /'peɪʃns/ 6
patient ADJ /'peɪʃnt/ 25
patient N /'peɪʃnt/ 6
pause /pɔ:z/ 4
pavement /'peɪvmənt/ 29
pay /peɪ/ 55
peace /pi:s/ 39
peace settlement /'pi:s ˌsetlmənt/ 39
peak /pi:k/ 55
pebbles /'peblz/ 12
peel /pi:l/ 17
pence /pens/ 79
pennies /'peniz/ 79
penny /'peni/ 79
pension /'penʃn/ 41
pensioner /'penʃənə(r)/ 41
perform /pə'fɔ:m/ 46
performance /pə'fɔ:məns/ 42, 46
perm /pɜ:m/ 28
permanent /'pɜ:mənənt/ 69
permit *as in* work permit /'pɜ:mɪt/ 51
permit V /pə'mɪt/ 64
person *as in* in person /'pɜ:sn/ 66
personally /'pɜ:sənəli/ 63
persuade /pə'sweɪd/ 38, 74
pessimistic /ˌpesɪ'mɪstɪk/ 59
petrol /'petrəl/ 80
photo /'fəʊtəʊ/ 43
photo album /'fəʊtəʊ ˌælbəm/ 43
photograph /'fəʊtəgrɑ:f/ 43
photographer /fə'tɒgrəfə(r)/ 43
photography /fə'tɒgrəfi/ 43
pianist /'pɪənɪst/ 44
piano /pi'ænəʊ/ 44
pick up /ˌpɪk 'ʌp/ 22, 75, 77
PIN (personal identification number) /pɪn/ 79
pin /pɪn/ 26
pipe /paɪp/ 31
pitch /pɪʧ/ 45
pity /'pɪti/ 29
plan /plæn/ 65
plane /pleɪn/ 79
planet /'plænɪt/ 11
planning /'plænɪŋ/ 49
plastic /'plæstɪk/ 31
pleased /pli:zd/ 69
pleasure /'pleʒə(r)/ 47
pledge N, V /pleʤ/ 41
plenty /'plenti/ 17
plot /plɒt/ 42
plug in /ˌplʌg 'ɪn/ 72
plum /plʌm/ 16
plumber /'plʌmə(r)/ 52
plump /plʌmp/ 5
plus /plʌs/ 68
pocket /'pɒkɪt/ 23
poem /'pəʊɪm/ 47
poetry /'pəʊətri/ 47
point (= purpose) /pɔɪnt/ 66
point (= shape) /pɔɪnt/ 31
point *as in* there's no point in ... /pɔɪnt/ 66
point *as in* what's the point of ...? /pɔɪnt/ 66
pointed /'pɔɪntɪd/ 31
poison /'pɔɪzn/ 15
poisonous /'pɔɪzənəs/ 15
pole /pəʊl/ 13
policy /'pɒləsi/ 38
polish N, V /'pɒlɪʃ/ 27
polite /pə'laɪt/ 69
political party /pə'ˌlɪtɪkl 'pɑ:ti/ 38
politician /ˌpɒlə'tɪʃn/ 38
pollute /pə'lu:t/ 13
pollution /pə'lu:ʃn/ 13
pomegranate /'pɒmɪˌgrænɪt/ 16
pond /pɒnd/ 12
pool /pu:l/ 45
pop /pɒp/ 79
portrait /'pɔ:treɪt/ 43
position /pə'zɪʃn/ 51
positive /'pɒzətɪv/ 69
postpone /pə'spəʊn/ 61
potential /pə'tenʃl/ 57
pour /pɔ:(r)/ 13
pouring /'pɔ:rɪŋ/ 13
power *as in* in power /'paʊə(r)/ 38
powerful /'paʊəfl/ 73
powerless /'paʊələs/ 73
practical /'præktɪkl/ 73
praise N, V /preɪz/ 46
predict /prɪ'dɪkt/ 13
predictable /prɪ'dɪktəbl/ 13
prefer /prɪ'fɜ:(r)/ 73
preference /'prefrəns/ 73
pregnant /'pregnənt/ 5
premises /'premɪsɪz/ 67
prepare /prɪ'peə(r)/ 21
prepared /prɪ'peəd/ 21
present /'preznt/ 47
president /'prezɪdənt/ 40
press V /pres/ 32
press *as in* the press /pres/ 41
pre-tax /ˌpri: 'tæks/ 55
pretend /prɪ'tend/ 74
pretty (= attractive) /'prɪti/ 5
pretty (= rather) /'prɪti/ 76
prevent /prɪ'vent/ 20
prevention /prɪ'venʃn/ 20
previous /'pri:viəs/ 9
prime minister /ˌpraɪm 'mɪnɪstə(r)/ 38
prince /prɪns/ 40
princess /ˌprɪn'ses/ 40

www.hellooteacher.ir

principle *as in* in principle /'prɪnsəpl/ 63
print /prɪnt/ 43
priority /praɪ'ɒrəti/ 38
prison *as in* go to prison /'prɪzn/ 35
private *as in* in private /'praɪvət/ 71
private sector /'praɪvət ˌsektə(r)/ 52
problem *as in* no problem /'prɒbləm/ 77
process /'prəʊses/ 51
produce (a film) /prə'dju:s/ 42
produce (goods) /'prɒdju:s/ 57
producer (of films) /prə'dju:sə(r)/ 42
producer (of goods) /prə'dju:sə(r)/ 57
product /'prɒdʌkt/ 52
profession /prə'feʃn/ 52
professional /prə'feʃənl/ 46
professor /prə'fesə(r)/ 50
profit /'prɒfɪt/ 55
progress /'prəʊgres/ 2
promise /'prɒmɪs/ 41
promote /prə'məʊt/ 53
promotion /prə'məʊʃn/ 53
pronounce /prə'naʊns/ 1
pronunciation /prəˌnʌnsi'eɪʃn/ 1
proof /pru:f/ 36
properly /'prɒpəli/ 26
property /'prɒpəti/ 35
proposal /prə'pəʊzl/ 63
propose /prə'pəʊz/ 63
prosecute /'prɒsɪkju:t/ 36
prosecution /ˌprɒsɪ'kju:ʃn/ 36
prospects /'prɒspekts/ 53
protect /prə'tekt/ 12
protected /prə'tektɪd/ 12
protection /prə'tekʃn/ 12
protest N /'prəʊtest/ 41
protest V /prə'test/ 41
proud /praʊd/ 7
prove /pru:v/ 36
provide /prə'vaɪd/ 3
provided /prə'vaɪdɪd/ 68
pub /pʌb/ 79
public *as in* in public /'pʌblɪk/ 71
public *as in* member of the public /'pʌblɪk/ 53
public *as in* the public /'pʌblɪk/ 53
public house /ˌpʌblɪk 'haʊs/ 79
public sector /ˌpʌblɪk 'sektə(r)/ 52
publish /'pʌblɪʃ/ 41, 52
publishing /'pʌblɪʃɪŋ/ 41, 52
puddle /'pʌdl/ 12
punish /'pʌnɪʃ/ 64
punishment /'pʌnɪʃmənt/ 64
purchase N, V /'pɜ:tʃəs/ 77
purpose /'pɜ:pəs/ 68
purpose *as in* on purpose /'pɜ:pəs/ 71
purse /pɜ:s/ 80
put on weight /ˌpʊt ˌɒn 'weɪt/ 17
put back /ˌpʊt 'bæk/ 75
put down /ˌpʊt 'daʊn/ 75
put off /ˌpʊt 'ɒf/ 61
put on /ˌpʊt 'ɒn/ 75
put out /ˌpʊt 'aʊt/ 75
pyjamas /pə'ʤɑ:məz/ 19

qualifications /ˌkwɒlɪfɪ'keɪʃnz/ 52
quality /'kwɒləti/ 56
queen /kwi:n/ 9
question mark /'kwestʃn ˌmɑ:k/ 4
quit /kwɪt/ 53
quite /kwaɪt/ 76
quotation marks /kwəʊ'teɪʃn ˌmɑ:ks/ 4

rabbit /'ræbɪt/ 16
race /reɪs/ 46
racing driver /'reɪsɪŋ ˌdraɪvə(r)/ 45
railings /'reɪlɪŋz/ 31
railroad /'reɪlrəʊd/ 80
rainbow /'reɪnbəʊ/ 13
rainforest /'reɪnfɒrɪst/ 13
raise capital /ˌreɪz 'kæpɪtl/ 55
range *as in* wide range /reɪnʤ/ 2
rare /reə(r)/ 69
rarely /'reəli/ 76
raspberry /'rɑ:zbəri/ 16
rat /ræt/ 15
rather /'rɑ:ðə(r)/ 76
rather *as in* would rather /'rɑ:ðə(r)/ 62
rather than /'rɑ:ðə ðən/ 21
reach /ri:tʃ/ 11
reach an agreement /ˌri:tʃ ən ə'gri:mənt/ 39
react /ri'ækt/ 73
reaction /ri'ækʃn/ 73
read widely /ˌri:d 'waɪdli/ 50
readable /'ri:dəbl/ 47
real /'ri:əl/ 69, 73
realism /'ri:əlɪzəm/ 43
realistic /ˌri:ə'lɪstɪk/ 43, 58
reality /ri'æləti/ 73
realize /'ri:əlaɪz/ 8
rear /rɪə(r)/ 70
rear-view mirror /ˌrɪə ˌvju: 'mɪrə(r)/ 21
reasonable /'ri:znəbl/ 69
recall /rɪ'kɔ:l/ 74
receding /rɪ'si:dɪŋ/ 5
receipt /rɪ'si:t/ 18
recent /'ri:snt/ 70
recently /'ri:sntli/ 70
reception /rɪ'sepʃn/ 10
recipe /'resəpi/ 17
reckon /'rekən/ 63, 77
recognition /ˌrekəg'nɪʃn/ 1
recognize /'rekəgnaɪz/ 1
record N /'rekɔ:d/ 46
record V (= make a note) /rɪ'kɔ:d/ 1
record V (= put onto a disc) /rɪ'kɔ:d/ 44
recording /rɪ'kɔ:dɪŋ/ 44
recover /rɪ'kʌvə(r)/ 25
recruit /rɪ'kru:t/ 52
recruitment /rɪ'kru:tmənt/ 52
rectangle /'rektæŋgl/ 31
rectangular /rek'tæŋgjələ(r)/ 31
reduce /rɪ'dju:s/ 18, 58, 63
reduction /rɪ'dʌkʃn/ 18, 58
redundant /rɪ'dʌndənt/ 53
reel /ri:l/ 26
ref /ref/ 45
referee (at a sports match) /ˌrefə'ri:/ 45
referee (for a job) /ˌrefə'ri:/ 51
referee's assistant /ˌrefəˌri:z ə'sɪstənt/ 45
reference /'refrəns/ 51
reference book /'refrəns ˌbʊk/ 47
refine /rɪ'faɪn/ 57
refund /'ri:fʌnd/ 18
refuse /rɪ'fju:z/ 74
regards *as in* kind regards /rɪ'gɑ:dz/ 78
region /'ri:ʤən/ 29
regret /rɪ'gret/ 8, 74
regularly /'regjələli/ 76
relate /rɪ'leɪt/ 3

www.hellooteacher.ir

related (= connected) /rɪ'leɪtɪd/ 3
related (= in the same family) /rɪ'leɪtɪd/ 9
relation /rɪ'leɪʃn/ 9
relationship *as in* in a relationship /rɪ'leɪʃnʃɪp/ 8
relative /'relətɪv/ 9
release (= set free) /rɪ'li:s/ 40
release N, V (an album) /rɪ'li:s/ 44
relevant /'reləvənt/ 2, 72
reliable /rɪ'laɪəbl/ 8
relief /rɪ'li:f/ 49
relieved /rɪ'li:vd/ 49
religious /rɪ'lɪdʒəs/ 10
religious ceremony /rɪˌlɪdʒəs 'serəməni/ 10
rely on /rɪ'laɪ ˌɒn/ 8, 71
remain unchanged /rɪˌmeɪn ʌn'tʃeɪndʒd/ 55
remind /rɪ'maɪnd/ 74
remote /rɪ'məʊt/ 69
remove /rɪ'mu:v/ 26
rent /rent/ 22
rep *as in* sales rep /rep/ 52
repair /rɪ'peə(r)/ 26
repeat /rɪ'pi:t/ 1
repetition /ˌrepə'tɪʃn/ 1
replace /rɪ'pleɪs/ 26
report /rɪ'pɔ:t/ 36
represent /ˌreprɪ'zent/ 38
representative /ˌreprɪ'zentətɪv/ 52
republic /rɪ'pʌblɪk/ 40
reputation /ˌrepju'teɪʃn/ 56
request /rɪ'kwest/ 51
require /rɪ'kwaɪə(r)/ 51
research *as in* do research /rɪ'sɜ:tʃ, 'ri:sɜ:tʃ/ 57
research *as in* market research /rɪ'sɜ:tʃ, 'ri:sɜ:tʃ/ 56
rescue /'reskju:/ 14
residence *as in* hall of residence /'rezɪdəns/ 50
resign /rɪ'zaɪn/ 53
resist /rɪ'zɪst/ 46
resistance /rɪ'zɪstəns/ 46
resolve /rɪ'zɒlv/ 66
resource /rɪ'sɔ:s, rɪ'zɔ:s/ 58
respond /rɪ'spɒnd/ 58
response /rɪ'spɒns/ 58
responsible /rɪ'spɒnsəbl/ 6, 53, 71
responsibility /rɪˌspɒnsə'bɪləti/ 53
responsible (= sensible) /rɪ'spɒnsəbl/ 6
responsible (= having control) /rɪ'spɒnsəbl/ 53, 71
restless /'restləs/ 19
result *as in* as a result /rɪ'zʌlt/ 68
retail /'ri:teɪl/ 52
retain /rɪ'teɪn/ 57
retention /rɪ'tenʃn/ 57
return *as in* day return /rɪ'tɜ:n/ 22
revenue *as in* sales revenue /'revənju:/ 55
reverse /rɪ'vɜ:s/ 21
revise /rɪ'vaɪz/ 1, 50
revision /rɪ'vɪʒn/ 50
revolution /ˌrevə'lu:ʃn/ 40
revolve /rɪ'vɒlv/ 11
reward N, V /rɪ'wɔ:d/ 53
rid *as in* get rid of /rɪd/ 71
ridiculous /rɪ'dɪkjələs/ 73
right *as in* have the right to /raɪt/ 54
right-hand /'raɪt ˌhænd/ 33
ring /rɪŋ/ 23
rise /raɪz/ 13, 55
risk /rɪsk/ 25, 56
risky /'rɪski/ 56
rival /'raɪvl/ 56
roast /rəʊst/ 17
rob /rɒb/ 35
robber /'rɒbə(r)/ 35
robbery /'rɒbəri/ 35
rock /rɒk/ 12
rocket /'rɒkɪt/ 11
rocks /rɒks/ 12
role /rəʊl/ 42
roll of film /ˌrəʊl əv 'fɪlm/ 43
roof /ru:f/ 30
rope /rəʊp/ 26
rosemary /'rəʊzməri/ 16
rough (of a surface) /rʌf/ 5
rough (of the sea) /rʌf/ 12
roughly /'rʌfli/ 11, 76
round /raʊnd/ 31
round trip /ˌraʊnd 'trɪp/ 80
roundish /'raʊndɪʃ/ 5
row *as in* have a row /raʊ/ 8
royal /'rɔɪəl/ 9
rub /rʌb/ 32
rubber /'rʌbə(r)/ 31
rubbish /'rʌbɪʃ/ 77
rude /ru:d/ 69
rugby player /'rʌgbi ˌpleɪə(r)/ 45
ruin /'ru:ɪn/ 66
rule /ru:l/ 64
run out /ˌrʌn 'aʊt/ 75
running water /ˌrʌnɪŋ 'wɔ:tə(r)/ 20
rural /'rʊərəl/ 69
rush /rʌʃ/ 29
rush *as in* in a rush /rʌʃ/ 71
rush hour /'rʌʃ ˌaʊə(r)/ 22

sack N, V /sæk/ 53
safety helmet /'seɪfti ˌhelmɪt/ 57
sales *as in* the sales /seɪlz/ 18
sales rep /'seɪlz ˌrep/ 52
sales representative /'seɪlz ˌreprɪˌzentətɪv/ 52
sales revenue /'seɪlz ˌrevənju:/ 55
salmon /'sæmən/ 16
salty /'sɔ:lti/ 32
same *as in* all the same /seɪm/ 68
sand /sænd/ 12
sandy /'sændi/ 12
satellite /'sætəlaɪt/ 11
satisfaction /ˌsætɪs'fækʃn/ 66
satisfied /'sætɪsfaɪd/ 69
satisfying /'sætɪsfaɪɪŋ/ 69
saucepan /'sɔ:spən/ 17
save /seɪv/ 14
saxophone /'sæksəfəʊn/ 44
saxophonist /sæk'sɒfənɪst/ 44
say /seɪ/ 61
scan /skæn/ 25
scar /skɑ:(r)/ 5
scare /skeə(r)/ 41
scared stiff /ˌskeəd 'stɪf/ 7
scene /si:n/ 33
scholarship /'skɒləʃɪp/ 50
science /'saɪəns/ 11
science fiction /ˌsaɪəns 'fɪkʃn/ 47
scientific /ˌsaɪən'tɪfɪk/ 11
scientist /'saɪəntɪst/ 11
scissors /'sɪsəz/ 26, 28
sci-fi /'saɪ ˌfaɪ/ 47
scratch N /skrætʃ/ 18
scratch V /skrætʃ/ 34
scream /skri:m/ 34
screw /skru:/ 26
screwdriver /'skru:draɪvə(r)/ 26
sea bass /'si: ˌbæs/ 16
section /'sekʃn/ 41
sector /'sektə(r)/ 52, 58

www.hellooteacher.ir

secure /sɪ'kjʊə(r)/ 72
see (with your eyes) /si:/ 32
see (in your mind) /si:/ 6
seek /si:k/ 67
seem *as in* it seems to me /si:m/ 63
seldom /'seldəm/ 76
select /sɪ'lekt/ 3
selection /sɪ'lekʃn/ 3
self-confident /ˌself 'kɒnfɪdənt/ 6
Sellotape /'seləteɪp/ 26
semicolon /ˌsemi'kəʊlən/ 4
semi-detached /ˌsemidɪ'tætʃt/ 30
semi-final /ˌsemi'faɪnl/ 46
seminar /'semɪnɑ:(r)/ 50
sense /sens/ 33
sense of humour /ˌsens əv 'hju:mə(r)/ 6
sensible /'sensəbl/ 63
sensitive /'sensətɪv/ 7
sentence N, V /'sentəns/ 36
separate ADJ /'seprət/ 30
separate V /'sepəreɪt/ 4
serious /'sɪəriəs/ 22, 35
seriously /'sɪəriəsli/ 76
servant *as in* civil servant /'sɜ:vənt/ 52
service *as in* civil service /'sɜ:vɪs/ 52
services *as in* emergency services /'sɜ:vɪsɪz/ 22
set the alarm /ˌset ði ə'lɑ:m/ 19
set up a business /ˌset ˌʌp ə 'bɪznəs/ 56
settle /'setl/ 66
settlement *as in* peace settlement /'setlmənt/ 39
several /'sevrəl/ 41
severe /sɪ'vɪə(r)/ 52
sew /səʊ/ 26
sex /seks/ 5
shade /ʃeɪd/ 33
shadow /'ʃædəʊ/ 33
shake /ʃeɪk/ 34
shall /ʃæl, ʃəl/ 51
shallow /'ʃæləʊ/ 12
shame /ʃeɪm/ 29
shape /ʃeɪp/ 31
shape *as in* in good/bad shape /ʃeɪp/ 5
-shaped /ʃeɪpt/ 31
share /ʃeə(r)/ 56
shares /ʃeəz/ 56
shark /ʃɑ:k/ 15
sharp /ʃɑ:p/ 55
sharply /'ʃɑ:pli/ 55, 76
shell /ʃel/ 16
shift work /'ʃɪft ˌwɜ:k/ 54
ship /ʃɪp/ 12
shirt /ʃɜ:t/ 23
shocked /ʃɒkt/ 69
shocking /'ʃɒkɪŋ/ 69
shockproof /'ʃɒkpru:f/ 73
shoe /ʃu:/ 23
shoelace /'ʃu:leɪs/ 72
shoot /ʃu:t/ 35
shooting /'ʃu:tɪŋ/ 46
shoplifter /'ʃɒplɪftə(r)/ 35
shoplifting /'ʃɒplɪftɪŋ/ 35
shopping list /'ʃɒpɪŋ ˌlɪst/ 4
shopping mall /'ʃɒpɪŋ ˌmɔ:l, ˌmæl/ 80
shore /ʃɔ:(r)/ 12
short sleeves /ˌʃɔ:t 'sli:vz/ 23
shoulder /'ʃəʊldə(r)/ 5
shout /ʃaʊt/ 34
show *as in* on show /ʃəʊ/ 43
show your feelings /ˌʃəʊ jɔ: 'fi:lɪŋz/ 7
shutters /'ʃʌtəz/ 30
sick pay /'sɪk ˌpeɪ/ 54
side *as in* left/right-hand side /saɪd/ 33
side (in a war) /saɪd/ 39
sidewalk /'saɪdwɔ:k/ 80
sigh /saɪ/ 34
sight /saɪt/ 37
sign a contract /ˌsaɪn ə kɒntrækt/ 57
significant /sɪg'nɪfɪkənt/ 55
significantly /sɪg'nɪfɪkəntli/ 55
silence /'saɪləns/ 34
silent /'saɪlənt/ 34
silk /sɪlk/ 23
silly /'sɪli/ 63
silver /'sɪlvə(r)/ 31
similar /'sɪmələ(r)/ 60
similarity /ˌsɪmə'lærəti/ 60
simple /'sɪmpl/ 69
since /sɪns/ 68
sincerely *as in* yours sincerely /sɪn'sɪəli/ 78
singer *as in* lead singer /'sɪŋə(r)/ 45
single parent /ˌsɪŋgl 'peərənt/ 9
sink /sɪŋk/ 12
Sir /sɜ:(r)/ 78
skid /skɪd/ 21, 22
skier /'ski:ə(r)/ 45
skilful /'skɪlfl/ 58
skill /skɪl/ 58
skilled /skɪld/ 43, 58
skim /skɪm/ 47
skin /skɪn/ 5
skinned *as in* dark/light/pale-skinned /skɪnd/ 5
skinny /'skɪni/ 5
slang /slæŋ/ 3
slash /slæʃ/ 4
sleep N, V /sli:p/ 19
sleep like a log /ˌsli:p ˌlaɪk ə 'lɒg/ 19
sleepy /'sli:pi/ 19
sleeve /sli:v/ 23
slender /'slendə(r)/ 5
slight /slaɪt/ 55
slightly /'slaɪtli/ 55
slim /slɪm/ 5
slip /slɪp/ 23
slipped /slɪpt/ 20
slow down /ˌsləʊ 'daʊn/ 21
small letters /'smɔ:l ˌletəz/ 4
smash /smæʃ/ 34
smell /smel/ 32
smooth /smu:ð/ 5
smoothly *as in* go smoothly /'smu:ðli/ 65
snack /snæk/ 17
snake /sneɪk/ 15
sneeze /sni:z/ 34
snore /snɔ:(r)/ 19
so /səʊ/ 68
so that /'səʊ ðət/ 68
soaked /səʊkt/ 13
soaking wet /ˌsəʊkɪŋ 'wet/ 13
sociable /'səʊʃəbl/ 8
social worker /'səʊʃl ˌwɜ:kə(r)/ 52
soft /sɒft/ 69
solar system /'səʊlə ˌsɪstəm/ 11
soldier /'səʊldʒə(r)/ 39
solid /'sɒlɪd/ 13
solo artist /'səʊləʊ ˌɑ:tɪst/ 44
solution /sə'lu:ʃn/ 53
solve a problem /ˌsɒlv ə 'prɒbləm/ 53
songwriter /'sɒŋraɪtə(r)/ 44
sorry to bother you /ˌsɒri tə 'bɒðə ˌju:/ 66
sort /sɔ:t/ 43
sort of /'sɔ:t əv/ 77
sort out /ˌsɔ:t 'aʊt/ 65
sound like /'saʊnd ˌlaɪk/ 32

www.hellooteacher.ir

space (= area round planets) /speɪs/ 11
space (= area that is empty) /speɪs/ 29
spacious /'speɪʃəs/ 30, 69
specialist /'speʃəlɪst/ 25
specialized /'speʃəlaɪzd/ 2
spectacular /spek'tækjələ(r)/ 48
spectators /spek'teɪtəz/ 45
speech *as in* make a speech /spi:tʃ/ 10
speed /spi:d/ 79
speed limit /'spi:d ˌlɪmɪt/ 21
speedometer /spi:'dɒmɪtə(r)/ 21
spicy /'spaɪsi/ 73
spider /'spaɪdə(r)/ 15
spinach /'spɪnɪtʃ, -ɪdʒ/ 16
spite *as in* in spite of /spaɪt/ 68
split up /ˌsplɪt 'ʌp/ 8
spoil /spɔɪl/ 66
spot /spɒt/ 59
spots /spɒts/ 15
spray /spreɪ/ 34
spread /spred/ 13
square ADJ, N /skweə(r)/ 31
squeeze /skwi:z/ 34
squid /skwɪd/ 16
stab /stæb/ 35
stability /stə'bɪlətɪ/ 55
stable /'steɪbl/ 55
stadium /'steɪdiəm/ 45
stain /steɪn/ 26
staircase /'steəkeɪs/ 30
stand *as in* can't stand /stænd/ 62
stand for /'stænd ˌfɔ:(r), fə(r)/ 79
standard /'stændəd/ 45
stare /steə(r)/ 32
star /stɑ:(r)/ 11
starve /stɑ:v/ 14
starve to death /ˌstɑ:v tə 'deθ/ 14
stay the same /ˌsteɪ ðə 'seɪm/ 55
steadily /'stedɪlɪ/ 55
steady /'stedɪ/ 55
steal /sti:l/ 35
steel /sti:l/ 31
steep /sti:p/ 12
steer /stɪə(r)/ 21
steering wheel /'stɪərɪŋ ˌwi:l/ 21
stepbrother /'stepbrʌðə(r)/ 9
stepdaughter /'stepdɔ:tə(r)/ 9
stepfather /'stepfɑ:ðə(r)/ 9
stepmother /'stepmʌðə(r)/ 9
stepsister /'stepsɪstə(r)/ 9
stepson /'stepsʌn/ 9
stick /stɪk/ 26
stick together /ˌstɪk tə'geðə(r)/ 26
stiff *as in* scared stiff /stɪf/ 7
still /stɪl/ 68
still life /ˌstɪl 'laɪf/ 43
sting /stɪŋ/ 15
stink /stɪŋk/ 32
stir /stɜ:(r)/ 17
stock /stɒk/ 55
stocky /'stɒkɪ/ 5
stone (= seed of a fruit) /stəʊn/ 16
stone (= building material) /stəʊn/ 30
stop *as in* full stop /stɒp/ 4
stop off /ˌstɒp 'ɒf/ 22
storage /'stɔ:rɪdʒ/ 30
store N /stɔ:(r)/ 80
store V /stɔ:(r)/ 30
straight /streɪt/ 31
straightaway /ˌstreɪtə'weɪ/ 25
stranger /'streɪndʒə(r)/ 78
strategy /'strætədʒɪ/ 58
stream /stri:m/ 12
strength /streŋθ/ 58
stress (= emphasis) /stres/ 3
stress (= anxious state) /stres/ 54
stressful /'stresfl/ 54
strict /strɪkt/ 64
strike /straɪk/ 14
striking /'straɪkɪŋ/ 48
string /strɪŋ/ 26
stripe /straɪp/ 15
stroke /strəʊk/ 37
strongly /'strɒŋlɪ/ 76
struggle N, V /'strʌgl/ 56
stubble /'stʌbl/ 5
stuck /stʌk/ 22
studio /'stju:dɪəʊ/ 43
stuff /stʌf/ 77
stupid /'stju:pɪd/ 6
style (in fashion) /staɪl/ 23
style (= way sth is written or drawn) /staɪl/ 3, 43
stylish /'staɪlɪʃ/ 23
subject to /'sʌbdʒɪkt tə/ 51
substantial /səb'stænʃl/ 30
suburb /'sʌbɜ:b/ 29
subway (= path under a road/ railway) /'sʌbweɪ/ 29
subway (= underground railway) /'sʌbweɪ/ 80
succeed /sək'si:d/ 49
success /sək'ses/ 49
successful /sək'sesfl/ 25
such as /'sʌtʃ əz/ 4
sudden /'sʌdn/ 14
suddenly /'sʌdənlɪ/ 14
suede /sweɪd/ 23
suffer from /'sʌfə frəm/ 19
suit /su:t/ 23
suitable /'su:təbl/ 42
sun /sʌn/ 11
supplier /sə'plaɪə(r)/ 56
supply N /sə'plaɪ/ 14
supply V /sə'plaɪ/ 56
support N, V (= agreement/ agree) /sə'pɔ:t/ 63
support V (= help) /sə'pɔ:t/ 9
support V (= follow a team) /sə'pɔ:t/ 45
supporters /sə'pɔ:təz/ 45
supporting role /sə'pɔ:tɪŋ ˌrəʊl/ 42
supportive /sə'pɔ:tɪv/ 7
suppose *as in* I suppose so /sə'pəʊz/ 65
supposed *as in* be supposed to /sə'pəʊzd/ 61
sure *as in* make sure /ʃʊə(r)/ 53, 66
surface /'sɜ:fɪs/ 12
surfer /'sɜ:fə(r)/ 57
surgeon /'sɜ:dʒən/ 25
surgery /'sɜ:dʒərɪ/ 24
surrender /sə'rendə(r)/ 39
surrounded by /sə'raʊndɪd ˌbaɪ/ 29
surrounding ADJ /sə'raʊndɪŋ/ 14
surroundings N /sə'raʊndɪŋz/ 14
survival /sə'vaɪvl/ 15, 56
survive /sə'vaɪv/ 15, 56
suspect /'sʌspekt/ 36
suspicious /sə'spɪʃəs/ 69
swallow /'swɒləʊ/ 67
swear /sweə(r)/ 42
swearing /'sweərɪŋ/ 42
sweater /'swetə(r)/ 23
sweep /swi:p/ 27
sweetcorn /'swi:tkɔ:n/ 16
sweets /swi:ts/ 80
swimmer /'swɪmə(r)/ 45

www.hellooteacher.ir

swimming pool /'swɪmɪŋ ˌpu:l/ 45
switch off /ˌswɪʧ 'ɒf/ 75
switch on /ˌswɪʧ 'ɒn/ 75
swollen /'swəʊlən/ 20
syllable /'sɪləbl/ 3
symbol /'sɪmbl/ 3
sympathetic /ˌsɪmpə'θetɪk/ 7
symptom /'sɪmptəm/ 20
system *as in* solar system /'sɪstəm/ 11

t (tonne) /tʌn/ 79
tail /teɪl/ 15
take a tooth out /ˌteɪk ə 'tu:θ ˌaʊt/ 24
take advantage of /ˌteɪk əd'vɑ:ntɪʤ əv/ 71
take after /'teɪk ˌɑ:ftə(r)/ 9, 75
take care /ˌteɪk 'keə(r)/ 77, 78
take care of /ˌteɪk 'keər əv/ 25, 52, 71
take notes /ˌteɪk 'nəʊts/ 50
take out /ˌteɪk 'aʊt/ 50, 55
take over /ˌteɪk 'əʊvə(r)/ 56
take part in /ˌteɪk 'pɑ:t ˌɪn/ 46, 48
take pictures /ˌteɪk 'pɪkʧəz/ 43
take place /ˌteɪk 'pleɪs/ 36, 46
take sb on /ˌteɪk ˌ... 'ɒn/ 56
take sth off /ˌteɪk ˌ... 'ɒf/ 75
take time off /ˌteɪk ˌtaɪm 'ɒf/ 54
takeover /'teɪkəʊvə(r)/ 56
talent /'tælənt/ 44
talented /'tæləntɪd/ 44
tallish /'tɔ:lɪʃ/ 5
tan /tæn/ 5
tanned /tænd/ 5
tap /tæp/ 32
target v /'tɑ:gɪt/ 58
target market /ˌtɑ:gɪt 'mɑ:kɪt/ 58
task /tɑ:sk/ 27
taste /teɪst/ 32
tax /tæks/ 55
tear *as in* burst into tears /tɪə(r)/ 34
tear up /ˌteər 'ʌp/ 34
technique /tek'ni:k/ 43
television /'telɪvɪʒn/ 79
tell /tel/ 5
telly /'teli/ 79
temper *as in* keep/lose your temper /'tempə(r)/ 66
temporarily /'temprərəli/ 20
temporary /'temprəri/ 69
tend /tend/ 74
tendency /'tendənsi/ 74
tennis player /'tenɪs ˌpleɪə(r)/ 45
terrible /'terəbl/ 66
terribly /'terəbli/ 76
terrified /'terɪfaɪd/ 7, 69
terrifying /'terɪfaɪɪŋ/ 69
test /test/ 25
text /tekst/ 1
the accused /ðɪ ə'kju:zd/ 36
the defence /ðə dɪ'fens/ 36
the outskirts /ðɪ 'aʊtskɜ:ts/ 22
the point is /ðə 'pɔɪnt ˌɪz/ 63
theater *as in* movie theater /'θɪətə(r)/ 80
theft /θeft/ 35
theory *as in* in theory /'θɪəri/ 63
therefore /'ðeəfɔ:(r)/ 68
these days /'ði:z ˌdeɪz/ 70
thesis /'θi:sɪs/ 50
thief /θi:f/ 35
think /θɪŋk/ 63
think *as in* I (don't) think so /θɪŋk/ 65
third quarter /ˌθɜ:d 'kwɔ:tə(r)/ 55
thoroughly /'θʌrəli/ 20
though /ðəʊ/ 68
though *as in* even though /ðəʊ/ 68
thread /θred/ 26
threat /θret/ 41, 58
threaten /'θretn/ 41
thrilled /θrɪld/ 7
throughout /θru:'aʊt/ 70
throw /θrəʊ/ 48
throw away /ˌθrəʊ ə'weɪ/ 27
thyme /taɪm/ 16
tidal wave /'taɪdl ˌweɪv/ 14
tide /taɪd/ 12
tidy up /ˌtaɪdi 'ʌp/ 27
tie /taɪ/ 26
tie up /ˌtaɪ 'ʌp/ 72
tied up /ˌtaɪd 'ʌp/ 61
tiger /'taɪgə(r)/ 15
tighten /'taɪtn/ 26
tights /taɪts/ 23
time *as in* from time to time /taɪm/ 70
time *as in* in time /taɪm/ 50
time *as in* on time /taɪm/ 50
time off /ˌtaɪm 'ɒf/ 54
tiny /'taɪni/ 30
tip /tɪp/ 21, 58
title /'taɪtl/ 47
to a certain extent /ˌtu ə 'sɜ:tn ɪkˌstent/ 76
to go /tə 'gəʊ/ 70
to some extent /tə 'sʌm ɪkˌstent/ 76
toast *as in* drink a toast /təʊst/ 10
together *as in* get together /tə'geðə(r)/ 8, 61
tolerance /'tɒlərəns/ 6
tolerant /'tɒlərənt/ 6
toll *as in* death toll /tɒl/ 14
ton /tʌn/ 48
tonne /tʌn/ 79
tools /tu:lz/ 26
tooth /tu:θ/ 24
toothache /'tu:θeɪk/ 24
top /tɒp/ 33
totally /'təʊtəli/ 76
touch /tʌʧ/ 32
toward /tə'wɔ:d/ 70
towards /tə'wɔ:dz/ 70
toy /tɔɪ/ 31
track /træk/ 45
trade union /ˌtreɪd 'ju:niən/ 54
traditional /trə'dɪʃənl/ 10
traffic jam /'træfɪk ˌʤæm/ 22
train /treɪn/ 52
training /'treɪnɪŋ/ 52
transfer /træns'fɜ:(r)/ 43, 53
transform /træns'fɔ:m/ 23
translate /træns'leɪt/ 1
translation /træns'leɪʃn/ 1
trap /træp/ 14
trapped /træpt/ 14
trash /træʃ/ 80
trash can /'træʃ ˌkæn/ 80
travel /'trævl/ 76
travel agent /'trævl ˌeɪʤənt/ 52
treat /tri:t/ 24, 25
treatment /'tri:tmənt/ 24, 25
trend /trend/ 55
trial /'traɪəl/ 36
triangle /'traɪæŋgl/ 31
triangular /traɪ'æŋgjələ(r)/ 31
trim n, v /trɪm/ 28
trip /trɪp/ 22
tropical /'trɒpɪkl/ 73
trouble /trʌbl/ 22
trout /traʊt/ 16
truck /trʌk/ 80
trumpet /'trʌmpɪt/ 44
trumpeter /'trʌmpɪtə(r)/ 44

www.hellooteacher.ir

trunk /trʌŋk/ 15
trust /trʌst/ 8
try /traɪ/ 36
tube /tju:b/ 34
tuition fees /tju'ɪʃn ˌfi:z/ 50
tune /tju:n/ 44
turkey /'tɜ:ki/ 15
turn down /ˌtɜ:n 'daʊn/ 77
turn up /ˌtɜ:n 'ʌp/ 22
turnover /'tɜ:nəʊvə(r)/ 55
tutor /'tju:tə(r)/ 50
TV (television) /ˌti: 'vi:/ 79
two *as in* fold in two /tu:/ 34
typhoon /taɪ'fu:n/ 14
tyre /'taɪə(r)/ 21, 31

UFO (unidentified flying object) /ˌju: ˌef 'əʊ/ 79
UN (United Nations) /ˌju: 'en/ 79
UEFA /ˌju'eɪfə/ 79
umpire /'ʌmpaɪə(r)/ 45
unacceptable /ˌʌnək'septəbl/ 72
unambitious /ˌʌnæm'bɪʃəs/ 6
unconscious /ˌʌn'kɒnʃəs/ 20
underestimate /ˌʌndər'estɪmeɪt/ 56
undergraduate /ˌʌndə'grædjuət/ 50
underneath /ˌʌndə'ni:θ/ 70
underpants /'ʌndəpænts/ 23
underwater /ˌʌndə'wɔ:tə(r)/ 12
underwear /'ʌndəweə(r)/ 23
undo /ˌʌn'du:/ 72
unemployed /ˌʌnɪm'plɔɪd/ 53
unexpected /ˌʌnɪk'spektɪd/ 69
unfair /ˌʌn'feə(r)/ 72
unfasten /ˌʌn'fɑ:sn/ 72
unhealthy /ˌʌn'helθi/ 17
union /'ju:niən/ 54
universe /'ju:nɪvɜ:s/ 11
unless /ən'les/ 68
unlikely /ˌʌn'laɪkli/ 59
unlimited /ˌʌn'lɪmɪtɪd/ 58
unload /ˌʌn'ləʊd/ 72
unlock /ˌʌn'lɒk/ 72
unpack /ˌʌn'pæk/ 72
unplug /ˌʌn'plʌg/ 72
unpredictable /ˌʌnprɪ'dɪktəbl/ 13
unreasonable /ˌʌn'ri:znəbl/ 69
unskilled /ˌʌn'skɪld/ 58
unsuitable /ˌʌn'su:təbl/ 42
untie /ˌʌn'taɪ/ 72
unwilling /ˌʌn'wɪlɪŋ/ 39
unwrap /ˌʌn'ræp/ 72
up *as in* it's up to me /ʌp/ 64
up *as in* what's up? /ʌp/ 77
up to /'ʌp tə/ 15
upset /ʌp'set/ 7
upturn /'ʌptɜ:n/ 58
urban /'ɜ:bən/ 69
urgent /'ɜ:dʒənt/ 25
useful /'ju:sfl/ 73
useless /'ju:sləs/ 73

VAT (value added tax) /ˌvi: ˌeɪ 'ti:/ 79
vacancy /'veɪkənsi/ 51
vacation /və'keɪʃn/ 80
vacuum /'vækjuəm/ 27
vacuum cleaner /'vækjuəm ˌkli:nə(r)/ 27
vague /veɪg/ 77
valid /'vælɪd/ 22, 51
value N, V /'vælju:/ 18
van /væn/ 22
vanish /'vænɪʃ/ 13
variety /və'raɪəti/ 43
vary /'veəri/ 15, 43
veal /vi:l/ 16
vehicle /'vi:əkl/ 22, 52
versatile /'vɜ:sətaɪl/ 23
vertical /'vɜ:tɪkl/ 31
very /'veri/ 7
vest /vest/ 23
vet /vet/ 79
victim /'vɪktɪm/ 36
violence /'vaɪələns/ 14, 35
violent /'vaɪələnt/ 14, 35
violin /vaɪə'lɪn/ 44
violinist /vaɪə'lɪnɪst/ 44
vital /'vaɪtl/ 69
vitally /'vaɪtəli/ 76
V-neck /'vi: ˌnek/ 23
voice /vɔɪs/ 44
volcanic /vɒl'kænɪk/ 14
volcano /vɒl'keɪnəʊ/ 14
vote N, V /vəʊt/ 38

waistcoat /'weɪskəʊt/ 23
wake /weɪk/ 19
wall /wɔ:l/ 30
walled /wɔ:ld/ 30
wallet /'wɒlɪt/ 80
war /wɔ:(r)/ 39
ward /wɔ:d/ 25
warmth /wɔ:mθ/ 33
warn /wɔ:n/ 67, 74
warning /'wɔ:nɪŋ/ 22, 67
washable /'wɒʃəbl/ 73
washing up /ˌwɒʃɪŋ 'ʌp/ 27
waste of money /ˌweɪst əv 'mʌni/ 17, 18
waste of time /ˌweɪst əv 'taɪm/ 17
watch /wɒtʃ/ 32
watch out /ˌwɒtʃ 'aʊt/ 21, 67
water *as in* running water /'wɔ:tə(r)/ 20
watercolour /'wɔ:təkʌlə(r)/ 43
waterfall /'wɔ:təfɔ:l/ 12
waterproof /'wɔ:təpru:f/ 73
wave /weɪv/ 12
wave *as in* tidal wave /weɪv/ 14
wax /wæks/ 31
way *as in* on my/the way /weɪ/ 22
weakness /'wi:knəs/ 58
wealthy /'welθi/ 18
wedding /'wedɪŋ/ 10
wedding reception /'wedɪŋ rɪˌsepʃn/ 10
weigh /weɪ/ 15
weight /weɪt/ 15
weightlifting /'weɪtlɪftɪŋ/ 46
well /wel/ 25
well built /ˌwel 'bɪlt/ 5
well informed /ˌwel ɪn'fɔ:md/ 47
well known /ˌwel 'nəʊn/ 47
well off /ˌwel 'ɒf/ 18
well written /ˌwel 'rɪtn/ 47
whale /weɪl/ 15
what about ...? /'wɒt əˌbaʊt/ 61
what do you think about ...? /ˌwɒt də ˌju: ˌθɪŋk əˌbaʊt '.../ 63
what does your job involve? /ˌwɒt dəz jɔ: ˌdʒɒb ɪn'vɒlv/ 53
what for? /ˌwɒt 'fɔ:/ 77
what's more /ˌwɒts 'mɔ:(r)/ 68
what's the point of ...? /'wɒts ðə ˌpɔɪnt əv/ 66
what's up with ...? /ˌwɒts ˌʌp wɪð '.../ 77
what've you been up to? /ˌwɒtəv ˌju: bɪn 'ʌp ˌtu:/ 77
wheel /wi:l/ 21
whereas /ˌweər'æz/ 68
whether /'weðə(r)/ 78
while *as in* after a while /waɪl/ 2

www.hellooteacher.ir

whisper /'wɪspə(r)/ 34
whistle /'wɪsl/ 29
whole /həʊl/ 41
whole *as in* on the whole /həʊl/ 76
wide /waɪd/ 12, 45
wide awake /ˌwaɪd ə'weɪk/ 19
wide range /ˌwaɪd 'reɪndʒ/ 2
widely /'waɪdli/ 76
widow /'wɪdəʊ/ 10
widower /'wɪdəʊə(r)/ 10
width /wɪdθ/ 12, 45
wife /waɪf/ 10
wild (= living in natural conditions) /waɪld/ 15
wild (= exciting and enjoyable) /waɪld/ 48
will /wɪl/ 10
willing /'wɪlɪŋ/ 39
win /wɪn/ 42
windscreen /'wɪndskri:n/ 21
windscreen wiper /'wɪndskri:n ˌwaɪpə(r)/ 21
wing /wɪŋ/ 15
wing mirror /'wɪŋ ˌmɪrə(r)/ 21
winner /'wɪnə(r)/ 42
wipe /waɪp/ 27
wiper *as in* windscreen wiper /'waɪpə(r)/ 21
wire /'waɪə(r)/ 26
wish /wɪʃ/ 10
wishes *as in* best wishes /'wɪʃɪz/ 78
witness /'wɪtnəs/ 36
wonder /'wʌndə(r)/ 29
words *as in* in other words /wɜ:dz/ 11
wood /wʊd/ 31
wooden /'wʊdn/ 31
wool /wʊl/ 31
woollen /'wʊlən/ 31
work (= get a result) /wɜ:k/ 1
work (= function) /wɜ:k/ 26
work *as in* out of work /wɜ:k/ 53
work *as in* shift work /wɜ:k/ 54
work of art /ˌwɜ:k əv 'ɑ:t/ 43
work out /ˌwɜ:k 'aʊt/ 75
work overtime /ˌwɜ:k 'əʊvətaɪm/ 54
work permit /'wɜ:k ˌpɜ:mɪt/ 51
working conditions /'wɜ:kɪŋ kənˌdɪʃnz/ 54
worldwide /wɜ:ld'waɪd/ 45
worth /wɜ:θ/ 18
would rather /ˌwʊd 'rɑ:ðə(r)/ 62
wound /wu:nd/ 20
wrap up /ˌræp 'ʌp/ 72
wrestling /'reslɪŋ/ 46
wrinkles /'rɪŋklz/ 5
write a thesis /ˌraɪt ə 'θi:sɪs/ 50
writing *as in* in writing /'raɪtɪŋ/ 66
wrong /rɒŋ/ 26
wrong *as in* go wrong /rɒŋ/ 8, 65

x-ray /'eks ˌreɪ/ 25

yawning /'jɔ:nɪŋ/ 19
yeah /jeə/ 77
you must be joking /ˌju: ˌmʌst ˌbi 'ʤəʊkɪŋ/ 77
you're joking /ˌjɔ: 'ʤəʊkɪŋ/ 77
youngish /'jʌŋɪʃ/ 5
yours faithfully /ˌjɔ:z 'feɪθfəli/ 78
yours sincerely /ˌjɔ:z sɪn'sɪəli/ 78

zoom lens /'zu:m ˌlenz/ 43

www.hellooteacher.ir

Acknowledgements

The authors and publishers would like to thank teachers and students from the following schools who helped with the development of this book:

International House, Business English Centre, Madrid, Spain
Shamrock School of English, Getxo, Bizkaia, Spain
English Language Institute, Macarena, Seville, Spain
English Centre, Valencia, Spain
Tti School of English, London, UK
Bell International, London, UK
Mark Appleton, Mark Lloyd, and the students at International House, Bath, UK
Małgorzata Salomądry, Dorota Brach, Anna Wnuk, and Iza Algermissen in Poland

They would also like to thank:

Theresa Clementson, Sian Morgan, Carol Tabor, and Scott Thornbury for their valuable comments on early drafts of the text.

The actors Nigel Greaves and Joanna Hall and The Soundhouse Ltd for the listening material.

Daniel Bleyer (Germany); Blanca Gonzalez (Spain); Atena Juszko (Poland); Ilaria Milisenna (Italy); Claire Ransom (Britain); Sadako Shokatsu (Japan); Maurizio Tinnirello (Colombia); and Nina Weirum (Norway) for ABOUT YOU answers.

Suzanne Williams for picture research.

Pippa Mayfield for phonetic transcriptions.

www.hellooteacher.ir

Intermediate

Oxford **Word Skills**

Learn and practise English vocabulary

Intermediate: for intermediate and upper-intermediate learners

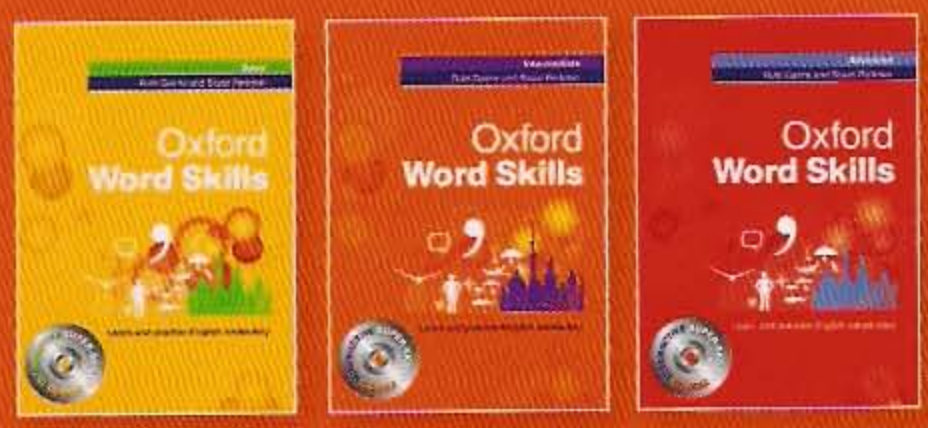
- Learn the words you need to know at each level (Basic, Intermediate, and Advanced)
- See how the words and phrases are used in spoken and written English
- Practise using the vocabulary
- Revise what you've learned
- Improve your vocabulary-learning skills
- Learn the words as preparation for the major exams

Use the CD-ROM to listen to the words, learn how to say them, and practise using them.

It's easy to test yourself. Just use the card inside to 'cover and check'.

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman are language teaching experts who specialize in writing materials for learning and teaching vocabulary.

www.oup.com/elt/wordskills



OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com/elt

CEF
C1
B2
B1

OXFORD ENGLISH
ISBN 978-0-19-462007-9
9 780194 620079

www.hellooteacher.ir